

CAPE FEAR
COMMUNITY
COLLEGE



SURF CITY BUILDING SA ADDITION

621 NC HWY 210 E, HAMPSTEAD, NORTH CAROLINA 28443

SCO ID#24-28220-01A

PROJECT MANUAL – VOLUME 2

Design-Build Project with



Prepared by:



ARCHITECTURE
ENGINEERING

CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS SUBMISSION

February 12, 2025

BMG Project No. 2024077.00

TABLE OF CONTENTS – VOLUME 2

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

220000	GENERAL PLUMBING
220500	COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING
220523	GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
220553	IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
220593	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR PLUMBING
220719	PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION
221116	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING
221119	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES
221123.21	INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS
221316	SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING
221319	SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES
221319.13	SANITARY DRAINS
221519	GENERAL-SERVICE PACKAGED AIR COMPRESSORS AND RECEIVERS
221523	GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING
223400	FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS
224200	COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES
224500	EMERGENCY PLUMBING FIXTURES
224716	PRESSURE WATER COOLERS
226600	CHEMICAL-WASTE SYSTEMS FOR LABORATORY FACILITIES

DIVISION 23 – HVAC

230000	GENERAL MECHANICAL
230500	COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC
230529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
230548.13	VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC
230553	IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
230593	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
230713	DUCT INSULATION
230719	HVAC PIPING INSULATION
232300	REFRIGERANT PIPING
233113	METAL DUCTS
233300	AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES
233346	FLEXIBLE DUCTS
233439	HIGH-VOLUME, LOW-SPEED FANS
233713.13	AIR DIFFUSERS
233713.23	REGISTERS AND GRILLES
233716	FABRIC AIR-DISTRIBUTION DEVICES
234100	PARTICULATE AIR FILTRATION
237416.11	PACKAGED, SMALL-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS
238129	VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW HVAC SYSTEMS

DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL

260500	GENERAL ELECTRICAL
260519	BUILDING WIRE AND CABLE
260526	GROUNDING AND BONDING

260529	SUPPORTING DEVICES
260533	CONDUIT
260534	BOXES
260553	ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION
260580	EQUIPMENT WIRING SYSTEMS
260923	ENCLOSED CONTACTORS
262200	DRY TYPE TRANSFORMERS
262416	PANELBOARDS
262726	WIRING DEVICES
262727	OCCUPANCY SENSORS
262813	FUSES
262816	ENCLOSED SWITCHES
262923	VARIABLE-FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS
264313	SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS
265100	INTERIOR LUMINAIRES
265200	EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATIONS

270510	TELECOMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS
271500	DATA COMMUNICATIONS CIRCUITS

DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

283111A	EXISTING FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM SYSTEM EXTENSIONS
---------	---

DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK

311000	SITE CLEARING
312000	EARTH MOVING
313116	TERMITE CONTROL

DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

321216	ASPHALT PAVING
321313	CONCRETE PAVING
321373	CONCRETE PAVING JOINT SEALANTS
321713	PARKING BUMPERS
321723	PAVEMENT MARKINGS
321726	TACTILE WARNING SURFACING
329200	TURF AND GRASSES
329300	PLANTS

DIVISION 33 – UTILITIES

330500	COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR UTILITIES
331415	SITE WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING
334200	STORMWATER CONVEYANCE

APPENDIX

APPENDIX 1	– GEOTECHNICAL REPORT
------------	-----------------------

END OF SECTION 000200 – VOLUME 2

SECTION 220000 - GENERAL PLUMBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Instructions to Bidders, General Conditions of the Contract, Supplementary General Conditions and Division 01 Specifications Sections bound herewith are a component part of Division 22 specifications. Comply with all provisions, details, and instructions of these sections in the accomplishment of work covered under Division 23.
- B. Furnish all labor, materials and equipment and incidentals required to make ready for use complete plumbing systems as shown on the Drawings and specified herein.
- C. Where Sub-Contracts are used to perform portions of the work, division of labor between sub trades is the responsibility of the Contractor.
- D. Furnish all labor, materials and equipment and incidentals required to make ready for use complete plumbing systems as shown on the Drawings and specified herein.
- E. Work includes furnishing, installing, and testing the equipment and materials specified in other sections of the Division Specifications and shown on the Plumbing Drawings. It is the intent of these Specifications that the plumbing systems shall be suitable in every way for the intended usage. All material and all work which may be reasonably implied as being incidental to the work of this Division shall be furnished at no extra cost.
- F. The general scope work includes, but is not limited to, furnishing, coordinating, and installing the following.
 - 1. Domestic waste and vent systems with connection to site utilities.
 - 2. Domestic water distribution systems with connection to site utilities.
 - 3. Compressed air systems.
 - 4. Plumbing fixtures, specialties, and equipment.
- G. Schedule all service interruptions in existing facilities at the Owner's convenience with 24 hours (minimum) notice. Obtain prior approval for each interruption.
- H. Thoroughly test all plumbing systems after installation and make any minor corrections, changes or adjustments necessary for proper functioning of the systems and equipment. All workmanship shall be of the highest quality; substandard work will be rejected.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Procedures for submittals: Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 01 Specifications Sections.

Transmit each shop drawing submittal with provided Shop Drawing Submittal Cover Form, attached herewith for each item of equipment/material or each specification section/paragraph.

- B. Clearly indicate proposed equipment and/or materials substitutions in shop drawings. Summarize all deviations from the specified quality, functionality, appearance or performance of proposed equipment and/or materials in the preface of each submittal. Include documentation to support deviations.
- C. Provide descriptive data on all materials and equipment as required to ascertain compliance with Specifications.
- D. The design layout shown on drawings is based on physical sizes of reputable equipment manufacturers. If equipment other than the models indicated is installed, any resulting conflicts with space, maintenance access, clearances or codes are the responsibility of the Contractor to correct at his expense.
- E. Where specific models and manufacturers of materials and equipment are specified, substitutions as allowed by the specifications and State law will be considered. Substitutions must be equivalent in quality, function, suitability, and arrangement to specified equipment. Architect/Engineer to have final authority as to equivalency of substitutions.
- F. Equipment model numbers noted in these specifications or on the drawings are intended to establish a minimum standard of quality and do not necessarily relate to specific options or arrangement as shown. Provide equipment with all standard features and optional features as stated and arranged as shown on the drawings.
- G. Where seismic design for support is required, submit installation details for supports and engineering analysis as specified.

1.3 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Perform work in accordance with all applicable state and local codes, standards, and regulations.
- B. Furnish all materials and labor which is required for compliance with codes, standards, and regulations, whether specifically mentioned in these specifications or shown on the drawings.
- C. Obtain required construction permit from the authority having jurisdiction and arrange, at the proper time, for all inspections required by such authority. Pay all permit and inspection costs required.

1.4 COORDINATION OF WORK

- A. The contractor is responsible for coordination of work between trades. Provide fully complete and functional systems.
- B. Compare plumbing drawings and specifications with the drawings and specifications for other trades.

- C. Coordinate plumbing installation with the work of other trades. Report any pertinent discrepancies to the Architect/Engineer and obtain written instructions for any necessary revisions. Before starting any construction, make proper provisions to avoid interferences in a manner approved by the Architect/Engineer. No extras will be allowed for rework of uncoordinated installations.
- D. Determine exact route and location of each plumbing item prior to fabrication and/or installation. Adjust location of piping and equipment, etc., to accommodate interferences anticipated and encountered.
- E. Right of Way: General priority for right of way is as follows:
 - 1. Items located per regulatory requirement.
 - 2. Piping with pitch requirement (plumbing drains, etc.).
 - 3. Ductwork.
 - 4. Piping without pitch requirement.
 - 5. Electrical wiring (conduits, etc.).
- F. Arrange all work to permit removal (without damage to other parts) of any equipment requiring periodic replacement.
- G. Provide clearance and easy access to any equipment which requires periodic maintenance. Arrange piping and equipment to permit ready access to valves, traps, starters, motors, control components, etc., and to clear the opening of swinging doors and access panels.

1.5 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS (GENERAL)

- A. Provide all new materials unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- B. Manufacturers and models listed in drawings and specifications are used for layout and to convey to bidders the general style, type, character, and quality of product desired. Listed examples are used only to denote the quality standard of product desired and are not intended to restrict bidders to a specific brand, make, manufacturer or specific name.
- C. Adjust layout, system connections and coordinate with other trades as required to properly install equivalent products.
- D. Where equivalent products are submitted, include all associated costs related to substitution in bid.
- E. Furnish materials bearing the manufacturer's name and trade name. Provide UL label where a UL standard has been established for the material.
- F. Furnish standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in production of equipment types required for the work. Use the manufacturer's latest approved design.
- G. Use the same manufacturer for equipment and materials of the same general type throughout the work to obtain uniform appearance, operation, and maintenance.

- H. Protect equipment and materials from dirt, water, chemical or mechanical injury and theft always during construction. Provide covers or shelter as required.
- I. If materials or equipment are damaged at any time prior to final acceptance of the work, repair such damage at no additional cost. If materials or equipment are damaged by water, provide replacement at no additional cost.
- J. Follow manufacturer's directions completely in the delivery, storage, protection and installation of all equipment and materials. Notify the Architect/Engineer in writing of any conflicts between any requirements of the contract documents and manufacturer's directions. Obtain written instructions before proceeding with the work. The Contractor is responsible for correction of any work that does not comply with the manufacturer's directions or written instructions from the Architect/Engineer at no additional cost.
- K. Repair any damage to factory applied paint finish using touch-up paint furnished by the equipment manufacturer.

1.6 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Refer to individual plumbing sections and Division 01.

1.7 PAINTING

- A. Protect fixtures, valves, trim, etc. from field painting operations. Do not install escutcheons and trim until painting is complete.

1.8 LOCATIONS AND MEASUREMENTS

- A. The location of plumbing work is shown on the drawings as accurately as possible. Field-verify all measurements to insure that the work suits the surrounding trim, finishes and/or construction. Provide adjustment as necessary.
- B. Make minor relocations of work prior to installation as required or as directed by the Architect/Engineer at no additional cost.

1.9 SUPERVISION

- A. Contractor to provide an authorized and competent representative to constantly supervise the work from the beginning to completion and final acceptance. Insofar as possible, keep the same foreman and workmen throughout the project duration.
- B. Representatives of Architect/Engineer, Owner, and local inspection authorities will make inspections during the progress of the work. Contractor to accommodate such inspections and correct deficiencies noted.

1.10 QUALITY AND WORKMANSHIP

- A. Contractors must employ skilled tradesmen, laborers, and supervisors. Final product to be a neat, well finished, and professional installation.
- B. Remove and replace any work considered substandard quality in the judgment of the Architect/Engineer.

1.11 EXCAVATION, TRENCHING AND BACKFILLING

- A. Provide all excavation, trenching and backfilling as required to complete the work under this Division.
- B. Contractor is responsible for investigating conditions prior to excavating and to exercise care during the excavation to avoid any utilities or other objects which may or may not be shown on the drawings.
- C. Excavate so as not to endanger or damage existing utilities and structures. If damage occurs, repair damage to the satisfaction of the Architect/Engineer at no additional cost.
- D. Lay out location of all ditching at grade and obtain approval from the Architect/Engineer prior excavating.
- E. Remove and dispose of all surplus earth from the site.
- F. Provide suitable backfill materials as required.
- G. Perform excavation, trenching and shoring in accordance with rules and regulations set forth in Article XXI, Bulletin 1 "Trenching" as published in a separate bulletin by the North Carolina Department of Labor, Division of Standards and Inspection Construction Bureau.
- H. Bid excavation work as unclassified with no extra payment for removal of rock, unsuitable soils, etc.

1.12 CLOSING IN WORK

- A. Do not cover up or enclose work until it has been inspected, tested, and approved by authorities having jurisdiction over the work. Uncover any such work for inspection and/or test at no additional cost. Restore the work to its original condition after inspection and/or test at no additional cost.

1.13 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Perform all cutting and patching necessary to install work under this Division.
- B. Perform cutting and patching in professional, workmanlike manner.
- C. Arrange work to minimize cutting and patching.

- D. Do not cut joists, beams, girders, columns, or any other structural members without written permission from the Architect/Engineer.
- E. Cut opening only large enough to allow easy installation of piping, wiring or ductwork.
- F. Patching material to match material removed.
- G. Restore patched surface to its original appearance at completion of patching.
- H. Where waterproofed surfaces are patched, maintain integrity of waterproofing.
- I. Remove rubble and excess patching materials from the premises.

1.14 INTERPRETATION OF DRAWINGS

- A. Drawings and specifications under this Division are complementary each to the other. Provide any work specified herein and/or indicated on the drawings.
- B. Drawings are diagrammatic and indicate generally the location of fixtures, piping, devices, equipment, etc. Follow drawings as closely as possible but arrange work to suit the finished surroundings and/or trim.
- C. The words “furnish”, “provide”, and/or “install” as used in these drawings and specifications are interpreted to include all material and labor necessary to complete the item, system, equipment, etc.
- D. Any omissions from either the drawings or specifications are unintentional. Contractor is responsible for notifying the Architect/Engineer of any pertinent omissions before submitting a bid. Complete working systems are required, whether every small item of material is shown and specified or not.

1.15 ACCESSIBILITY

- A. Locate all equipment which must be serviced, operated, or maintained in fully accessible positions. Equipment to include, but not be limited to, valves, traps, cleanouts, motors, controllers and drain points. If required for accessibility, furnish access doors for this purpose. Minor deviations from drawings may be made to allow for better accessibility.
- B. Coordinate exact locations and size of access panels for each concealed device requiring service.
- C. Access panels: Steel construction with 16-gauge frames and 18-gauge panels, factory primed with rust inhibiting paint, finish paint by Contractor. Provide suitable UL listed doors where installed in rated construction.
- D. Coordinate access panel locations with architectural construction.
- E. Access panels are not required for access to work located above a lift-out “T” bar type ceiling.

1.16 ELECTRICAL WORK IN CONNECTION WITH PLUMBING WORK

- A. Comply with Division 26.

1.17 PLUMBING WORK IN CONNECTION WITH OTHER CONTRACTS

- A. Provide plumbing services as required for items furnished by other contractors or vendors as shown on the plumbing drawings. Include rough-ins and final connections to equipment. Locations of connections shown on the drawings are approximate and some adjustment of actual connection locations should be anticipated. Coordinate exact connection requirements. Make final connections only after approval of the other contractor or vendor, in the contractor's or vendor's presence.
 - 1. Site Utilities- In general, work under this Division covers work to five feet outside buildings. Extend and connect work under this Division to site utilities as required.
 - 2. Owner Furnished Equipment- Obtain exact plumbing requirements and rough-in locations for Owner furnished equipment. Provide complete plumbing installation for proper operation of equipment.

1.18 BUILDINGS

- A. Provide safety barriers, protective devices, screening, etc., as required to maintain the safety of visitors in or near the work area.
- B. Maintain clean work area. At the end of each working period, remove all debris, boxes, waste, etc. from the premises and dispose of them properly.
- C. The contractor is responsible for all damage to buildings, grounds, walkways, pavement, etc. occurring during the course of his work. Repair any such damage to finish equal to that prior to damage to the satisfaction of the Architect/Engineer.

1.19 ALTERNATE BIDS

- A. Alternate Bids are described in relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections.

1.20 PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections.
- B. As the work progresses, legibly record all field changes on a set of project contract drawings, herein after called the "record drawings."
- C. Accurately show the installed condition of plumbing work on record drawings.

1.21 PHASING OF THE WORK

- A. Schedule work in accordance with the relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 01 Specifications Sections.

1.22 PROJECT CLOSEOUT

- A. Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 01 Specifications Sections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 220000

SECTION 220500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Motors.
2. Sleeves without waterstop.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Silicone sealants.
5. Escutcheons.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for water meters.
2. Section 221513 "General-Service Compressed-Air Piping" for compressed air gauges.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product, excluding motors which are included in Part 1 of the plumbing equipment Sections.
 - a. Include construction details, material descriptions, and dimensions of individual components, and finishes.
 - b. Include operating characteristics and furnished accessories.

B. Delegated Design Submittals: For each anchor and alignment guide, including analysis data, signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Domestic water for plumbing piping intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act, with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and with NSF 61 and NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, in that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- B. Compatibility: Provide products suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- C. Capability: Provide products and installations to accommodate maximum axial movement as scheduled or indicated on Drawings.

2.2 MOTORS

- A. Motor Requirements, General:
 - 1. Content includes motors for use on alternating-current power systems of up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.
 - 2. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in equipment schedules or Sections.
 - 3. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.
- B. Motor Characteristics:
 - 1. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 ft. above sea level.
 - 2. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.
- C. Single-Phase Motors:

1. Motors larger than 1/20 hp must be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - a. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - b. Split phase.
 - c. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 - d. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
2. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
3. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
4. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
5. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device will automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

D. Electronically Commutated Motors:

1. Microprocessor-Based Electronic Control Module: Converts 120 V or 240 V single-phase AC power to three-phase DC power to operate the brushless DC motor.
2. Three-phase power motor module with permanent magnet rotor.
3. Circuit board or digital speed controller/LED display.
4. Building Automation System Interface: Via DC voltage signal or Digital Serial Interface (DSI).

2.3 SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS

A. Sleeves without Waterstop:

1. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron, with plain ends.
2. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, hot-dip galvanized, with plain ends.
3. Steel Sheet Sleeves: ASTM A653/A653M, 24 gauge minimum thickness; hot-dip galvanized, round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
4. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.
5. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange.
6. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange.

B. Sleeve-Seal Systems:

1. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - a. Hydrostatic Seal: 20 psig minimum.
 - b. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - c. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.

- d. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

C. Silicone Sealants:

1. Silicone Sealant, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
 - a. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
2. Silicone Sealant, S, P, T, NT: Single-component, 25, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
 - a. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.
3. Silicone Foam Sealant: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

2.4 ESCUTCHEONS

A. Escutcheon Types:

1. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

B. Floor Plates:

1. Split Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES - GENERAL

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.

3. Using silicone sealant, seal the space outside of sleeves in floors/slabs/walls without sleeve-seal system. Select to maintain fire resistance of floor/slab/wall.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants that joint sealant manufacturer's literature indicates is appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building, and passing through exterior walls.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gauges adjacent to machines and equipment to allow space for service and maintenance of meters, gauges, machines, and equipment.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gauges to proper angle for best visibility.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Sleeves and Sleeve Seals:

1. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - a. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - b. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
2. Prepare test and inspection reports.

B. Escutcheons:

1. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

3.7 SLEEVES APPLICATION

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Exterior Concrete Walls above and below Grade:
 - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
2. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
3. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Sleeves with waterstops .
4. Interior Wall and Partitions:
 - a. Sleeves without waterstops.

3.8 ESCUTCHEONS APPLICATION

A. Escutcheons for New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping:

1. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
2. Chrome-Plated Piping: One piece, cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
3. Insulated Piping:

- a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- 4. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- 5. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- 6. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- 7. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - b. plated finish.
- B. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- C. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping: One piece, floor plate.
 - 2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.

SECTION 220523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Ball valves.
2. Check valves.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- C. RPTFE: Reinforced polytetrafluoroethylene.
- D. RS: Rising stem.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.
 - a. Include material descriptions and dimensions of individual components.
 - b. Include operating characteristics and furnished accessories.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooved ends, press ends, solder ends, and weld ends.
3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
4. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
5. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
6. Set gate valves closed to prevent rattling.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems or other components as lifting or rigging points unless specifically indicated for this purpose in manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of valve from a single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Standards:

- 1. Domestic-water piping valves intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption must comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and NSF 61/NSF 372; or to be certified in compliance with NSF 61/NSF 372 by an American National Standards Institute (ANSI)-accredited third-party certification body, that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.

- B. ASME Compliance:

- 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
 - 2. ASME B16.18 for cast-copper solder-joint connections.
 - 3. ASME B16.22 for wrought-copper solder-joint connections.
 - 4. ASME B16.34 for flanged- and threaded-end connections.
 - 5. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

- C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.

- D. Provide bronze valves made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are unacceptable.

- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

- H. Valve Actuator Type:

- 1. Hand Lever: For quarter-turn ball valves.

- I. Valves in Insulated Piping:

- 1. Provide 2-inch extended neck stems.

2. Provide extended operating handles with nonthermal-conductive covering material and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
3. Provide memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.

2.3 BALL VALVES, LEAD FREE

- A. Ball Valves, Lead Free, Threaded or Soldered Ends - Brass, Two Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
1. Standards: MSS SP-110 and MSS SP-145.
 2. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 3. Body Design: Two piece.
 4. Body Material: Forged brass.
 5. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See Part 3 ball valve schedule articles.
 6. Seats: PTFE.
 7. Stem: Stainless steel.
 8. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 9. Port: Full.

2.4 BALL VALVES, GENERAL PURPOSE

- A. Ball Valves, Threaded or Soldered Ends - Brass, Two Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
1. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 2. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 3. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 4. Body Design: Two piece.
 5. Body Material: Forged brass.
 6. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See Part 3 ball valve schedule articles.
 7. Seats: PTFE.
 8. Stem: Stainless steel.
 9. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 10. Port: Full.

2.5 CHECK VALVES, LEAD FREE

- A. Check Valves, Lead Free, Swing Type, Threaded or Soldered Ends - Bronze, with Bronze Disc, Class 150:
1. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
 2. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 3. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 4. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
 5. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See Part 3 check valve schedule articles.
 6. Disc: Bronze.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves. Remove defective valves from site.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF VALVES

- A. Install valves with unions at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Provide support of piping adjacent to valves such that no force is imposed upon valves.
- C. Locate valves for easy access and where not blocked by equipment, other piping, or building components.
- D. For valves in horizontal piping, install valves with stem at or above center of pipe.
- E. Install valves in a position that does not project into aisles or block access to other equipment.
- F. Install valves in position to allow full stem and actuator or manual operator movement.
- G. Verify that joints of each valve have been properly installed and sealed to assure there is no leakage or damage.
- H. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
 - 1. Check Valves, Swing Type: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
- I. Valve Tags: Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
- J. Adhere to manufacturer's written installation instructions. When soldering or brazing valves, do not heat valves above maximum permitted temperature. Do not use solder with melting point temperature above valve manufacturer's written recommended maximum.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- B. Select valves with the following end connections:
 - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option or press-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 3. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends.
 - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.

3.5 LOW-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR BALL VALVE SCHEDULE - 150 PSIG (1035 kPa) OR LESS

- A. Ball valves threaded or soldered ends - brass, two-piece with full port and stainless steel trim; threaded ends.

3.6 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER BALL VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Ball valves, lead free, threaded or soldered ends - brass, two-piece with full port and stainless steel trim; threaded ends.

3.7 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER CHECK VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Check valves, lead free, swing type, threaded or soldered ends - bronze, with bronze disc, Class 150; threaded ends.

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe hangers and supports - metal.
2. Thermal hanger-shield inserts.
3. Fastener systems.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS - METAL

A. Pipe Hangers and Supports - Carbon Steel:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated or epoxy powder coated.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Pipe/Tube Hangers and Supports - Copper:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-plated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-plated steel.

2.2 THERMAL HANGER-SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100 psig or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125 psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100 psig or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125 psig minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield must cover bottom 180 degrees of pipe.
- D. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.3 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Fastener System - Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities required for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Fastener System - Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities required for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Indoor Applications: Zinc-plated or stainless steel.
 - 2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. The minimum static design load used for strength determination is to include weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- B. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

- C. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Coordinate location of concrete inserts before concrete is placed.
- D. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- E. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- F. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used as an option. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields are to span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used as an option. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
- G. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- H. Thermal Hanger-Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- I. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick after concrete is placed and cured. Use installers that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

3. Install lag screw wood fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 4. Install fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- J. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal hanger-shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.

6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs.
 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs.
 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs but vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs and vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation, in addition to expansion and contraction, is required.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment of up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11 split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal Hanger-Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- O. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- Q. Use pipe-positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Pipe labels.
 - 3. Valve tags.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- C. Valve-numbering scheme.
- D. Valve Schedules: For each piping system. Include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
 - 3. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures of up to 160 deg F.
 - 4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 - 5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances of up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 - 6. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 - 7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

2.2 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction in accordance with ASME A13.1.
- B. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings. Also include:
 - 1. Pipe size.
 - 2. Flow-Direction Arrows: Include flow-direction arrows on distribution piping. Arrows may be either integral with label or applied separately.
 - 3. Lettering Size: Size letters in accordance with ASME A13.1 for piping.

2.3 VALVE TAGS

- A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.04-inch minimum thickness, with predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire or S-hook.
- B. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Include valve-tag schedule in operation and maintenance data.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- D. Locate identifying devices so that they are readily visible from the point of normal approach.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Permanently fasten labels on each item of plumbing equipment.
- B. Sign and Label Colors.
 - 1. White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-green background.
- C. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF PIPE LABELS

- A. Install pipe labels showing service and flow direction with permanent adhesive on pipes.
- B. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Within 3 ft. of each valve and control device.
 - 2. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 3. Within 3 ft. of equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 4. Spaced at maximum intervals of 25 ft. along each run. Reduce intervals to 10 ft. in areas of congested piping and equipment.
- C. Do not apply plastic pipe labels or plastic tapes directly to bare pipes conveying fluids at temperatures of 125 deg F or higher. Where these pipes are to remain uninsulated, use a short section of insulation or use stenciled labels.
- D. Flow-Direction Flow Arrows: Use arrows, in compliance with ASME A13.1, to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- E. Pipe-Label Color Schedule:
 - 1. Low-Pressure Compressed-Air Piping: White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-blue background.
 - 2. Domestic Cold-Water Piping: White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-green background.
 - 3. Domestic Hot-Water Piping: White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-green background
 - 4. Domestic Hot-Water Return Piping White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-green background.
 - 5. Sanitary Waste Piping: White letters on a black background.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF VALVE TAGS

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule in the operating and maintenance manual.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in "Valve-Tag Size and Shape" Subparagraph below:
 - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Domestic Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - b. Domestic Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - c. Domestic Hot-Water Return: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - d. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - 2. Valve-Tag Colors:
 - a. For each piping system, use the same lettering and background coloring system on valve tags as used in the piping system labels and background.

END OF SECTION 220553

SECTION 220593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR PLUMBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. TAB of domestic water system.
 - 2. TAB of plumbing equipment:
 - a. Domestic hot-water in-line circulation pumps.
 - b. General-duty air compressors.
 - 3. Pipe-leakage test verification.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- C. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- D. TDH: Total dynamic head.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report, as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures, as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists, as specified in "Preparation" Article.

- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.
- H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
 - 1. Instrument type and make.
 - 2. Serial number.
 - 3. Application.
 - 4. Dates of use.
 - 5. Dates of calibration.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by AABC:
 - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
 - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
- B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- C. ASHRAE 111 Compliance: Requirements in ASHRAE 111 applicable to analogous domestic water system and plumbing equipment balancing.
- D. ASHRAE 188 Compliance: Comply with balancing and report requirements, Section 8.3 "Balancing."
- E. Code and Authorities Having Jurisdiction Compliance: TAB is required to comply with governing codes and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices and fittings. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine approved submittals for plumbing systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data, including plumbing system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about plumbing system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine equipment performance data, including pump curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including pump system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate pump system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of plumbing equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- F. Examine system and equipment installations, and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- G. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- H. Examine plumbing equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- I. Examine temporary and permanent strainers. Verify that temporary strainer screens used during system cleaning and flushing have been removed and permanent strainers are installed and clean.
- J. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of isolating, throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- K. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- L. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on plumbing equipment.
- M. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
 - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
 - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
 - 3. Instrumentation to be used.
 - 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of plumbing systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
 - 1. Domestic Water System:
 - a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed in accordance with applicable code and authority having jurisdiction.
 - b. Water heaters are installed and functioning.
 - c. Piping is complete and all points of outlet are installed.
 - d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
 - e. Shutoff and balance valves are 100 percent open.
 - f. Hot-water circulating pumps are operational and proper rotation is verified.
 - g. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.
 - 2. Compressed-Air System:
 - a. Leakage and pressure tests on compressed air distribution system have been satisfactorily completed in accordance with Division 22 requirements.
 - b. Piping is complete and all points of outlet are installed.
 - c. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
 - d. Strainers are clean.
 - e. Control valves function in accordance with the sequence of operation.
 - f. Shutoff and balance valves are 100 percent open.
 - g. Compressors are operational and of proper rotation.
 - h. Gauge connections are installed directly at compressor inlet and outlet flanges prior to valves or strainers.
 - i. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete, and safeties are verified.
 - j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system in accordance with the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, pipes, and equipment casings for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 - 1. Where holes for probes are required in piping or equipment, install pressure and temperature test plugs to seal systems.

2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish in accordance with Section 220716 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation" and Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including valve position indicators and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

- A. Test, adjust, and balance plumbing equipment indicated on Drawings, including, but not limited to, the following:
 1. Domestic water in-line pumps.
 2. Domestic water heaters.
 3. Air compressors.

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR DOMESTIC WATER SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for pumps and other equipment. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required equipment flow rates with system design flow rates.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings piping layouts.
- C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare domestic water systems for testing and balancing as follows:
 1. Check expansion tank for proper setting.
 2. Check water heater for proper discharge temperature setting.
 3. Check remotest point of outlet for adequate pressure.
 4. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
 5. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor controllers.
 6. Verify that motor controllers are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
 7. Check that air has been purged from the system.
- D. Check settings and operation of automatic temperature-control valves, self-contained control valves, and pressure-reducing valves. Record final settings.
- E. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR COMPRESSED-AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for air compressors, and other equipment. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required equipment flow rates with system design flow rates.

- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings piping layouts.
- C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare compressed-air systems for testing and balancing as follows:
 - 1. Check remotest point of outlet for adequate pressure.
 - 2. Check pressure-control valves for proper position.
 - 3. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor controllers.
 - 4. Verify that motor controllers are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- D. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of pressure-reducing valves.
- E. Check settings and operation of pressure-reducing valves. Record final settings.
- F. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER CIRCULATING INLINE PUMP

- A. Balance system with manual or automatic balancing valves by setting at design flow.
 - 1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - 2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - 3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- B. Adjust pump to deliver total design flow.
 - 1. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
 - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - 2. Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
 - 3. Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.
 - 4. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - a. Re-measure and confirm that total flow is within design.
 - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, speed, and static profile.
 - c. Mark final settings.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR WATER HEATERS

A. Water Heaters:

1. Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
2. Measure and record water flow.
3. Measure and record pressure drop.
4. Record relief valve(s) pressure setting.
5. Capacity: Calculate in Btu/h of heating output.
6. Efficiency: Calculate operating efficiency for comparison to submitted equipment.

3.9 TOLERANCES

A. Set plumbing system's flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Domestic Water Flow Rate: Plus 10 percent or minus 5 percent. If the design value is less than 10 gpm, within 10 percent.
2. Compressed-Air Flow Rate: Plus 10 percent or minus 5 percent. If design value is less than 10 gpm, within 10 percent.

3.10 PROGRESS REPORTING

- #### A. Initial Construction-Phase Report:
- Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for system-balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to system-balancing devices, to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to plumbing systems and general construction to allow access for performance-measuring and -balancing devices.

3.11 FINAL REPORT

- #### A. General:
- Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- #### B. Final Report Contents:
- In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
1. Pump curves.
 2. Manufacturers' test data.
 3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- #### C. General Report Data:
- In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
 3. Project name.
 4. Project location.
 5. Architect's name and address.
 6. Engineer's name and address.
 7. Contractor's name and address.
 8. Report date.
 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 11. Summary of contents, including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 13. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 14. Test conditions for pump performance forms, including the following:
 - a. Variable-frequency controller settings for variable-flow hydronic systems.
 - b. Settings for pressure controller(s).
 - c. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Flow rates.
 2. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
 3. Balancing stations.
 4. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Water Heater Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Model number and unit size.
 - d. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - e. Output capacity in Btu/h.
 - f. Number of stages.
 - g. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
 - h. Rated amperage.
 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Heat output in Btu/h.

- b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
 - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
 - d. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
 - e. Operating set point in deg F.
 - f. Voltage at each connection.
 - g. Amperage for each phase.
- F. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves, and include the following:
 - 1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Service.
 - d. Make and size.
 - e. Model number and serial number.
 - f. Water flow rate in gpm.
 - g. Water-pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
 - h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
 - i. Pump speed.
 - j. Impeller diameter in inches.
 - k. Motor make and frame size.
 - l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
 - m. Voltage at each connection.
 - n. Amperage for each phase.
 - o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - p. Seal type.
 - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
 - b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - c. Actual impeller size in inches.
 - d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
 - e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
 - j. Voltage at each connection.
 - k. Amperage for each phase.
- G. Instrument Calibration Reports:
 - 1. Report Data:
 - a. Instrument type and make.
 - b. Serial number.
 - c. Application.
 - d. Dates of use.

- e. Dates of calibration.

3.12 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Commissioning Authority.
- B. Commissioning Authority shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to the lesser of either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the TAB shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If recheck measurements find the number of failed measurements noncompliant with requirements indicated, proceed as follows:
 - 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and adjust. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection. All changes shall be tracked to show changes made to the previous report.
 - 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may pursue other Contract options to complete TAB work.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.13 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

END OF SECTION 220593

SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
 - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
 - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
 - 3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
 - 4. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
 - 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation system materials are to be delivered to the Project site in unopened containers. The packaging is to include name of the manufacturer, fabricator, type, description, and size.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application.

1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation, jacket materials, adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. All Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials are applied.
- B. Products do not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 850 deg F in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C547.
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type I, Grade A with factory-applied ASJ.
 - 2. Fabricated shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 - 3. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.3 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Glass-Fiber and Mineral Wool Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C195.
- B. Glass-Fiber and Mineral Wool Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C449.

2.4 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Glass-Fiber and Mineral Wool Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- C. ASJ Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A, for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

2.5 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Water Based: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements.
 - 4. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Indoor Use: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.6 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Adhesives comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.7 SEALANTS

- A. Materials are as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.

3. Color: White.

2.8 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 2. Color: White.
 3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

2.10 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
 1. Width: 3 inches.
 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 1. Width: 2 inches.
 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

2.11 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:

1. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures:

1. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, compress, or otherwise damage insulation or jacket.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom (12 o'clock and 6 o'clock positions) of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet during storage or in the installation process before being properly covered and sealed in accordance with Contract Documents.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth, but not to the extent of creating wrinkles or areas of compression in the insulation.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward-clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward-clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, in accordance with insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 - 4. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- D. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles below.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, Mechanical Couplings, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, mechanical couplings, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered or routed fittings made from same material and density as that of adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece is butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate flanges, mechanical couplings, and unions, using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union" matching size and color of pipe labels.
 6. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 7. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing, using PVC tape.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF GLASS-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 3. For insulation with jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
 4. For insulation with jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When prefabricated insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

C. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When prefabricated sections are not available, install fabricated sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections: Inspect pipe, fittings, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection is limited to three locations of straight pipe and three locations of valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

B. All insulation applications will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

3.10 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Cold Water:

1. Insulation is the following:

- a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 - B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
 - 1. Insulation is the following:
 - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
 - C. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
 - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- 3.11 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE
- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
 - B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
 - C. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. None.
 - D. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. PVC: 20 mils thick.

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper tube and fittings - domestic water.
2. PEX tube and fittings - domestic water.
3. Piping joining materials - domestic water.
4. Transition fittings - domestic water.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Domestic water piping, tubing, fittings, joints, and appurtenances intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act, with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and with NSF 61 and NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, in that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Potable-water piping and components are to comply with NSF 14, NSF 61, and NSF 372. Include marking "NSF-pw" on piping.

2.3 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS - DOMESTIC WATER

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type L.

- B. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, pressure fittings. Do not use solder joints on pipe sizes greater than NPS 4.
- C. Wrought Copper Unions: ASME B16.22. Do not use solder joints on pipe sizes greater than NPS 4.

2.4 PEX TUBE AND FITTINGS - DOMESTIC WATER

- A. PEX Tube - Domestic Water:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain PEX tube from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Tube Material: PEX plastic in accordance with ASTM F876 and ASTM F877.
- B. PEX Tube Fittings - Domestic Water:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain PEX tube fittings from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Fittings: ASTM F1960, cold expansion fittings and reinforcing rings.

2.5 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS - DOMESTIC WATER

- A. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys.
- B. Flux: ASTM B813, water flushable.

2.6 TRANSITION FITTINGS - DOMESTIC WATER

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
 - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
 - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller is to be the following:
 - 1. PEX tube, NPS 1 and smaller.

a. Fittings for PEX tube:

- 1) ASTM F1960, cold expansion fittings and reinforcing rings.

D. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller is to be the following:

1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.

E. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100) is to be the following:

1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.

3.2 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab in accordance with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install valves in accordance with Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- E. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- F. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- G. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- H. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- I. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Install piping free of sags and bends.

- K. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- L. Install PEX tube with loop at each change of direction of more than 90 degrees.
- M. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- N. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- O. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- P. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings in accordance with ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- D. Joints for PEX Tubing, ASTM: Join in accordance with ASTM F1960 for cold expansion fittings and reinforcing rings.
- E. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for hangers, supports, and anchor devices in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install hangers for copper tube and pipe, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- C. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.

- D. Support vertical runs of copper tube and pipe to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- E. Support vertical runs of PEX tube to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.7 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
 - 1. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 - 2. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
 - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.
 - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system in accordance with either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.

- c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
 - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
 - 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
 - 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
 - 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
 - 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
 - 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
 - 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
 - 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
 - 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Piping Inspections:
 - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after installation and before setting fixtures.
 - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

- c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections, and arrange for reinspection.
 - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 2. Piping Tests:
 - a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
 - b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - c. Leave domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 100 psig. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 221116

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Balancing valves.
2. Outlet boxes.
3. Hose bibbs.
4. Wall hydrants.
5. Drain valves.
6. Water-hammer arresters.
7. Trap-seal primer device.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
2. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.
3. Section 224500 "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures" for water tempering equipment.
4. Section 224700 "Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers."

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Test and inspection reports.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Domestic water piping specialties intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the SDWA, requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and NSF 61 and NSF 372, or to be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an American National Standards Institute (ANSI)-accredited third-party certification body that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 BALANCING VALVES

- A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:
 - 1. Type: Ball or Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
 - 2. Body: Brass or bronze.
 - 3. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.

2.4 OUTLET BOXES

- A. Icemaker Outlet Boxes:
 - 1. Mounting: Recessed.
 - 2. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel, epoxy-painted-steel, or plastic box and faceplate.
 - 3. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 or smaller copper tube outlet.
 - 4. Accessory: Water hammer arrestor.
 - 5. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.

2.5 HOSE BIBBS

- A. Hose Bibbs: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

2.6 WALL HYDRANTS

- A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

2.7 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

2.8 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water-Hammer Arresters:

1. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
2. Type: Piston.
3. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.9 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE

A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:

1. Standard: ASSE 1018.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
3. Body: Bronze.
4. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 threaded, union, or solder joint.
5. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 threaded or solder joint.
6. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Balancing Valves: Install in locations where they can easily be adjusted. Set at indicated design flow rates.
- B. Outlet Boxes: Install boxes recessed in wall or surface mounted on wall. Install 1-1/2-by-3-1/2-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
- C. Water-Hammer Arresters: Install in water piping in accordance with PDI-WH 201.

- D. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device: Install with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping specialties adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
 - 1. Backflow preventers.
 - 2. Balancing valves.
 - 3. Outlet boxes.
 - 4. Wall hydrants.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning devices.
- B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 221119

SECTION 221123.21 - INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction materials, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For inline, domestic-water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written instructions for handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

- C. Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects and Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372.

2.2 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.
- B. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further information.
- C. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft horizontal.
 - 2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.
 - 3. Maximum Continuous Operating Temperature: 220 deg F.
 - 4. Casing: Stainless steel, with threaded or companion-flange connections.
 - 5. Impeller: composite or stainless steel.
 - 6. Motor: Three speed.

2.3 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.4 CONTROLS

- A. Timers: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump.
 - 1. Type: Programmable, seven-day clock with manual override on-off switch.
 - 2. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, suitable for wall mounting.
 - 3. Operation of Pump: On or off.
 - 4. Transformer: Provide if required.
 - 5. Power Requirement: 24 V ac.
 - 6. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Up to two on-off cycles each day for seven days.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF PUMPS

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Mount pumps in orientation complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Install timers in Janitor's Closet.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to inline, domestic-water pumps, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic-water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.

3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Inline, domestic-water pump will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Check piping connections for tightness.
3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
4. Set timers, for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
7. Start motor.
8. Open discharge valve slowly.
9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
10. Adjust timer settings.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust inline, domestic-water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 221123.21

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. PVC pipe and fittings.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation are capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10 ft. head of water.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Piping materials to bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.3 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic piping components. Include "NSF-dwv" marking for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" marking for plastic sewer piping.
- B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665 drain, waste, and vent.
- C. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D2665, made in accordance with ASTM D3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.

- D. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F656.
- E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D2564.

2.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
 - 1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in ODs or of different materials. Include end connections of same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 - 2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
 - 3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: ASTM C1173.
 - b. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - c. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 - d. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D5926 PVC.
 - 2) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D5926 PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
 - 1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.
 - 2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
 - 1. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if the change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical.
 - 2. Use long-turn, double Y-branch, and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back-to-back or side by side with common drain pipe.
 - a. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines.
 - 3. Do not change the direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
 - 4. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.
 - a. Reducing size of waste piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- K. Lay buried building waste piping beginning at low point of each system.
 - 1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
 - 2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
 - 3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- L. Install soil and waste and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Waste: Two percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
 - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Waste Piping: Two percent downward in direction of flow.
 - 3. Vent Piping: One percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- M. Install aboveground PVC piping in accordance with ASTM D2665.
- N. Install underground PVC piping in accordance with ASTM D2321.

O. Plumbing Specialties:

1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
 - a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping.
 - b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
2. Install drains in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
 - a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

P. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings in accordance with the following:

1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
2. PVC Piping: Join in accordance with ASTM D2855 and ASTM D2665 appendixes.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
2. In Waste Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment".
 - 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42 clamps.
 - 4. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
 - a. 100 Ft. (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Ft. (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Ft. (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Ft. (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44 pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 6. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52 spring hangers.
- C. Install hangers for PVC piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- E. Support vertical runs of PVC piping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect waste and vent piping to the following:
 - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect waste piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect waste and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 - 5. Equipment: Connect waste piping as indicated.
 - a. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection.
 - b. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping.
- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections, and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary waste and vent piping in accordance with procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.
 - a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced waste and vent piping until it has been tested and approved.
 - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test waste and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in.
 - a. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10 ft. head of water.
 - b. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop.
 - c. Inspect joints for leaks.
 - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight.
 - a. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg.

- b. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure.
 - c. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout the period of inspection.
 - d. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
- 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
- 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping in accordance with procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved.
 - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials.
 - a. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours.
 - b. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - 3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect sanitary waste and vent piping during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Exposed Plastic Piping: Protect PVC plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.
- E. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by waste and vent piping installation.

3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller are to be the following:
 - 1. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- B. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 (DN 100) is to be the following:

1. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
- C. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller are to be the following:
1. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- D. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger are to be the following:
1. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cleanouts.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for preformed flashings.
 - 2. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for through-penetration firestop assemblies.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Show fabrication and installation details for frost-resistant vent terminals.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sanitary waste piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Sanitary waste piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary waste piping specialty components.

2.2 CLEANOUTS

- A. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 - 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 - 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- B. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- C. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- D. Install sleeve and sleeve seals with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- E. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.
- F. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment, to allow service and maintenance.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319

SECTION 221319.13 - SANITARY DRAINS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Floor drains.
- 2. Hub drains.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene styrene.
- B. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DRAIN ASSEMBLIES

- A. Sanitary drains shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

- A. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

2.3 HUB DRAINS

- A. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
 - 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor per Architectural and Structural drawings.
 - 3. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drains, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install open drain fittings with top of hub 2 inches above floor.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for backwater valves, air admittance devices and miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
- C. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during the remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319.13

SECTION 221513 - GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Piping and related specialties for general-service compressed-air systems, as follows:

1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
2. Joining materials.
3. Valves.
4. Specialties.
5. Quick couplings.
6. Hose Reels

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 221519 "General-Service Packaged Air Compressors and Receivers" for general-service air compressors and accessories.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Low-Pressure, Compressed-Air Piping: System of compressed-air piping and specialties operating at pressures of 150 psig or less.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Safety valves.
2. Pressure regulators. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
3. Automatic drain valves.
4. Filters. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
5. Lubricators. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
6. Quick couplings.
7. Hose assemblies.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Qualification Statements: For Installer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For general-service compressed-air piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each product type from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for low-pressure, compressed-air piping.

2.3 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Schedule 40, Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E or S, Grade B, black or hot-dip zinc coated with ends threaded in accordance with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 1. Steel Nipples: ASTM A733, made of ASTM A53/A53M or ASTM A106, Schedule 40, galvanized seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
 - 2. Malleable-Iron Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150 or 300, threaded.
 - 3. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150 or 300, threaded.

2.4 VALVES

- A. Metal Ball Valves: Comply with requirements in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

2.5 SPECIALTIES

- A. Safety Valves: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," construction; National Board certified, labeled, and factory sealed; constructed of bronze body with poppet-type safety valve for compressed-air service.
 - 1. Pressure Settings: Higher than discharge pressure and same or lower than receiver pressure rating.
- B. Air-Line Pressure Regulators, Bronze Body: Diaphragm or pilot operated, bronze body, direct acting, spring-loaded manual pressure-setting adjustment, and rated for 200 psig minimum inlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Automatic Drain Valves: Stainless steel body and internal parts, rated for 200 psig minimum working pressure, capable of automatic discharge of collected condensate. Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated.

2.6 QUICK COUPLINGS

- A. General Requirements for Quick Couplings: Assembly with locking-mechanism feature for quick connection and disconnection of compressed-air hose.
- B. Automatic-Shutoff Quick Couplings: Straight-through brass body with O-ring or gasket seal and stainless steel or nickel-plated-steel operating parts.
 - 1. Socket End: With one-way valve and threaded inlet for connection to piping or threaded hose fitting.
- C. Valveless Quick Couplings: Straight-through brass body with stainless steel or nickel-plated-steel operating parts.
 - 1. Socket End: With O-ring or gasket seal, without valve, and with barbed inlet for attaching hose.
 - 2. Plug End: With barbed outlet for attaching hose.

2.7 HOSE REELS

- A. General Requirements for Hose Reels: Powder-coated steel, spring retractable, hose ID ½ inch, hose length 50 feet, pressure 300 psi, inlet 3/8 inch, premium duty.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Compressed-Air Piping between Air Compressors and Receivers: Use the following piping materials for each size range:
 - 1. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller, Threaded: Schedule 40, black-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
- B. Low-Pressure Compressed-Air Distribution Piping: Use the following piping materials for each size range:
 - 1. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller, Threaded: Schedule 40, black-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
- C. Drain Piping: Use one of the following piping materials:
 - 1. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Type M copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.

3.2 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Metal General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements and use valve types specified in "Valve Applications" Article in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping," according to the following:
 - 1. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Valve types specified for low-pressure compressed air.
 - 2. Equipment Isolation NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Safety-exhaust, copper-alloy ball valve with exhaust vent and pressure rating at least as great as piping system operating pressure.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PIPING, GENERAL

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of compressed-air piping. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, air-compressor sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal and to coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- F. Install air and drain piping with 1 percent slope downward in direction of flow.
- G. Install nipples, flanges, unions, transition and special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings same as or higher than system pressure rating unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Install eccentric reducers where compressed-air piping is reduced in direction of flow, with bottoms of both pipes and reducer fitting flush.
- I. Install branch connections to compressed-air mains from top of main. Provide drain leg and drain trap at end of each main and branch and at low points.
- J. Install pressure gauge on discharge piping from each air compressor and on each receiver. Comply with requirements in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- K. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- L. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- M. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

- N. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- O. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads in accordance with ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Dissimilar Metal Piping Material Joints: Use dielectric fittings.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF VALVES

- A. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

3.6 INSTALLATION OF DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF SPECIALTIES

- A. Install safety valves on receivers in quantity and size to relieve at least the capacity of connected air compressors.
- B. Install air-main pressure regulators in compressed-air piping at or near air compressors.
- C. Install mechanical filters in compressed-air piping at or near air compressor.
- D. Install quick couplings at piping terminals for hose connections.

3.8 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment and machine.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for hangers, supports, and anchor devices.
- B. Install hangers for steel piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- C. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- D. Support vertical runs of steel piping to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- E. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - 1. 100 Ft. (30 m) or Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.

3.10 LABELING AND IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install identifying labels and devices for general-service compressed-air piping, valves, and specialties. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform field tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Piping Leak Tests for Metal Compressed-Air Piping: Test new and modified parts of existing piping. Cap and fill general-service compressed-air piping with oil-free dry air or gaseous nitrogen to pressure of 50 psig above system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig. Isolate test source and let stand for four hours to equalize temperature. Refill system, if required, to test pressure; hold for two hours with no drop in pressure.
 - 2. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Inspect filters and pressure regulators for proper operation.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 221513

SECTION 221519 - GENERAL-SERVICE PACKAGED AIR COMPRESSORS AND RECEIVERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Reciprocating air compressors - lubricated.
2. Compressed-air dryers - refrigerant type.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Actual Air: Air delivered from air compressors. Flow rate is delivered compressed air measured in acfm.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each product.

1. For each type of product.
 - a. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - b. Include operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations and size of each field connection.
3. Diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For compressed-air equipment.

1. Indicate actual installed items by marking the submittals with an arrow or box.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Extra Stock Material: Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Air Compressor, Inlet-Air-Filter Elements: Equal to 100 percent of amount installed.
2. Belts: Two for each belt-driven compressor.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for delivery, storage, and handling.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty: Manufacturer and installer agree to repair or replace equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Three years pump, two years package from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of air compressor through one source from a single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label receivers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

2.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PACKAGED AIR COMPRESSORS AND RECEIVERS

- A. General Description: Factory-assembled, -wired, -piped, and -tested; electric-motor-driven; air-cooled; continuous-duty air compressors and receivers that deliver air of quality equal to intake air.
- B. Control Panels: Automatic control station with load control and protection functions. Comply with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
 1. Enclosure: NEMA ICS 6, Type 12 control panel unless otherwise indicated.

2. Motor Controllers: Full-voltage, combination magnetic type with undervoltage release feature and motor-circuit-protector-type disconnecting means and short-circuit protective device.
 3. Control Voltage: 120 V ac or less, using integral control power transformer.
 4. Motor Overload Protection: Overload relay in each phase.
 5. Starting Devices: Hand-off-automatic selector switch in cover of control panel, plus pilot device for automatic control.
 6. Instrumentation: Include discharge-air pressure gauge, air-filter maintenance indicator, hour meter, compressor discharge-air and coolant temperature gauges, and control transformer.
 7. Alarm Signal Device: For connection to alarm system to indicate when backup air compressor is operating.
- C. Receivers: Steel tank constructed in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
1. Pressure Rating: At least as high as highest discharge pressure of connected compressors and bearing appropriate code symbols.
 2. Interior Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating.
 3. Accessories: Include safety valve, pressure gauge, drain, and pressure-reducing valve.

2.4 RECIPROCATING AIR COMPRESSORS - LUBRICATED

- A. Compressor(s): Lubricated, reciprocating-piston type with lubricated compression chamber and crankcase.
1. Submerged gear-type oil pump.
 2. Oil filter.
 3. Combined high discharge-air temperature and low lubrication-oil pressure switch.
 4. Belt guard totally enclosing pulleys and belts.
- B. Receiver: ASME construction steel tank.
1. Arrangement: Horizontal.
 2. Capacity: 120 gallon.
 3. Interior Finish: Epoxy or galvanized coating.
 4. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
 5. Drain: Automatic valve.
- C. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer to schedule on design drawings.

2.5 AIR FILTERS - INLET TYPE

- A. Description for Each Compressor: Combination inlet-air filter-silencer, suitable for remote installation, for each air compressor.
1. Construction: Weatherproof housing for replaceable, dry-type filter element, with silencer tubes or other method of sound reduction.

2. Capacity: Match capacity of air compressor, with filter having collection efficiency of 99 percent retention of particles larger than 10 micrometers.

2.6 COMPRESSED-AIR DRYERS - REFRIGERANT TYPE

- A. Description: Noncycling, air-cooled, electric-motor-driven unit with steel enclosure and capability to deliver 35 deg F, 100 psig air at dew point. Include automatic ejection of condensate from airstream, step-down transformers, disconnect switches, inlet and outlet pressure gauges, thermometers, automatic controls, and filters.
- A. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer to schedule on design drawings.

2.7 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
 1. Enclosure: Open, dripproof.
 2. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load does not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of compressed air piping to verify actual location before air compressor installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 1. Install air compressors and air dryers on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install compressed-air equipment anchored to substrate.
- C. Arrange equipment so controls and devices are accessible for servicing.
- D. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
- E. Install the following devices on compressed-air equipment:

1. Thermometer, Pressure Gauge, and Safety Valve: Install on each compressed-air receiver.
2. Pressure Regulators: Install downstream from air compressors and dryers.
3. Automatic Drain Valves: Install on receivers, and dryers. Discharge condensate over nearest floor drain.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221513 "General-Service Compressed-Air Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 1. Nameplate to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify general-service air compressors and components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Check for lubricating oil in lubricated-type equipment.
3. Check belt drives for proper tension.
4. Verify that air compressor inlet filters and piping are clear.
5. Check for equipment vibration-control supports and flexible pipe connectors and verify that equipment is properly attached to substrate.
6. Check safety valves for correct settings. Ensure that settings are higher than air compressor discharge pressure, but not higher than rating of system components.
7. Drain receiver tanks.
8. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
9. Test and adjust controls and safeties.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust equipment to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust control set points.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection.
 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start unit to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 5. Air compressors, aftercoolers, air dryers, and controllers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air compressors and air dryers.

END OF SECTION 221519

SECTION 223400 - FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Commercial, power-vent, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
2. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of commercial, gas-fired, domestic-water heater.
- B. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. Commercial, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: Three years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: One year(s).
 - b. Expansion Tanks: Five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Fabricate and label fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- C. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
 - 2. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, finned-tube, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV.
- D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

2.2 COMMERCIAL, GAS-FIRED, STORAGE, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Commercial, Power-Vent, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters: Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings for further requirements.

2.3 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

A. Domestic-Water Expansion Tanks:

1. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
2. Construction:
 - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
3. Capacity and Characteristics: Refer to design drawings.

B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement in accordance with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

D. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.

E. Comply with requirements for ball -type shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."

1. Comply with requirements for balancing valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

F. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15/CSA 9.1, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.

G. Gas Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3, appliance type. Include pressure rating as required to match gas supply.

H. Automatic Gas Valves: ANSI Z21.21/CSA 6.5, appliance, electrically operated, on-off automatic valve.

I. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.

J. Pressure Relief Valves: Include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater.

1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
- K. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 3. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 4. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 5. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 6. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 7. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Install domestic-water heaters level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
 1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping.
- C. Install gas-fired, domestic-water heaters in accordance with NFPA 54.
 1. Install gas shutoff valves on gas supply piping to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without shutoff valves.
 2. Install gas pressure regulators on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without gas pressure regulators if gas pressure regulators are required to reduce gas pressure at burner.
 3. Install automatic gas valves on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters if required for operation of safety control.
 4. Comply with requirements for gas shutoff valves, gas pressure regulators, and automatic gas valves specified in Section 231123 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping."

- D. Install commercial domestic-water heaters with seismic-restraint devices.
- E. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend domestic-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- F. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- G. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- H. Fill domestic-water heaters with water.
- I. Charge domestic-water expansion tanks with air to required system pressure.
- J. Install dielectric fittings in all locations where piping of dissimilar metals is to be joined. The wetted surface of the dielectric fitting contacted by potable water shall contain less than 0.25 percent of lead by weight.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Comply with requirements for fuel-oil piping specified in Section 231113 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."
- C. Comply with requirements for gas piping specified in Section 231123 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping."
- D. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters. Training shall be a minimum of one hour(s).

END OF SECTION 223400

SECTION 224200 - COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Commercial lavatories.
2. Commercial sinks.
3. Commercial urinals.
4. Commercial water closets.
5. Flushometer valves.
6. Toilet seats.
7. Fixture carriers.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 224500 "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures" for emergency plumbing fixtures.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Standard-Efficiency Flush Volume: 1.6 gal. per flush.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for plumbing fixtures.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories and/or counter-mounted sinks.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data:

1. For lavatories and faucets.
 - a. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - 1) Servicing and adjustments of automatic faucets.
2. For sinks and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals
3. For flushometer valves and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- ### A. Furnish extra materials to Owner that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 3. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than three of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- #### A. Lavatory faucets, sink faucets, shower valves, and wash fountain spray heads and faucets intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), with requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ), and with NSF 61 and NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, in that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
- #### B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

- #### A. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

2.3 COMMERCIAL SINKS

- A. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

2.4 COMMERCIAL URINALS

- A. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

2.5 COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

- A. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

2.6 FLUSHOMETER VALVES

- A. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

2.7 TOILET SEATS

- A. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

2.8 FIXTURE CARRIERS

- A. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water-supply piping and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbing fixture installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where plumbing fixtures will be installed.
- C. Examine counters for suitable conditions where lavatories and sinks will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES

- A. Lavatory Installation:
 - 1. Install lavatories level and plumb in accordance with roughing-in drawings.
 - 2. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.

3. Install accessible, wall-mounted lavatories at mounting height in accordance with ICC A117.1.
4. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each lavatory faucet. Install stops in locations that are accessible for ease of operation.
5. Install trap and waste piping on each drain outlet of each lavatory to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
6. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
7. Seal joints between lavatories, counters, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
8. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

B. Sink Installation:

1. Install sinks level and plumb in accordance with roughing-in drawings.
2. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted sinks.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted sinks at mounting height in accordance with ICC A117.1.
4. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
5. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
 - a. Exception: Use ball or gate valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523 "General Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - b. Install stops/valves in locations that are accessible for ease of operation.
6. Install trap and waste piping on each drain outlet of each sink to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
7. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
8. Seal joints between sinks, counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
9. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

C. Urinal Installation:

1. Install urinals level and plumb in accordance with roughing-in drawings.
2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste-fitting seals and attached to supports.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height in accordance with ICC A117.1.
4. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.

5. Use off-floor carriers with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet urinals.
6. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible urinals.
7. Measure support height installation from finished floor, not structural floor.
8. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each urinal.
9. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
10. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible urinals with handle mounted on open side of compartment.
11. Install actuators in locations easily reachable for people with disabilities.
12. Install new batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.
13. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
14. Seal joints between urinals, walls, and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to urinal color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

D. Water Closet Installation:

1. Install water closets level and plumb in accordance with roughing-in drawings.
2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
3. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
4. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
5. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.
6. Install actuators in locations easily reachable for people with disabilities.
7. Install new batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.
8. Install toilet seats on water closets.
9. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
10. Seal joints between water closets, walls, and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to water-closet color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect plumbing fixtures with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match plumbing fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil, waste, and vent piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Install protective-shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible plumbing fixtures. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

- E. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets and urinals allow space for service and maintenance.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust plumbing fixtures and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning plumbing fixtures, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.
- C. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.
- D. Install new batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of plumbing fixtures, inspect and repair damages finishes. Replace any fixtures unable to be repaired to the satisfaction of the Architect.
- B. Clean plumbing fixtures and associated faucets, valves, flushometer valves, and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed plumbing fixtures and associated faucets, valves, flushometer valves, and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224200

SECTION 224500 - EMERGENCY PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Eye/face wash equipment.
2. Water-tempering equipment.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible Fixture: Emergency plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
- B. Plumbed Emergency Plumbing Fixture: Fixture with fixed, potable-water supply.
- C. Tepid: Between 60 and 100 deg F.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include flow rates and capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 2. Details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Emergency fixture third-party certification documentation.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For emergency plumbing fixtures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ANSI/ISEA Z358.1 for emergency plumbing fixtures including third-party certification of fixtures.
- B. Comply with ASSE 1071 for temperature-actuated mixing valves for plumbed emergency fixtures.
- C. Comply with ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 for water-supply fittings.
- D. Comply with ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for plumbing waste fittings.
- E. Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- F. Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1 for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.

2.2 EYE/FACE WASH EQUIPMENT

- A. Eye/Face Wash Units - Standard, Wall Mounted, Plumbed: EW1.
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain eye/face wash units, standard, wall mounted, plumbed, from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule for additional information.
 - 3. Supply Piping: NPS 1/2 chrome-plated brass or stainless steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
 - 4. Mounting: Wall bracket.
 - 5. Accessories:
 - a. Thermostatic mixing valve assembly including ball valve shutoffs and outlet temperature gauge.

2.3 WATER-TEMPERING EQUIPMENT

- A. Water-Tempering Equipment - Hot and Cold Water.
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain water-tempering equipment, hot and cold water, from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Description: Factory-fabricated equipment with thermostatic mixing valve.
 - a. Thermostatic Mixing Valve: Designed to provide 85 deg F tepid, potable water at emergency plumbing fixtures, to maintain temperature at plus or minus 5 deg F throughout required 15-minute test period, and in case of unit failure to continue cold-water flow, with union connections, controls, metal piping, and corrosion-resistant enclosure.
 - b. Supply Connections: For hot and cold water.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water and waste piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbed emergency plumbing fixture installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EMERGENCY PLUMBING FIXTURE

- A. Assemble emergency plumbing fixture piping, fittings, control valves, and other components.
- B. Install fixtures level and plumb.
- C. Fasten fixtures to substrate.
- D. Install shutoff valves in water-supply piping to fixtures, to facilitate maintenance of equipment. Use ball or gate valve if specific type valve is not indicated. Install valves chained or locked in open position if permitted. Install valves in locations where they can easily be reached for operation. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 1. Exceptions:
 - a. Omit shutoff valve on supply to emergency equipment if prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Install dielectric fitting in supply piping to emergency equipment if piping and equipment connections are made of different metals. Comply with requirements for dielectric fittings specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- F. Install thermometers in supply and outlet piping connections to water-tempering equipment. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- G. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of emergency equipment receptors that are indicated to be directly connected to drainage system. Comply with requirements for waste piping specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- H. Install escutcheons on piping wall and ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect cold-water-supply piping to plumbed emergency plumbing fixtures not having water-tempering equipment. Comply with requirements for cold-water piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

- B. Connect hot- and cold-water-supply piping to hot- and cold-water, water-tempering equipment. Connect output from water-tempering equipment to emergency plumbing fixtures. Comply with requirements for hot- and cold-water piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Directly connect emergency plumbing fixture receptors with trapped drain outlet to sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for waste piping specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Indirectly connect emergency plumbing fixture receptors without trapped drain outlet to sanitary waste or storm drainage piping.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to emergency plumbing fixtures allow space for service and maintenance of fixtures.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install equipment nameplates or equipment markers on emergency plumbing fixtures and equipment and equipment signs on water-tempering equipment. Comply with requirements for identification materials specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Mechanical-Component Testing: After plumbing connections have been made, test for compliance with requirements. Verify ability to achieve indicated capacities.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection.
 - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - 5. Emergency plumbing fixtures and water-tempering equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust emergency plumbing fixtures and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning fixtures and controls.
- B. Adjust or replace fixture flow regulators for proper flow.

- C. Adjust equipment temperature settings.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean emergency plumbing fixtures with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed emergency plumbing fixtures and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of emergency plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224500

SECTION 224716 - PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pressure water coolers and related components.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pressure water cooler.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For pressure water coolers to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filter Cartridges: Equal to 100 percent of quantity installed for each type and size indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

- A. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule on design drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Set freestanding pressure water coolers on floor.
- C. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.
- D. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball, gate, or globe valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
- F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings.
- G. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Install ball, gate, or globe shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.
- B. Adjust pressure water-cooler temperature settings.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. After installing fixture, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.
- D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224716

SECTION 226600 - CHEMICAL-WASTE SYSTEMS FOR LABORATORY FACILITIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall pipe and fittings.
2. Joining materials.
3. Piping specialties.
4. Neutralization tanks.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For chemical-waste specialties and neutralization tanks to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Neutralization-Tank Limestone: Equal to 200 percent of amount required for each tank sump initial charge. Furnish limestone in 50-lb bags.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store piping and specialties with sealing plugs in ends or with end protection.
- B. Do not store plastic pipe or fittings in direct sunlight.
- C. Protect pipe, fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Single-Wall Piping Pressure Rating: 10 feet head of water for 30 minutes.

2.2 SINGLE-WALL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PP Drainage Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F1412, extruded pipe and drainage-pattern fittings molded, with Schedule 40 dimensions and with fire-retardant additive complying with ASTM D4101; with fusion- and mechanical-joint ends.
 - 1. Exception: Pipe and fittings made from PP resin without fire-retardant additive may be
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain pipe and fittings from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Adapters and Transition Fittings: Assemblies with combinations of clamps, couplings, adapters, and gaskets; compatible with piping and system liquid; made for joining different piping materials.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Couplings: Assemblies with combinations of clamps, gaskets, sleeves, and threaded or flanged parts; compatible with piping and system liquid; and made by piping manufacturer for joining system piping.
- B. Adapters and Transition Fittings: Assemblies with combinations of clamps, couplings, adapters, gaskets, and threaded or flanged parts; compatible with piping and system liquid; and made for joining different piping materials.

2.4 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. PP Floor Drains:
 - 1. Refer to schedule on design drawings.

2.5 NEUTRALIZATION TANKS

- A. Plastic Neutralization Tanks:
 - 1. Description: Corrosion-resistant plastic materials; with removable, gastight cover; interior, sidewall, dip-tube inlet; outlet; vent; and threaded or flanged, sidewall pipe connections.
 - 2. Refer to schedule on design drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Chemical-Waste Sewerage Outside the Building:

1. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground chemical-waste sewerage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to an extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow the piping manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions for using lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
3. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
4. Clear interior of piping and structures of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain a swab or drag inside piping and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day and when work stops.

B. Chemical-Waste Piping Inside the Building:

1. Install piping adjacent to equipment, accessories, and specialties, to allow space for service and maintenance.
2. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used unless otherwise indicated.
3. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
6. Install piping at indicated slopes.
7. Install piping free of sags and bends.
8. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
9. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
10. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

3.3 PIPING SPECIALTY INSTALLATION

- A. Embed floor drains in 4-inch-minimum depth of concrete around bottom and sides. Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete.
- B. Fasten grates to drains if indicated.
- C. Set floor drains with tops flush with pavement surface.
- D. Install cleanouts and riser extension from sewer pipe to cleanout at grade. Use fittings of same material as sewer pipe at branches for cleanouts and riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in pipe.
 - 1. Set cleanout bodies in earth in cast-in-place concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches deep. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding grade. Set cleanout plugs in concrete pavement, with tops flush with pavement surface. Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for formwork, reinforcement, and concrete requirements.

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Chemical-Waste Sewerage Outside the Building:
 - 1. Plastic-Piping Fusion Joints: Make PP drainage-piping joints in accordance with ASTM F1290.
 - 2. Join dissimilar pipe materials with adapters compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- B. Chemical-Waste Piping Inside the Building:
 - 1. Plastic-Piping Fusion Joints: Make PP drainage-piping joints in accordance with ASTM F1290.
 - 2. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with both system materials.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe sizes in this article refer to aboveground single-wall piping.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for pipe hanger and support devices. Install the following:
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or MSS Type 42 riser clamps.
 - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for installation of supports.
- D. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.

- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to minimum of 3/8 inch.
- F. Install supports for vertical PP piping every 72 inches.
- G. Support piping and tubing not listed above in accordance with MSS SP-58.

3.6 NEUTRALIZATION TANK INSTALLATION

- A. Install exterior neutralization tanks, complete with appurtenances indicated.
 - 1. Set tops of tank covers flush with finished surface where covers occur in pavements. Set covers 3 inches above finished surface elsewhere unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Include initial fill of limestone for neutralization tanks.
- B. Install interior neutralization tanks on smooth and level concrete base. Include full initial charge of limestone.

3.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete support.
- B. Place cast-in-place concrete in accordance with ACI 318/318R.

3.8 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Make connections to existing piping, so finished Work complies as nearly as practical with requirements specified for new Work.
- C. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for sewerage piping branch connections.
- D. Protect existing piping to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for labeling of equipment and piping.
 - 1. Use warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
 - 2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust neutralization-system set points.

3.11 CLEANING

- A. Use procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if not prescribed, use procedures described below:
 - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 - 2. Clean piping by flushing with potable water.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect interior of sewerage piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place and again at completion of Project.
 - 1. Defects requiring correction include the following:
 - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between inspection points.
 - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
 - c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
 - d. Hydrostatic Tests for Drainage Piping:
 - 1) Allowable leakage is a maximum of 50 gal./inch of nominal pipe size per mile of pipe during 24-hour period.
 - 2) Close openings in system and fill with water.
 - 3) Purge air and refill with water.
 - 4) Disconnect water supply.
 - 5) Test and inspect joints for leaks.
 - 2. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - 3. Submit separate reports for each test.
- B. Replace leaking sewerage piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.
- C. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- E. Chemical-waste piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.13 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Single-Wall, Chemical-Waste Sewerage Piping: Use the following piping materials for each size range:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4 PP: Drainage pipe and fittings and fusion joints.
- C. Aboveground Chemical-Waste Piping: Use the following piping materials for each size range:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 6 PP: Drainage piping and fusion or mechanical joints.
- D. Under Slab-on-Grade, Indoor, Chemical-Waste Piping: Use the following piping materials for each size range:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 6 PP: Drainage piping and fusion joints.

END OF SECTION 226600

SECTION 230000 – GENERAL MECHANICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The work shall include furnishing, installing, and testing the equipment and materials specified in other sections of the Mechanical Specifications and shown on the Drawings. It is the intent of these Specifications that the mechanical systems shall be suitable in every way for the intended usage. All material and all work which may be reasonably implied as being incidental to the work of this Division shall be furnished at no extra cost.
- B. Instructions to Bidders, General Conditions of the Contract, Supplementary General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections bound herewith are a component part of Division 23 specifications. Comply with all provisions, details, and instructions of these sections in the accomplishment of work covered under Division 23.
- C. Furnish all labor, materials and equipment and incidentals required to make ready for use complete mechanical systems as shown on the Drawings and specified herein.
- D. Where Sub-Contracts are used to perform portions of the work, division of labor between sub trades is the responsibility of the Contractor.
- E. The general scope work includes, but is not limited to, furnishing, coordinating, and installing the following:
 - 1. Heating, air conditioning and ventilation equipment.
 - 2. Ductwork, air distribution.
 - 3. HVAC piping, specialties, and equipment.
 - 4. Controls and wiring.
 - 5. Commissioning, testing, and balancing.
- F. Visit all areas of the site, buildings and structures (as applicable) in which work under these sections is to be performed. Inspect carefully the existing conditions prior to bidding. Bid submission is evidence that the Contractor has examined the site and existing conditions, understands conditions under which the work will be performed, and takes full responsibility for complete knowledge of all factors governing the work.
- G. Schedule all service interruptions in existing facilities at the Owner's convenience with 24 hours (minimum) notice. Obtain prior approval for each interruption.
- H. Thoroughly test all mechanical systems at the completion of work and make any minor correction changes or adjustments necessary for all the proper functioning of the system and equipment. All workmanship shall be of the highest quality; substandard work will be rejected.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Procedures for submittals: Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

Transmit each shop drawing submittal with provided Shop Drawing Submittal Cover Form, attached as Appendix B, for each item of equipment/material or each specification section/paragraph.

- B. Clearly indicate proposed equipment and/or materials substitutions in shop drawings. Summarize all deviations from the specified quality, functionality, appearance, or performance of proposed equipment and/or materials in the preface of each submittal. Include documentation to support deviations.
- C. Provide descriptive data on all materials and equipment as required to ascertain compliance with Specifications.
- D. The design layout shown on drawings is based on physical sizes of reputable equipment manufacturers. If equipment other than the models indicated is installed, any resulting conflicts with space, maintenance access, clearances or codes are the responsibility of the Contractor to correct at his expense.
- E. Where specific models and manufacturers of materials and equipment are specified, substitutions as allowed by the specifications and State law will be considered. Substitutions must be equivalent in quality, function, suitability, and arrangement to specified equipment. Architect/Engineer to have final authority as to equivalency of substitutions.
- F. Equipment model numbers noted in these specifications or on the drawings are intended to establish a minimum standard of quality and do not necessarily relate to specific options or arrangement as shown. Provide equipment with all standard features and optional features as stated and arranged as shown on the drawings.

1.3 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Perform Work in accordance with all applicable state and local codes, standards, and regulations.
- B. Furnish all materials and labor which is required for compliance with codes, standards, and regulations, whether specifically mentioned in these specifications or shown on the drawings.
- C. Obtain required construction permit from the authority having jurisdiction and arrange, at the proper time, for all inspections required by such authority. Pay all permit and inspection costs required.

1.4 COORDINATION OF WORK

- A. The contractor is responsible for coordination of work between trades. Provide fully complete and functional systems.

- B. Compare mechanical drawings and specifications with the drawings and specifications for other trades.
- C. Coordinate mechanical installation with the work of other trades. Report any pertinent discrepancies to the Architect/Engineer and obtain written instructions for any necessary revisions. Before starting any construction, make proper provisions to avoid interferences in a manner approved by the Architect/Engineer. No extras will be allowed for rework of uncoordinated installations.
- D. Determine exact route and location of each mechanical item prior to fabrication and/or installation. Adjust location of ducts, piping, and equipment, etc., to accommodate interferences anticipated and encountered.
- E. Right of Way: General priority for right of way is as follows:
 - 1. Items located per regulatory requirement.
 - 2. Piping with pitch requirement (plumbing drains, etc.).
 - 3. Ductwork.
 - 4. Piping without pitch requirement.
 - 5. Electrical wiring (conduits, etc.).
- F. Arrange all work to permit removal (without damage to other parts) of any equipment requiring periodic replacement.
- G. Provide clearance and easy access to any equipment which requires periodic maintenance. Arrange ducts, piping, and equipment to permit ready access to valves, traps, starters, motors, control components, etc., and to clear the opening of swinging doors and access panels.

1.5 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS (GENERAL)

- A. Provide all new materials unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- B. Manufacturers and models listed in drawings and specifications are used for layout and to convey to bidders the general style, type, character, and quality of product desired. Listed examples are used only to denote the quality standard of product desired and are not intended to restrict bidders to a specific brand, make, manufacturer or specific name.
- C. Adjust layout, system connections and coordinate with other trades as required to properly install equivalent products.
- D. Where equivalent products are submitted, include all associated costs related to substitution in bid.
- E. Furnish materials bearing the manufacturer's name and trade name. Provide a UL label where a UL standard has been established for the material.
- F. Furnish standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in production of equipment types required for the work. Use the manufacturer's latest approved design.

- G. Use the same manufacturer for equipment and materials of the same general type throughout the work to obtain uniform appearance, operation, and maintenance.
- H. Protect equipment and materials from dirt, water, chemical or mechanical injury and theft always during construction. Provide covers or shelter as required.
- I. If materials or equipment are damaged at any time prior to final acceptance of the work, repair such damage at no additional cost. If materials or equipment are damaged by water, provide replacement at no additional cost.
- J. Follow manufacturer's directions completely in the delivery, storage, protection and installation of all equipment and materials. Notify the Architect/Engineer in writing of any conflicts between any requirements of the contract documents and manufacturer's directions. Obtain written instructions before proceeding with the work. The Contractor is responsible for correction of any work that does not comply with the manufacturer's directions or written instructions from the Architect/Engineer at no additional cost.
- K. Repair any damage to factory applied paint finish using touch-up paint furnished by the equipment manufacturer.

1.6 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Refer to individual mechanical sections and Division 1.

1.7 PAINTING

- A. Protect sensors, controllers, etc. against painting. Do not install thermostats, devices or trim until painting is complete.

1.8 LOCATIONS AND MEASUREMENTS

- A. Location of mechanical work is shown on the drawings as accurately as possible. Field verify all measurements to insure that the work suits the surrounding structure, trim, finishes and/or construction. Provide adjustment as necessary.
- B. Make minor relocations of work prior to installation as required or as directed by the Architect/Engineer at no additional cost.

1.9 SUPERVISION

- A. Contractor to provide an authorized and competent representative to constantly supervise the work from the beginning to completion and final acceptance. Insofar as possible, keep the same foreman and workmen throughout the project duration.
- B. Representatives of Architect/Engineer, Owner, and local inspection authorities will make inspections during the progress of the work. Contractor to accommodate such inspections and correct deficiencies noted.

1.10 QUALITY AND WORKMANSHIP

- A. Contractors must employ skilled tradesmen, laborers and supervisors. Final product to present a neat, well finished, and professional installation.
- B. Remove and replace any work considered substandard quality in the judgement of the Architect/Engineer.

1.11 CLOSING IN WORK

- A. Do not cover up or enclose work until it has been inspected, tested, and approved by authorities having jurisdiction over the work. Uncover any such work for inspection and/or test at no additional cost. Restore the work to its original condition after inspection and/or test at no additional cost.

1.12 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Perform all cutting and patching necessary to install work under this Division.
- B. Perform cutting and patching in professional, workmanlike manner.
- C. Arrange work to minimize cutting and patching.
- D. Do not cut joists, beams, girders, columns, or any other structural members without written permission from the Architect/Engineer.
- E. Cut opening only large enough to allow easy installation of piping, wiring or ductwork.
- F. Patching material to match material removed.
- G. Restore patched surface to its original appearance at completion of patching.
- H. Where waterproofed surfaces are patched, maintain integrity of waterproofing.
- I. Remove rubble and excess patching materials from the premises.

1.13 INTERPRETATION OF DRAWINGS

- A. Drawings and specifications under this Division are complementary each to the other. Provide any work specified herein and/or indicated on the drawings.
- B. Drawings are diagrammatic and indicate generally the location of fixtures, piping, devices, equipment, etc. Follow drawings as closely as possible but arrange work to suit the finished surroundings and/or trim.
- C. The words “furnish”, “provide”, and/or “install” as used in these drawings and specifications are interpreted to include all material and labor necessary to complete the item, system, equipment, etc.

- D. Any omissions from either the drawings or specifications are unintentional. Contractor is responsible for notifying the Architect/Engineer of any pertinent omissions before submitting a bid. Complete working systems are required, whether every small item of material is shown and specified or not.

1.14 ACCESSIBILITY

- A. Locate all equipment which must be serviced, operated, or maintained in fully accessible positions. Equipment to include, but not be limited to, valves, traps, cleanouts, motors, controllers, and dampers. If required for accessibility, furnish access doors for this purpose. Minor deviations from drawings may be made to allow for better accessibility. Lack of access doors on drawings does not relieve Contractor of responsibility to provide access doors, if needed to properly service equipment.
- B. Coordinate exact locations and size of access panels for each concealed device requiring service.
- C. Access panels: Steel construction with 16-gauge frames and 18-gauge panels, factory primed with rust inhibiting paint, finish paint by Contractor. Provide suitable UL listed doors where installed in rated construction.
- D. Coordinate access panel locations with architectural construction.
- E. Access panels are not required for access to work located above a lift-out "T" bar type ceiling.

1.15 ELECTRICAL WORK IN CONNECTION WITH MECHANICAL CONTRACTS

- A. Comply with Division 26. Any required Division 23 electrical work not specifically specified to be furnished by Division 26 Contractor shall be provided by Division 23 Contractor.
- B. All electrical work performed Division 23 shall comply with Division 26 specification requirements. Install control wiring in conduit.
- C. Coordinate electrical interface of supplied mechanical equipment with electrical system. Division 26 electrical work for mechanical systems is based on values scheduled on mechanical drawings. Division 23 Contractor is responsible for any costs to modify the contracted electrical work to service equipment with electrical characteristics different than those scheduled.

1.16 MECHANICAL WORK IN CONNECTION WITH OTHER CONTRACTS

- A. Provide mechanical services as required for items furnished by other contractors or vendors as shown on the Drawings. Actual requirements may vary from Drawings. Coordinate with equipment installed. Make final connections only after approval of the other contractor or vendor, in the contractor's or vendor's presence.

1.17 ALTERNATE BIDS

- A. Alternate Bids, IF ANY, are described in relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections.

1.18 PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. As the work progresses, legibly record all field changes on a set of project contract drawings, herein after called the "record drawings."
- C. Record drawings shall accurately show the installed condition of mechanical work.

1.19 PHASING OF THE WORK

- A. Schedule work in accordance with the relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

1.20 PROJECT CLOSEOUT

- A. Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 230000

SECTION 230500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Motors.
2. Sleeves without waterstop.
3. Sleeves with waterstop.
4. Silicone sealants.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product, excluding motors which are included in Part 1 of HVAC equipment Sections.
 - a. Include construction details, material descriptions, and dimensions of individual components, and finishes.
 - b. Include operating characteristics and furnished accessories.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MOTORS

A. Motor Requirements, General:

1. Content includes motors for use on alternating-current power systems of up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.
2. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in equipment schedules or Sections.
3. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

B. Motor Characteristics:

1. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 ft. above sea level.

2. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

C. Single-Phase Motors:

1. Motors larger than 1/20 hp must be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - a. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - b. Split phase.
 - c. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 - d. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
2. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
3. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
4. Motors 1/20 hp and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
5. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device will automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

D. Electronically Commutated Motors:

1. Microprocessor-Based Electronic Control Module: Converts 120 V single-phase AC power to three-phase DC power to operate the brushless DC motor.
2. Three-phase power motor module with permanent magnet rotor.
3. Digital speed controller/LED display.
4. Building Automation System Interface: Via AC voltage signal DC voltage signal or Digital Serial Interface (DSI).

2.2 SLEEVES

A. Sleeves without Waterstop:

1. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron, with plain ends.
2. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, hot-dip galvanized, with plain ends.
3. Steel Sheet Sleeves: ASTM A653/A653M, 24-gauge minimum thickness; hot-dip galvanized, round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
4. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.
5. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange.
6. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange.

B. Sleeves with Waterstop:

1. Description: Manufactured PVC/HDPE, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly, made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.

C. Silicone Sealants:

1. Silicone Sealant, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
 - a. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
2. Silicone Sealant, S, P, T, NT: Single-component, 100/50, pourable, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
 - a. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.
3. Silicone Foam Sealant: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

2.3 ESCUTCHEONS

A. Escutcheon Types:

1. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES - GENERAL

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- B. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 3. Using silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in floors/slabs/walls without sleeve-seal system. Select to maintain fire resistance of floor/slab/wall.
- C. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.

3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants that joint sealant manufacturer's literature indicates is appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
 - D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- 3.2 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES WITH WATERSTOP
- A. Install sleeve with waterstop as slabs are constructed.
 - B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs. Position waterstop flange centered across width of concrete slab.
 - C. Secure nailing flanges to wooden concrete forms.
 - D. Using silicone sealant, seal space around outside of sleeves.
- 3.3 INSTALLATION OF ESCUTCHEONS
- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
 - B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
- 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Sleeves:
 1. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - a. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - b. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
 2. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 - B. Escutcheons:
 1. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.
- 3.5 SLEEVES APPLICATION
- A. Use sleeves for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Exterior Concrete Walls above and below Grade:
 - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
2. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
3. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
4. Interior Walls and Partitions:
 - a. Sleeves without waterstops.

3.6 ESCUTCHEONS APPLICATION

- A. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 1. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
 2. Chrome-Plated Piping: One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 3. Insulated Piping:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 4. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 5. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 6. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 7. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
 - a. One piece, steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- B. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- C. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 1. New Piping: Split floor plate.

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe hangers and supports - metal.
2. Pipe hangers - metal, trapeze type.
3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
4. Fastener systems.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe.
2. Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation devices.
3. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS - METAL

A. Pipe Hangers and Supports - Carbon Steel:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated, or epoxy powder coated.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washers made of carbon steel.

B. Pipe/Tube Hangers and Supports - Copper:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-plated steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-plated steel.

2.2 PIPE HANGERS - METAL, TRAPEZE TYPE

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100 psi or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125 psi minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100 psi or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125 psi minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield are to cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield to cover bottom 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Fastener System - Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities required for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Fastener System - Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities required for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Indoor Applications: Zinc-plated steel.
 - 2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- B. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; galvanized.
- C. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated or galvanized steel for indoor applications and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar materials as rods.
- D. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.

2. Design Mix: 5000 psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination is to include weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- B. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- C. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, and at changes in direction of piping. Coordinate location of concrete inserts before concrete is placed.
- D. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- E. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- F. Insulated Piping:
 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used as an option. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields are to span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used as an option. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - G. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
 - H. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 2. Field fabricate in accordance with ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - I. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
 - J. Fastener System Installation:
 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick after concrete is placed and cured. Use installers that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer.
 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 3. Install fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 4. Install lag screw wood fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - K. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS
- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers.
 - B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded.
 - C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.

3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup:
 1. Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - a. Apply paint with a brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
 2. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports or metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- O. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

SECTION 230548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Elastomeric isolation pads.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

- A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:
 - 1. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
 - 2. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
 - 3. Minimum deflection as indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Pad Material: Oil- and water-resistant rubber.
 - 5. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
 - 6. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
 - 7. Sandwich-Core Material: Resilient and elastomeric.
 - a. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICES

- A. Provide vibration control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules, where Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems, and where required by applicable codes.
- B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stress or misalignment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after the system is at operating weight.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Remove and replace malfunctioning units.

END OF SECTION 230548.13

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Pipe labels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
3. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures of up to 160 deg F.
4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances of up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
6. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

2.2 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction in accordance with ASME A13.1.

- B. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- D. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- E. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings.
 - 1. Lettering Size: Size letters in accordance with ASME A13.1 for piping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustic ceilings and similar concealment.
- D. Locate identifying devices so that they are readily visible from the point of normal approach.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Permanently fasten labels on each item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Sign and Label Colors:
 - 1. White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-blue background.
- C. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF PIPE LABELS

- A. Install pipe labels showing service with permanent adhesive on pipes.

- B. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
1. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 2. Within 3 ft. of equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 3. Spaced at maximum intervals of 25 ft. along each run. Reduce intervals to 10 ft. in areas of congested piping, ductwork, and equipment.
- C. Pipe-Label Color Schedule:
1. Condensate and Refrigerant Piping: White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-green background.

END OF SECTION 230553

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.
2. HVAC-control system verification.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- C. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report, as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures, as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists, as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.

- G. Sample report forms.
- H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
 - 1. Instrument type and make.
 - 2. Serial number.
 - 3. Application.
 - 4. Dates of use.
 - 5. Dates of calibration.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by AABC:
 - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
 - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
- B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."
- D. Code and AHJ Compliance: TAB is required to comply with governing codes and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.
- B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data, including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums used for HVAC to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas and sealed.
- F. Examine equipment performance data, including fan curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- K. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- L. Examine control dampers for proper installation for their intended function of isolating, throttling, diverting, or mixing air flows.
- M. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
 - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
 - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
 - 3. Instrumentation to be used.

4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
 1. Airside:
 - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
 - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
 - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
 - d. Clean filters are installed.
 - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
 - f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
 - g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - h. Ceilings are installed.
 - i. Windows and doors are installed.
 - j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system in accordance with the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts and equipment casings for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 3. Where holes for probes are required in piping or hydronic equipment, install pressure and temperature test plugs to seal systems.
 4. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish in accordance with Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC EQUIPMENT

- A. Test, adjust, and balance HVAC equipment indicated on Drawings, including, but not limited to, the following:
 1. Motors.
 2. Fans and ventilators.

3. Energy Recovery units.
4. Split-system air conditioners.
5. Variable-refrigerant-flow systems.
6. Heat pumps.

3.5 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.
 - c. Where duct conditions are unsuitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.

- b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
 3. Review Contractor-prepared shop drawings and Record drawings to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 4. Obtain approval from Commissioning Authority for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
 1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
 2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
 1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
 2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
 3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, speed, volts, amps, and static profile.
 4. Mark all final settings.
 5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
 6. Measure and record all operating data.
 7. Record final fan-performance data.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 2. Motor horsepower rating.
 3. Motor rpm.

4. Phase and hertz.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
8. Service factor and frame size.

- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR AIR-COOLED CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fan(s).
- B. Measure and record entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Measure and record entering and leaving refrigerant pressures.
- D. Measure and record operating data of compressor(s), fan(s), and motors.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
 1. Nameplate data.
 2. Airflow.
 3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
 4. Air pressure drop.
 5. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
 6. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
 7. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:
 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 3. Airflow.
 4. Air pressure drop.
 5. Entering and leaving refrigerant pressure and temperatures.

3.10 HVAC CONTROLS VERIFICATION

- A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:
 1. Verify HVAC control system is operating within the design limitations.
 2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are following Contract Documents.
 3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
 4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
 5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.

6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.

- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

3.11 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent. If design value is less than 100 cfm, within 10 cfm.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent. If design value is less than 100 cfm, within 10 cfm.

- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.12 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for system-balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to system-balancing devices, to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance-measuring and -balancing devices.

3.13 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.

- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Fan curves.
2. Manufacturers' test data.
3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
1. Title page.
 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
 3. Project name.
 4. Project location.
 5. Architect's name and address.
 6. Engineer's name and address.
 7. Contractor's name and address.
 8. Report date.
 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 11. Summary of contents, including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 15. Test conditions for fans performance forms, including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Heating coil, dry-bulb conditions.
 - e. Fan drive settings, including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - f. Settings for pressure controller(s).
 - g. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
 16. Test conditions for pump performance forms, including the following:
 - a. Variable-frequency controller settings for variable-flow hydronic systems.
 - b. Settings for pressure controller(s).
 - c. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 2. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 3. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.

- b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Unit arrangement and class.
 - g. Discharge arrangement.
 - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
2. Motor Data:
- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and speed.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan speed.
 - d. Inlet and discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. For each filter bank, filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - i. List for each internal component with pressure-drop, static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - j. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
 - k. Return airflow in cfm.
 - l. Outdoor-air damper position.
 - m. Return-air damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:
- a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Coil type.
 - d. Number of rows.
 - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
 - f. Make and model number.
 - g. Face area in sq. ft..
 - h. Tube size in NPS.
 - i. Tube and fin materials.
 - j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Average face velocity in fpm.
- c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
- d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- h. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
- i. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
- j. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.

G. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil identification.
- d. Capacity in Btu/h.
- e. Number of stages.
- f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
- g. Rated amperage.
- h. Airflow rate in cfm.
- i. Face area in sq. ft..
- j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Heat output in Btu/h.
- b. Airflow rate in cfm.
- c. Air velocity in fpm.
- d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
- e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
- f. Voltage at each connection.
- g. Amperage for each phase.

H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Make and type.
- d. Model number and size.
- e. Manufacturer's serial number.
- f. Arrangement and class.
- g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Motor Data:

- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
- b. Horsepower and speed.
- c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
- g. Number, make, and size of belts.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
- c. Fan speed.
- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

1. Report Data:

- a. System fan and air-handling-unit number.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
- d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Duct size in inches.
- f. Duct area in sq. ft..
- g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
- h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
- i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
- j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
- k. Barometric pressure in psig.

J. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

3.14 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of the Commissioning Authority.

- B. Commissioning Authority shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to the lesser of either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the TAB shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If recheck measurements find the number of failed measurements noncompliant with requirements indicated, proceed as follows:
 - 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and adjust. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection. All changes shall be tracked to show changes made to the previous report.
 - 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may pursue others Contract options to complete TAB work.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.15 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
 - 1. Indoor, concealed supply, return, exhaust, and outdoor air.
 - 2. Indoor, exposed supply, return, exhaust, and outdoor air.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or craft training program.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers are to be marked with the manufacturer's name, appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for

installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation, jacket materials, adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. All Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Products do not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- B. Products that come in contact with stainless steel have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- C. Glass-Fiber Blanket: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 450 deg F in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C553, Type II, and ASTM C1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- D. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature between 35 deg F and 250 deg F for jacketed and between 35 deg F and 450 deg F for unfaced in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Glass-Fiber and Mineral Wool Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

2.4 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Water Based, Interior Use: Suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

- A. FSK Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 4. Color: Aluminum.

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

2.7 TAPES

- A. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

2.8 SECUREMENTS

- A. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
 - 1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

- a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
2. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - c. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
3. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

2.9 CORNER ANGLES

- A. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum in accordance with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, compress, or otherwise damage insulation or jacket.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet during storage or in the installation process before being properly covered and sealed in accordance with Contract Documents.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth, but not to the extent of creating wrinkles or areas of compression in the insulation.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- B. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- C. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF GLASS-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

- a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
 5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
 6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- C. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.

- b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
- 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
- 5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
- 6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection is limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.7 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply, return, exhaust and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply, return, exhaust and outdoor air.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
2. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
3. Flexible connectors.
4. Vibration-control devices.
5. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.8 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed supply-air, return-air, exhaust-air, and outdoor-air duct insulation is the following:

1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

B. Exposed, round, supply-air, return-air, exhaust-air, and outdoor-air duct insulation is the following:

1. Glass-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches thick.

C. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air, return-air, exhaust-air, and outdoor-air duct insulation is the following:

1. Glass-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

END OF SECTION 230713

SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulation for HVAC piping systems.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation" for duct insulation.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or craft training program.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation system materials are to be delivered to the Project site in unopened containers. The packaging is to include name of manufacturer, fabricator, type, description, and size.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84 by a testing agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation, jacket materials, adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. All Insulation Installed Indoors and Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule" and "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials are applied.
- B. Products do not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come into contact with stainless steel have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- D. Foam insulation materials do not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- E. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell or expanded-rubber materials; suitable for maximum use temperature between minus 70 deg F and 220 deg F. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M, Type I, for tubular materials, Type II for sheet materials.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Solvent-based adhesive.
 - 1. Flame-spread index is 25 or less and smoke-developed index is 50 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2. Wet Flash Point: Below 0 deg F.
3. Service Temperature Range: 40 to 200 deg F.
4. Color: Black.

2.4 SEALANTS

- A. Materials are as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Joint Sealants:
 1. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - a. Service Temperature Range: Minus 150 to plus 250 deg F.
 - b. Color: White or gray.
- C. Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 3. Color: Aluminum.

2.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Jacket:
 1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 53-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2.6 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, compress, or otherwise damage insulation or jacket.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom (12 o'clock and 6 o'clock positions) of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet during storage or in the installation process before being properly covered and sealed in accordance with the Contract Documents.

- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

D. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles below.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install sections of pipe insulation and miter if required in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install prefabricated valve covers manufactured of same material as that of pipe insulation when available.
2. When prefabricated valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection is limited to three locations of straight pipe defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Insulation conductivity and thickness per pipe size comply with schedules in this Section or with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- B. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

3.10 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
- C. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
- D. Refrigerant Liquid Piping:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

3.11 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
- C. Refrigerant Liquid Piping:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

3.12 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Smooth with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.024 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 230719

SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper tube and fittings.
2. Valves and specialties.
3. Refrigerants.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Thermostatic expansion valves.
2. Filter dryers.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.

1. Submit data for each type of refrigerant piping, fitting, valve, piping specialty, and refrigerant.

C. Delegated Design Submittals: For refrigerant piping size and layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.

D. Shop Drawings:

1. Show piping size and piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field Quality-Control Reports: For each field quality control test and inspection.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.
- B. Prepare valves and specialties for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads and other end connections.
- C. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve and specialty end protection.
 - 2. Store valves and specialties indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASHRAE 15.
- B. Comply with ASME B31.5.
- C. Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
 - 1. Suction Tubing for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
 - 2. Hot-Gas and Tubing Lines: 535 psig.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B280, Type ACR.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings, Brazed Joint: ASME B16.50.
- C. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8M/A5.8.

2.3 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Service Valves:
 - 1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap, including key end to remove core.
 - 2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless steel spring.
 - 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 - 4. End Connections: Copper spring.
 - 5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 - 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

B. Refrigerant Locking Caps:

1. Description: Locking-type, tamper-resistant, threaded caps to protect refrigerant-charging ports from unauthorized refrigerant access and leakage.
2. Material: Brass, with protective shroud or sleeve.
3. Refrigerant Identification: Color-coded, refrigerant specific based on AHRI Guideline N design.
4. Special Tool: For installing and unlocking.

C. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750 I-P.

1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F.
6. Superheat: Adjustable.
7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig.

D. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Body: Forged brass.
2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
3. Indicator: Color-coded to show moisture content in parts per million (ppm).
4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

E. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730 I-P.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
4. Design: Reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

2.4 REFRIGERANTS

- A. R-410A, ASHRAE 34: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATION SCHEDULES

- A. Refrigerant: R-410A
- B. Suction, Hot-Gas, and Liquid Tubing for Heat-Pump Applications, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install service valves for gauge taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- B. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
 - 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
 - 2. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- C. Install safety-relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside in accordance with ASHRAE 15.
- D. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- E. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.
- F. Provide refrigerant locking caps on refrigerant charging ports that are located outdoors unless otherwise protected from unauthorized access by a means acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PIPING, GENERAL

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping in accordance with ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- L. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- M. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
 - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 3. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- N. When brazing, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- O. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- P. Identify refrigerant piping and valves in accordance with Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC."
- R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC."
- S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC."

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.

- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Brazed Joints: Construct joints in accordance with AWS BRH, "Brazing Handbook," Ch. 35, "Pipe and Tubing."
 - 1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
 - 2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hangers, supports, and anchor devices.
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 ft. long.
 - 2. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.
- E. Support vertical runs of copper tubing to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
 - 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
 - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System must maintain test pressure at the manifold gauge throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
 - 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
 - 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
 - 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
 - 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning controllers to the system design temperature.

END OF SECTION 232300

SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Sealants and gaskets.
5. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.

B. Delegated Design Submittals:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct

Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and with performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.

- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports are to withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible".
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Startup."
- E. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
- F. Duct Dimensions: Unless otherwise indicated, all duct dimensions indicated on Drawings are inside clear dimensions and do not include insulation or duct wall thickness.

2.2 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Fabricate joints in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. For ducts with longest side less than 36 inches, select joint types in accordance with Figure 2-1.
 - 2. For ducts with longest side 36 inches or greater, use flange joint connector Type T-22, T-24, T-24A, T-25a, or T-25b. Factory-fabricated flanged duct connection system may be used if submitted and approved by engineer of record.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible." All longitudinal seams are to be Pittsburgh lock seams unless otherwise specified for specific application.
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain single-wall round ducts and fittings from single manufacturer.
- C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials are to be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch-minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch-minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets are to be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
 - 1. Application Method: Brush on.
 - 2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
 - 3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
 - 4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
 - 5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
 - 6. Water resistant.
 - 7. Mold and mildew resistant.
 - 8. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
 - 9. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 - 10. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- C. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C920.
 - 1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
 - 2. Type: S.
 - 3. Grade: NS.
 - 4. Class: 25.
 - 5. Use: O.
- D. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- E. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
 - 1. Seal is to provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and is to be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
 - 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
 - 3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Galvanized-steel rods and nuts.
- B. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- C. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A603.
- D. Steel Cable End Connections: Galvanized-steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

- E. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- F. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and coordination drawings.
- B. Install ducts in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths with fewest possible joints.
- D. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- F. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- G. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- H. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- I. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- J. Install dampers, and all other duct-mounted accessories in air ducts where indicated on Drawings.
- K. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials both before and after installation. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

- L. Elbows: Use long-radius elbows wherever they fit.
 - 1. Fabricate 90-degree rectangular mitered elbows to include turning vanes.
 - 2. Fabricate 90-degree round elbows with a minimum of three segments for 12 inches and smaller and a minimum of five segments for 14 inches and larger.
- M. Branch Connections: Use lateral or conical branch connections.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts at a minimum to the following seal classes in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
 - 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
 - 6. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 7. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
 - 8. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 9. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
 - 10. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.

1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum interval of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.5 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.8 STARTUP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.9 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:

1. Fabricate all ducts to achieve SMACNA pressure class, seal class, and leakage class as indicated below.
- B. Supply Ducts:
 1. Ducts Connected to Heat Pumps:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 16.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 8.
- C. Return Ducts:
 1. Ducts Connected to Heat Pumps:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 16.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 8.
- D. Exhaust Ducts:
 1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
 - a. Pressure Class: Negative 1-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 16.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 8.
- E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
 1. Ducts Connected to Energy Recovery Units and Heat Pumps:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 1-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 16.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 8.
- F. Intermediate Reinforcement:
 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
- G. Elbow Configuration:
 1. Rectangular Duct - Requirements for Different Velocities: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:

- 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
2. Rectangular Duct - Requirements for All Velocities: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
 - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
 - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 3) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
 - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
 - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.

END OF SECTION 233113

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Manual volume dampers.
 - 2. Flange connectors.
 - 3. Turning vanes.
 - 4. Duct-mounted access doors.
 - 5. Flexible connectors.
 - 6. Duct accessory hardware.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 233346 "Flexible Ducts" for insulated flexible ducts.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Source quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Performance:
 - a. Leakage Rating Class III: Leakage not exceeding 40 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
2. Construction:
 - a. Linkage out of airstream.
 - b. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
3. Frames:
 - a. Hat-shaped, 16-gauge-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 - b. Mitered and welded corners.
 - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
4. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Galvanized steel; 16 gauge thick.
5. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
6. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
 - b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearing at each end of every blade.
7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
8. Locking device to hold damper blades in a fixed position without vibration.

B. Jackshaft:

1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

C. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle, made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.3 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- B. Material: Galvanized steel.
- C. Gauge and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.4 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- D. Vane Construction:
1. Single wall.

2.5 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figure 7-2 (7-2M), "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and Figure 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
1. Door:
 - a. Double wall, rectangular.
 - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
 - c. 24-gauge-thick galvanized steel door panel.

- d. Vision panel.
 - e. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - f. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
- a. 24-gauge-thick galvanized steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum frame.
3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
- a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: Continuous and one sash lock.
 - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Continuous and two sash locks.

2.6 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, fabric materials, and accessory materials shall have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- D. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- E. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- F. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

2.7 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

2.8 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- C. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories in accordance with applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116 for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel ducts.
- C. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts.
1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- D. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated and as needed for testing and balancing.
- F. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
1. Downstream from manual volume dampers at outside air to Heat Pumps.
 2. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-ft. spacing.
 3. Elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- H. Access Door Sizes:
1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
- I. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- J. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

- K. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that the size and location of access doors are adequate to perform required operation.
3. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation and verify that vanes do not move or rattle.

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 233346 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Flexible ducts, insulated.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Flexible ducts, insulated.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each type of product.

C. Shop Drawings: For flexible ducts.

1. Include plans showing locations, mounting details, and attachment details.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

A. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials must be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

C. Comply with the Air Duct Council's (formerly, Air Diffusion Council) "ADC Flexible Air Duct Test Code - FD 72-R1" and "Flexible Duct Performance & Installation Standards."

D. Comply with ASTM E96/E96M.

2.2 FLEXIBLE DUCTS, INSULATED

A. Standard: Product is to be UL 181 listed and bearing the UL label.

B. Flexible Ducts, Insulated - Class 1, Multiple Layers of Aluminum Laminate Supported by Helically Wound, Spring-Steel Wire; Fibrous-Glass Insulation:

1. Pressure Rating: 10 inch wg positive and 1.0 inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.
4. Insulation R-Value: R6.
5. Vapor-Barrier Film: Aluminized.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Install flexible ducts in accordance with applicable details in the following publications:
 1. ADC's "Flexible Duct Performance & Installation Standards" for flexible ducts.
 2. NAIMA AH116.
 3. SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts.
 4. SMACNA's "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards" for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Connect diffusers boots to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- C. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with per details on drawings.
- D. Installation:
 1. Install ducts fully extended.
 2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
 3. Bends of flexible ducting must not exceed a minimum of one-duct diameter.
 4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
 5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.
 6. Install in accordance with ADC instructions.
- E. Supporting Flexible Ducts:
 1. Support flexible duct at manufacturer's recommended intervals, but at no greater distance than 4 ft.. Provide sufficient support so that maximum centerline sag is 1/2 in. per ft. between supports. A connection to rigid duct or equipment may be considered a support joint.
 2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one-duct diameter from center line of the bend.
 3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports must not exceed the maximum spacing in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 4. Vertically installed ducts must be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of 72 inches o.c.

END OF SECTION 233346

SECTION 233439 - HIGH-VOLUME, LOW-SPEED FANS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes high-volume, low-speed fans.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. HVLS - High volume, low speed.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each fan.
 - 2. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 3. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
 - 4. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
 - 5. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
 - 6. Fan speed controllers.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Show dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data:
 - 1. For Installer: Certificate from HVLS fan manufacturer certifying that Installer has successfully completed prerequisite training administered by manufacturer for proper installation of systems, including but not limited to, equipment, controls, and accessories indicated and furnished for installation.

- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVLS fans to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Provide certification that the manufacturer complies with the most recent edition of ISO 9001.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by HVLS fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Each employee shall be certified by the manufacturer for proper installation of systems, including, but not limited to, equipment, controls, and accessories indicated and furnished for installation.
 - 2. Installer certification shall be valid and current for duration of Project.
 - 3. Retain copies of Installer certificates on-site and make them available on request.
 - 4. Each person assigned to the Project shall have demonstrated past experience.
 - a. Demonstrated past experience with products being installed for a period within three consecutive years before time of bid.
 - b. Demonstrated past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store products in a clean and dry place.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written rigging and installation instructions for unloading and moving to final installed location.
- C. Handle products carefully to prevent damage, breaking, denting, and scoring. Do not install damaged products.
- D. Protect products from weather, dirt, dust, water, construction debris, and physical damage.
 - 1. Retain factory-applied coverings on equipment to protect finishes during construction and remove just prior to operating unit.
 - 2. Cover unit openings before installation to prevent dirt and dust from entering inside of units. If required to remove coverings during unit installation, reapply coverings over openings after unit installation and remove just prior to operating unit.
- E. Replace installed products damaged during construction.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of fans that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period:

- a. For Motor, Including Controls: 10 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
- b. For Parts, Including Blades and Hub: 10 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
- c. For Labor: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: Listed and labeled to UL 507.
- C. Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for HVLS fans.
- D. AMCA Compliance:
 - 1. Test HVLS fans according to AMCA 230.
 - 2. Certify HVLS fan performance according to AMCA 211.
- E. Performance Data: Comply with ANSI 230 test procedure standard, based on five rating points: 20-, 40-, 60-, 80-, and 100-percent maximum speed. Comply with AMCA 211 for publication of performance data.

2.2 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Refer to schedule on design drawings.

2.3 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain HVLS fans from a single source from single manufacturer.

2.4 HIGH-VOLUME, LOW-SPEED FANS

- A. Refer to schedule on design drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting HVLS fan performance, maintenance, and operations.
 - 1. Fan locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for mounting, control, and electrical connections.
- B. Examine roughing-in for mounting location, anchor-bolt sizes, and locations, to verify actual locations for mounting connections before installation of fan.
- C. Examine areas for suitable conditions where fan will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF HIGH-VOLUME LOW-SPEED FANS

- A. Install fan according to manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with NFPA 13 for installation of HVLS fans and maximum allowable fan diameter. Center HVLS fans between four adjacent sprinklers. The minimum vertical clearance from HVLS fan to sprinkler deflector is 3 feet.
- D. Comply with NFPA 72 and interlock HVLS fans to shut down upon receiving an alarm from fire alarm system.
- E. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Anchor fan to building structure with manufacturer's recommended mounting bracket for installed condition.
 - 2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- F. Install unit to permit access for maintenance.
- G. Install parts and accessories shipped loose.

3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated with acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- E. Install power wiring to field-mounted electrical devices, furnished by fan manufacturer, but not factory mounted.

3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect control wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- C. Connect control interlock wiring between HVLS fan and other equipment to provide a complete and functioning system.
- D. Connect control wiring between fan unit control interface and control system to provide remote control and monitoring.
- E. Install control devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted.
- F. Install control wiring to field-mounted control devices, furnished by fan manufacturer, but not factory mounted.
- G. Protect installed units from damage caused by other work.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Fan or components will be considered defective if fan or components do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare and submit test and inspection reports.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Verify that fan is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers and switches.
 - 3. Verify proper motor rotation direction and free fan rotation.
 - 4. Check bearing lubrication.
 - 5. Verify proper fan rotation. Set rotation selector to blow vertically downward during heating season, and vertically upward during cooling season.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean equipment externally; remove coatings applied for protection during shipping and storage, foreign material, and oily residue according to manufacturer's written instructions. Following manufacturer's cleaning procedures, and clean with manufacturer-recommended cleaning products.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVLS fans.

END OF SECTION 233439

SECTION 233713.13 - AIR DIFFUSERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Ceiling diffusers.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers.
2. Section 233713.23 "Air Registers and Grilles" for register and grilles.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.
 - a. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
 - b. Diffuser Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS

- A. Refer to Schedule on design drawings.

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers in accordance with ASHRAE 70.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF AIR DIFFUSERS

- A. Install diffusers level and plumb.
- B. Install diffusers with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.13

SECTION 233713.23 - REGISTERS AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Registers.
2. Grilles

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for volume-control dampers not integral to registers.
2. Section 233713.13 "Air Diffusers" for various types of air diffusers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.
 - a. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
 - b. Register and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 REGISTERS

A. Refer to Schedule on design drawings.

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verification of Performance: Rate registers and grilles in accordance with ASHRAE 70.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where registers and grilles are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF REGISTERS AND GRILLES

- A. Install registers and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Outlets and Inlets Locations: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install registers and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.23

SECTION 233716 - FABRIC AIR-DISTRIBUTION DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes continuous, tubular, fabric air-distribution devices.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fabric air-distribution devices.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and suspension and attachment details.
- C. Diffuser Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings. Indicate room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONTINUOUS TUBULAR DIFFUSERS

- A. Refer to schedule and details on design drawings:

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

END OF SECTION 233716

SECTION 234100 - PARTICULATE AIR FILTRATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pleated panel filters.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include dimensions; operating characteristics; required clearances and access; rated flow capacity, including initial and final pressure drop at rated airflow; efficiency and test method; fire classification; furnished specialties; and accessories for each model indicated.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of filter and rack to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Provide three complete set(s) of filters for each heat pump and energy recovery unit.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store products in a clean, dry place.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written rigging and installation instructions for unloading and moving to final installed location.

- C. Handle products carefully to prevent damage, breaking, denting, and scoring. Do not install damaged products.
- D. Protect products from weather, dirt, dust, water, construction debris, and physical damage.
 - 1. Retain factory-applied coverings on equipment to protect finishes during construction and remove just prior to operating unit.
 - 2. Cover unit openings before installation to prevent dirt and dust from entering inside of units. If required to remove coverings during unit installation, reapply coverings over openings after unit installation and remove just prior to operating unit.
 - 3. Replace installed products damaged during construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality"; Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment"; and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
 - 2. Comply with ASHRAE 52.2 for MERV for methods of testing and rating air-filter units.
- B. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
- C. Comply with UL 900.

2.2 PLEATED PANEL FILTERS

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated, self-supported, extended-surface, pleated, panel-type, disposable air filters with holding frames.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Depth: 2 inches nominal.
 - 2. System Airflow: Refer to equipment schedules.
 - 3. Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value: MERV 8, with "Composite Average Particle Size Efficiency, Percent in Size Range, Micrometers" according to ASHRAE 52.2.
- D. Media: Interlaced glass or Cotton and synthetic fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive.
 - 1. Separators shall be bonded to the media to maintain pleat configuration.
 - 2. Welded-wire grid shall be on downstream side to maintain pleat.
 - 3. Media shall be bonded to frame to prevent air bypass.
 - 4. Support members on upstream and downstream sides to maintain pleat spacing.

- E. Filter-Media Frame: Cardboard frame with perforated metal retainer sealed or bonded to the media.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine ducts, air-handling units, and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF FILTERS

- A. Position each filter unit with clearance for normal service and maintenance.
- B. Install filters in position to prevent passage of unfiltered air.
- C. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.
- D. Coordinate filter installations with duct and air-handling-unit installations.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Test for leakage of unfiltered air while system is operating.
- C. Air filter will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing of air-handling and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filter media.

END OF SECTION 234100

SECTION 237416.13 - PACKAGED, LARGE-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged, small-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning units (RTUs) with the following components and accessories:
 - 1. Casings.
 - 2. Fans.
 - 3. Motors.
 - 4. Coils.
 - 5. Refrigerant circuit components.
 - 6. Air filtration.
 - 7. Dampers.
 - 8. Electrical power connections.
 - 9. Controls.
 - 10. Accessories.
 - 11. Roof curbs.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RTU: Rooftop unit. As used in this Section, this abbreviation means packaged, small-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning units. This abbreviation is used regardless of whether the unit is mounted on the roof or on a concrete base on ground.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each RTU.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's technical data.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For RTU supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.
2. Detail mounting, securing, and flashing of roof curb to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
3. Wind-Restraint Details: Detail fabrication and attachment of wind restraints and snubbers. Show anchorage details and indicate quantity, diameter, and depth of penetration of anchors.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven fan.
 2. Filters: One set(s) of filters for each unit.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of RTUs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 2. Warranty Period for Solid-State Ignition Modules: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.
 3. Warranty Period for Control Boards: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. AHRI Compliance:

1. Comply with AHRI 340/360 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
2. Comply with AHRI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.

B. AMCA Compliance:

1. Comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal for air and sound performance according to AMCA 211 and AMCA 311.
2. Damper leakage tested according to AMCA 500-D.
3. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

C. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Comply with ASHRAE 15 for refrigeration system safety.
2. Comply with ASHRAE 33 for methods of testing cooling and heating coils.
3. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

D. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

E. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design mounting and restraints for RTUs, including comprehensive engineering analysis.

1. Design RTU supports to comply with wind performance requirements.

2.3 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

A. Refer to schedule on design drawings.

2.4 MOTORS

A. Comply with Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment" and the requirements of this Article.

B. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.5 ROOF CURBS

A. Curbs shall be vibration isolation type custom made from 12 gauge or heavier as required galvanized steel with welded one-piece construction and insulated with 1-1/2" thick rigid insulation. Curb height shall be minimum of 14" high above the finished roof height. Secure

curb to roof structure and unit to curb per manufacturer's recommendations for site's wind zone loading. Curbs shall have structural cross members.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of RTUs.
- B. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where RTUs will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure or existing curb, level and secure, according to NRCA's "NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems." Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction. Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing with anchor bolts.
- B. Install drain pipes from unit drain pans to roof drains. Provide manufactured roof pipe supports for condensate piping. Piping supports shall be designed specifically for support of condensate piping systems. Supports shall be UV resistant and suitable for installation on roofing material. Supports must comply with NCPC 301.10 for wind speeds up to 145 MPH.
 - 1. Drain Piping: Schedule 40 PVC pipe complying with ASTM D 1785, with solvent-welded fittings.
 - 2. Pipe Size: Same size as condensate drain pan connection.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with duct installation requirements specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
 - 1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
 - 2. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 - 3. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to RTUs, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect electrical wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

- D. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as layers of black with engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.
 - 3. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. RTU will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

3.6 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
- B. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTU and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filters.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

END OF SECTION 237416.11

SECTION 238129 - VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW HVAC SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes complete VRF HVAC system(s) including, but not limited to, delegated design and the following components to make a complete operating system(s) according to requirements indicated:
1. Indoor, exposed, wall-mounted units.
 2. Outdoor, air-source, heat pump units.
 3. System controls.
 4. System refrigerant and oil.
 5. System condensate drain piping.
 6. System refrigerant piping.
 7. Metal hangers and supports.
 8. Fastener systems.
 9. Miscellaneous support materials.
 10. Piping and tubing insulation.
 11. System control cable and raceways.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Heat-Pump System Operation: System capable of operation with all zones in either heating or cooling, but not with simultaneous heating and cooling zones that transfer heat between zones.
- B. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- C. Plenum: A space forming part of the air distribution system to which one or more air ducts are connected. An air duct is a passageway, other than a plenum, for transporting air to or from heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.
- D. Two-Pipe System Design: One refrigerant vapor line and one refrigerant liquid line connect a single outdoor unit or multiple manifold outdoor units in a single system to associated system HRCUs. One refrigerant liquid line and refrigerant vapor line connect HRCUs to associated indoor units. HRCUs used in two pipe systems act as an intermediate heat exchanger and include diverting valves and gas/liquid separators to move high- and low-pressure refrigerant between indoor units.
- E. VRF: Variable refrigerant flow.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product data.

B. Delegated Design Submittals:

1. Include design calculations with corresponding diagram of refrigerant piping and tubing sizing for each system installed.
2. Include design calculations with corresponding floor plans indicating that refrigerant concentration limits are within allowable limits of ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
3. Include calculations showing that system travel distance for refrigerant piping and controls cabling are within horizontal and vertical travel distances set by manufacturer. Provide a comparison table for each system installed.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications:

1. Authorized representative of, and trained by, VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
2. In-place facility located within 50 miles of Project.
3. Demonstrated experience with products being installed for a period within five consecutive years before time of bid.
4. Demonstrated experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value.
 - a. Each person assigned to the Project shall have demonstrated experience.
5. Staffing resources of competent and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.
6. Service and maintenance staff assigned to support Project during warranty period.
7. Product parts inventory to support ongoing system operation for a period of not less than five years after Substantial Completion.
8. VRF HVAC system manufacturer's backing to take over execution of Work if necessary to comply with requirements indicated. Include a Project-specific written letter, signed by manufacturer's corporate officer, if requested.

- B. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.

1. Each employee shall be certified by the manufacturer for proper installation of systems, including, but not limited to, equipment, piping, controls, and accessories indicated and furnished for installation.
 2. Installer certification shall be valid and current for duration of Project.
 3. Retain copies of Installer certificates on-site and make them available on request.
 4. Each person assigned to the Project shall have demonstrated past experience.
 - a. Demonstrated past experience with products being installed for a period within five consecutive years before time of bid.
 - b. Demonstrated past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value.
- C. ISO Compliance: System equipment and components furnished by VRF HVAC system manufacturer shall be manufactured in an ISO 9001 and ISO 14001 facility.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace equipment and components that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period:
 - a. For Compressor: Seven year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For Parts, Including Controls: Seven year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. For Labor: Seven year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Direct-expansion (DX) VRF HVAC system(s) with variable capacity in response to varying cooling and heating loads. System shall consist of multiple indoor units, outdoor unit(s), piping, controls, and electrical power to make complete operating system(s) complying with requirements indicated.
1. System(s) operation, heat pump as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Each system with one refrigerant circuit shared by all indoor units connected to system.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. AHRI Compliance: System and equipment performance certified according to AHRI 1230 and products listed in AHRI directory.
- D. ASHRAE Compliance:
1. ASHRAE 15: For safety code for mechanical refrigeration.

- E. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Service Access:

1. Provide and document service access requirements.
2. Locate equipment, system isolation valves, and other system components that require service and inspection in easily accessible locations. Avoid locations that are difficult to access if possible.
3. Where serviceable components are installed behind walls and above inaccessible ceilings, provide finished assembly with access doors or panels to gain access. Properly size the openings to allow for service, removal, and replacement.
4. If less than full and unrestricted access is provided, locate components within an 18-inch reach of the finished assembly.
5. Where ladder access is required to service elevated components, provide an installation that provides sufficient access within ladder manufacturer's written instructions for use.
6. Comply with OSHA regulations.

B. System Design and Installation Requirements:

1. Design and install systems indicated according to manufacturer's recommendations and written instructions.
2. Where manufacturer's requirements differ from requirements indicated, contact the Engineer for direction. The most stringent requirements should apply unless otherwise directed in writing by Engineer.

C. Isolation of Equipment: Provide isolation valves to isolate each indoor unit and outdoor unit for service, removal, and replacement without interrupting system operation.

D. System Turndown: Stable operation down to 20 percent of outdoor-unit capacity.

E. System Auto Refrigerant Charge: Each system have an automatic refrigerant charge function to ensure the proper amount of refrigerant is installed in system.

F. Outdoor Conditions:

1. Suitable for outdoor ambient conditions encountered.
 - a. Design equipment and support to withstand wind loads of governing code.
 - b. Provide corrosion-resistant coating for components and supports located in coastal or industrial climates that are known to be harmful to materials and finishes.
2. Maximum System Operating Outdoor Temperature: 95°F.

G. Thermal Movements: Allow for controlled thermal movements from ambient, surface, and system temperature changes.

H. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on Drawings.

2.3 INDOOR, EXPOSED, WALL-MOUNTED UNITS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to piping, power, and controls field connections.
- B. Cabinet:
 - 1. Material: Painted steel, or coated steel frame covered by a plastic cabinet, with an architectural acceptable finish suitable for tenant occupancy on exposed surfaces.
 - 2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
 - 3. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
 - 4. Internal Access: Removable panels of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.
- C. DX Coil Assembly:
 - 1. Coil Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
 - 2. Coil Fins: Aluminum, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
 - 3. Coil Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
 - 4. Expansion Valve: Electronic modulating type with linear or proportional characteristics.
 - 5. Unit Internal Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
 - 6. Unit Internal Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
 - 7. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 8. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
 - 9. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.
- D. Drain Assembly:
 - 1. Pan: Non-ferrous material, with bottom sloped to low point drain connection.
 - 2. Condensate Removal: Gravity.
 - a. If a floor drain is not available at unit, provide unit with field-installed condensate pump accessory.
 - 3. Field Piping Connection: Non-ferrous material.
- E. Fan and Motor Assembly:
 - 1. Fan(s):
 - a. Direct-drive arrangement.
 - b. Single or multiple fans connected to a common motor shaft and driven by a single motor.
 - c. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion protection finish.
 - d. Wheels statically and dynamically balanced.
 - 2. Motor: Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings.

3. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
4. Speed Settings and Control: Two (low, high), three (low, medium, high), or more than three speed settings or variable speed with a speed range of least 50 percent.
5. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.

F. Filter Assembly:

1. Access: Front, to accommodate filter replacement without the need for tools.
2. Washable Media: Manufacturer's standard filter with antimicrobial treatment.

G. Grille Assembly: Manufacturer's standard discharge grille with field-adjustable air pattern] mounted in top or front face of unit cabinet.

H. Unit Accessories:

1. Remote Room Temperature Sensor Kit: Wall-mounted, hardwired room temperature sensor kit for use in rooms that do not have room temperature measurement.
2. Condensate Pump: Integral reservoir and control with electrical power connection through unit power.

I. Unit Controls:

1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
3. Factory-Installed Sensors: Coil leaving refrigerant temperature.
4. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, time delay, auto-restart, auto operation mode, manual operation mode, filter service notification, drain assembly high water level safety shutdown and notification.
5. Communication: Network communication with other indoor units and outdoor unit(s).
6. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
7. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

J. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways to comply with NFPA 70.

2.4 OUTDOOR, AIR-SOURCE HEAT-PUMP UNITS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to piping, power, and controls field connections.

1. Specially designed for use in systems with either all heating or all cooling demands, but not for use in systems with simultaneous heating and cooling.
2. Systems shall consist of one unit, or multiple unit modules that are designed by a variable refrigerant system manufacturer for field interconnection to make a single refrigeration circuit that connects multiple indoor units.
3. All units installed shall be from the same product development generation.

B. Cabinet:

1. Galvanized steel and coated with a corrosion-resistant finish.
 - a. Coating with documented salt spray test performance of 1000 hours according to ASTM B117 surface scratch test (SST) procedure.
2. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
3. Internal Access: Removable panels or hinged doors of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

C. Compressor and Motor Assembly:

1. One or more positive-displacement, direct-drive and hermetically sealed scroll compressor(s) with inverter drive and turndown to 15 percent of rated capacity.
2. Protection: Integral protection against the following:
 - a. High refrigerant pressure.
 - b. Low oil level.
 - c. High oil temperature.
 - d. Thermal and overload.
 - e. Voltage fluctuations.
 - f. Phase failure and phase reversal.
 - g. Short cycling.
3. Speed Control: Variable to automatically maintain refrigerant suction and condensing pressures while varying refrigerant flow to satisfy system cooling and heating loads.
4. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
5. Oil management system to ensure safe and proper lubrication over entire operating range.
6. Crankcase heaters with integral control to maintain safe operating temperature.
7. Fusible plug.

D. Condenser Coil Assembly:

1. Plate Fin Coils:
 - a. Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
 - b. Fins: Aluminum or copper, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
 - c. Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
2. Aluminum Microchannel Coils:

- a. Series of flat tubes containing a series of multiple, parallel flow microchannels layered between refrigerant header manifolds.
 - b. Single- or multiple-pass arrangement.
 - c. Construct fins, tubes, and header manifolds of aluminum alloy.
 3. Coating: Corrosion resistant.
 4. Hail Protection: Provide condenser coils with louvers, baffles, or hoods to protect against hail damage.
- E. Condenser Fan and Motor Assembly:
 1. Fan(s): Propeller type.
 - a. Direct-drive arrangement.
 - b. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion protection finish to match performance indicated for condenser coil.
 - c. Statically and dynamically balanced.
 2. Fan Guards: Removable safety guards complying with OSHA regulations. If using metal materials, coat with corrosion-resistant coating to match performance indicated for condenser coil.
 3. Motor(s): Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings and rated for outdoor duty.
 4. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
 5. Speed Settings and Control: Variable speed with a speed range of least 75 percent.
 6. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
- F. Drain Pan: If required by manufacturer's design, provide unit with non-ferrous drain pan with bottom sloped to a low point drain connection.
- G. Unit Controls:
 1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for unprotected outdoor locations.
 2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
 3. Factory-Installed Sensors:
 - a. Refrigerant suction temperature.
 - b. Refrigerant discharge temperature.
 - c. Outdoor air temperature.
 - d. Refrigerant high pressure.
 - e. Refrigerant low pressure.
 - f. Oil level.
 4. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, time delay, auto-restart, fuse protection, auto operation mode, manual operation mode.
 5. Communication: Network communication with indoor units and other outdoor unit(s).
 6. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
 7. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

H. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Metal, similar to enclosure, and suitable for unprotected outdoor locations.
2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways to comply with NFPA 70.

I. Unit Hardware: Zinc-plated steel, or stainless steel. Coat exposed surfaces with additional corrosion-resistant coating if required to prevent corrosion when exposed to salt spray test for 1000 hours according ASTM B117.

J. Unit Piping:

1. Unit Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
2. Unit Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
3. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
4. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
5. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

2.5 SYSTEM CONTROLS

A. General Requirements:

1. Network: Indoor units and outdoor units shall include integral controls and connect through a manufacturer-selected control network.
2. Network Communication Protocol: Manufacturer proprietary or open control communication between interconnected units.
3. Operator Interface:
 - a. Operators shall interface with system and unit controls through the following:
 - 1) Operator interfaces integral to controllers.
 - 2) Web interface through web browser software.
 - b. Users shall be capable of interface with controllers for control of indoor units to extent privileges are enabled. Control features available to users shall include the following:
 - 1) On/off control.
 - 2) Temperature set-point adjustment.

B. Wired Controllers for Indoor Units:

1. Single controller capable of controlling multiple indoor units as group.

2. Auto Timeout Touch Screen LCD: Timeout duration shall be adjustable.
3. Temperature Units: Fahrenheit and Celsius.
4. On/Off: Turns indoor unit on or off.
5. Hold: Hold operation settings until hold is released.
6. Operation Mode: Cool, Heat, Auto, Dehumidification, Fan Only, and Setback.
7. Temperature Display: 1-degree increments.
8. Temperature Set-Point: Separate set points for Cooling, Heating, and Setback. Adjustable in 1-degree increments between 60°F and 80°F.
9. Relative Humidity Display: 1 percent increments.
10. Fan Speed Setting: Select between available options furnished with the unit.
11. Airflow Direction Setting: If applicable to unit, select between available options furnished with the unit.
12. Seven-day programmable operating schedule with up to five events per day. Operations shall include On/Off, Operation Mode, and Temperature Set-Point.
13. Auto Off Timer: Operates unit for an adjustable time duration and then turns unit off.
14. Occupancy detection.
15. Service Notification Display: "Filter".
16. Service Run Tests: Limit use by service personnel to troubleshoot operation.
17. Error Code Notification Display: Used by service personnel to troubleshoot abnormal operation and equipment failure.
18. User and Service Passwords: Capable of preventing adjustments by unauthorized users.
19. Setting stored in nonvolatile memory to ensure that settings are not lost if power is lost. Battery backup for date and time only.
20. Low-voltage power required for controller shall be powered through non-polar connections to indoor unit.

2.6 SYSTEM REFRIGERANT AND OIL

A. Refrigerant:

1. As required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer for system to comply with performance requirements indicated.

B. Oil:

1. As required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer and to comply with performance requirements indicated.

2.7 SYSTEM CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING

A. If more than one material is listed, material selection is Contractor's option.

B. PVC plastic pipe according to ASTM D1785, Schedule 40, with socket-type pipe fittings according to ASTM D2466 and solvent cement according to ASTM D2564, primer according to ASTM F656.

2.8 SYSTEM REFRIGERANT PIPING

A. Refrigerant Tubing Kits:

1. Furnished by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
2. Factory-rolled and -bundled, soft-copper tubing with tubing termination fittings at each end.
3. Standard one-piece length for connecting to indoor units.
4. Pre-insulated with flexible elastomeric insulation of thickness to comply with governing energy code and sufficient to eliminate condensation.
5. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.

B. Refrigerant Isolation Ball Valves:

1. Description: Uni-body full port design, rated for maximum system temperature and pressure, and factory tested under pressure to ensure tight shutoff. Designed for valve operation without removing seal cap.
2. Seals: Compatible with system refrigerant and oil. Seal service life of at least 20 years.
3. Valve Connections: Flare or sweat depending on size.

2.9 METAL HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Copper Tube Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized or copper-coated steel.

2.10 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded, zinc-coated steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

1. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated or stainless steel.
2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS SUPPORT MATERIALS

A. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated steel or galvanized steel for indoor applications and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar material as rods.

2.12 PIPING AND TUBING INSULATION

A. Condensate Drain Piping and Tubing Insulation and Jacket Requirements:

1. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation:
 - a. Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials, complying with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials.
 - b. Indoors: 1/2 inch thick.
2. Field-Applied Jacket:
 - a. Concealed: None required.
 - b. Indoors, Exposed to View: PVC, 20 mils thick..

B. Refrigerant Tubing Insulation and Jacket Requirements:

1. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation:
 - a. Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials, complying with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials.
 - b. Indoors: 1 inch thick.
 - c. Outdoors: 1 inch thick.
2. Field-Applied Jacket:
 - a. Concealed: None required.
 - b. Indoors, Exposed to View: PVC, 20 mils thick.
 - c. Outdoors, Exposed to View: Aluminum, smooth, 0.020 inch thick.

C. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

E. Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: Aluminum.

2.13 SYSTEM CONTROL CABLE AND RACEWAYS

A. Low-Voltage Control Cabling:

1. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

B. TIA-485A Network Cabling:

1. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
2. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

- C. Ethernet Network Cabling: TIA-568-C.2 Category 6 cable with RJ-45 connectors.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for control wiring and cable raceways.

2.14 MATERIALS

- A. Steel:
 - 1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
 - 2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.
- B. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.
- C. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Coat with a corrosion-resistant coating capable of withstanding a 3000-hour salt-spray test according to ASTM B117.
 - 1. Standards:
 - a. ASTM B117 for salt spray.
 - b. ASTM D2794 for minimum impact resistance of 100 in-lb.
 - c. ASTM B3359 for cross-hatch adhesion of 5B.
 - 2. Application: Immersion.
 - 3. Thickness: 1 mil.
 - 4. Gloss: Minimum gloss of 60 on a 60-degree meter.

2.15 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports for historical record. Submit reports only if requested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Clearance:
 - 1. Maintain manufacturers recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
 - 2. Maintain clearances required by governing code.
- B. Loose Components: Install components, devices, and accessories furnished by manufacturers, with equipment, that are not factory mounted.
 - 1. Loose components shall be installed by manufacturer's service representative.
- C. Indoor Unit Installations:

1. Install units to be level and plumb while providing a neat and finished appearance.
2. Adjust supports of exposed and recessed units to draw units tight to adjoining surfaces.
3. Protect finished surfaces of ceilings, floors, and walls that come in direct contact with units. Refinish or replace damaged areas after units are installed.
4. In rooms with ceilings, conceal piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units above ceilings.
5. In rooms without ceiling, arrange piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units to provide a neat and finished appearance.
6. For wall-mounted units that are exposed, conceal piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units within walls or lineset.
7. Attachment: Install hardware for proper attachment to support equipment.

D. Outdoor Unit Installations:

1. Install units to be level and plumb while providing a neat and finished appearance.
2. Pad-Mounted Installations: Install outdoor units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases.
 - a. Attachment: Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - b. Grouting: Place grout under equipment supports and make bearing surface smooth.

3.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING AND TUBING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping and tubing systems. Install piping and tubing as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping and tubing in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping and tubing at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping and tubing above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping and tubing to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping and tubing at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping and tubing free of sags.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping and tubing to allow application of insulation.
- J. Install groups of pipes and tubing parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation with service access between insulated piping and tubing.

- K. Install sleeves for piping and tubing penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- L. Install escutcheons for piping and tubing penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.3 CONDENSATE DRAINPIPE AND TUBING INSTALLATION

A. General Requirements for Drain Piping and Tubing:

1. Install a union in piping at each threaded unit connection.
2. Install an adjustable stainless steel hose clamp with an adjustable gear operator on unit hose connections. Tighten clamp to provide leak-free installation.
3. If required for unit installation, provide a trap assembly in drain piping to prevent air circulation from passing through drain piping. Comply with more stringent of the following:
 - a. Details indicated on Drawings.
 - b. Manufacturer's requirements.
 - c. Governing codes.
 - d. In the absence of requirements, comply with requirements of ASHRAE handbooks.
4. Extend drain piping from units with drain connections to drain receptors as indicated on Drawings. If not indicated on Drawings, terminate drain connection at nearest accessible location that is not exposed to view by occupants.
5. Provide each 90-degree change in direction with a Y- or T-fitting. Install a threaded plug connection in the dormant side of fitting or future use as a service cleanout.

B. Gravity Drains:

1. Slope piping from unit connection toward drain termination at a constant slope of not less than two percent.

C. Pumped Drains:

1. If unit condensate pump or lift mechanism is not included with an integral check valve, install a full-size check valve in each branch pipe near unit connection to prevent backflow into unit.

3.4 REFRIGERANT PIPING AND TUBING INSTALLATION

A. Refrigerant Tubing Kits:

1. Unroll and straighten tubing to suit installation. Deviations in straightness of exposed tubing shall be unnoticeable to observer.
2. Support tubing using hangers and supports indicated at intervals not to exceed 5 feet. Minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. Prepare tubing ends and make mating connections to provide a pressure tight and leak-free installation.

- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
- C. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- D. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints and fittings.
- E. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- F. Install refrigerant piping and tubing in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- G. Install refrigerant piping and tubing in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical damage.
- H. Unless otherwise required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer, slope refrigerant piping and tubing as follows:
 - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping and tubing with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 3. Install traps to entrain oil in vertical runs.
 - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- I. When brazing, remove or protect components that could be damaged by heat.
- J. Before installation, clean piping, tubing, and fittings to cleanliness level required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
- K. Joint Construction:
 - 1. Ream ends of tubes and remove burrs.
 - 2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of tube and fittings before assembly.
 - 3. Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
 - a. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper fittings with copper tubing.
 - b. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze.

3.5 PIPE AND TUBING INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated. Installation to maintain a continuous vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are unavailable, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

E. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.6 SOFTWARE

A. Cybersecurity:

1. Software:
 - a. Coordinate security requirements with Owner.
 - b. Ensure that latest stable software release is installed and properly operating.
 - c. Disable or change default passwords to password using a combination of uppercase and lower letters, numbers, and symbols at least eight characters in length. Record passwords and turn over to party responsible for system operation and administration.
2. Hardware:
 - a. Coordinate location and access requirements with Owner.
 - b. Enable highest level of wireless encryption that is compatible with Owner's ICT network.
 - c. Disable dual network connections.

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."

- B. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of manufacturer's service representative:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- B. Refrigerant Tubing Positive Pressure Testing:

1. Comply with more stringent of VRF HVAC system manufacturer's requirements and requirements indicated.
2. After completion of tubing installation, pressurize tubing systems to a test pressure of not less than 1.2 times VRF HVAC system operating pressure, but not less than 600 psig, using dry nitrogen.
3. Successful testing shall maintain a test pressure for a continuous and uninterrupted period of 24 hours. Allowance for pressure changes attributed to changes in ambient temperature are acceptable.
4. Prepare test report to record the following information for each test:
 - a. Name of person starting test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - b. Name of manufacturer's service representative witnessing test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - c. Detailed description of extent of tubing tested.
 - d. Date and time at start of test.
 - e. Test pressure at start of test.
 - f. Outdoor temperature at start of test.
 - g. Name of person ending test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - h. Date and time at end of test.
 - i. Test pressure at end of test.
 - j. Outdoor temperature at end of test.
 - k. Remarks:
5. Submit test reports for Project record.

- C. Refrigerant Tubing Evacuation Testing:

1. Comply with more stringent of VRF HVAC system manufacturer's requirements and requirements indicated.
2. After completion of tubing positive-pressure testing, evacuate tubing systems to a pressure of 500 microns.

3. Successful testing shall maintain a test pressure for a continuous and uninterrupted period of one hour(s) with no change.
4. Prepare test report to record the following information for each test:
 - a. Name of person starting test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - b. Name of manufacturer's service representative witnessing test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - c. Detailed description of extent of tubing tested.
 - d. Date and time at start of test.
 - e. Test pressure at start of test.
 - f. Outdoor temperature at start of test.
 - g. Name of person ending test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - h. Date and time at end of test.
 - i. Test pressure at end of test.
 - j. Outdoor temperature at end of test.
 - k. Remarks:
5. Submit test reports for Project record.
6. Upon successful completion of evacuation testing, system shall be charged with refrigerant.

D. System Refrigerant Charge:

1. Using information collected from the refrigerant tubing evacuation testing, system Installer shall consult variable refrigerant system manufacturer to determine the correct system refrigerant charge.
2. Installer shall charge system following VRF HVAC system manufacturer's written instructions.
3. System refrigerant charging shall be witnessed by system manufacturer's representative.
4. Total refrigerant charge shall be recorded and permanently displayed at the system's outdoor unit.

E. Products will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a VRF HVAC system manufacturer's service representative to perform system(s) startup service.
 1. Service representative shall be a factory-trained and -authorized service representative of VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
 2. Complete startup service of each separate system.
 3. Complete system startup service according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Startup checks shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
 1. Check control communications of equipment and each operating component in system(s).
 2. Check each indoor unit's response to demand for cooling and heating.

3. Check each indoor unit's response to changes in airflow settings.
 4. Check each indoor unit and outdoor unit for proper condensate removal.
 5. Check sound levels of each indoor and outdoor unit.
- C. Installer shall accompany manufacturer's service representative during startup service and provide manufacturer's service representative with requested documentation and technical support during startup service.
1. Installer shall correct deficiencies found during startup service for reverification.
- D. System Operation Report:
1. After completion of startup service, manufacturer shall issue a report for each separate system.
 2. Report shall include complete documentation describing each startup check, the result, and any corrective action required.
 3. Manufacturer shall electronically record not less than two hours of continuous operation of each system and submit with report for historical reference.
 - a. All available system operating parameters shall be included in the information submitted.
- E. Witness:
1. Invite Owner to witness startup service procedures.
 2. Provide written notice not less than 20 business days before start of startup service.

3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust equipment and components to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points. Adjust initial airflow settings and discharge airflow patterns.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges according to VRF HVAC system manufacturer's written instructions, and as indicated.
- D. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.11 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial

Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.

1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.12 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a VRF HVAC system manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain entire system.

END OF SECTION 238129

SECTION 260500 - GENERAL ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The Instructions to Bidders, General Conditions of the Contract, Supplementary General Conditions and Division 1 bound herewith are a component part of this Division of the specifications and shall apply to this Division with equal force and shall be consulted in detail for instructions pertaining to the work.
- B. Requirements in Divisions 26, 27 and 28 of the specifications and shall, as applicable, apply to all these Divisions.
- C. Furnish all labor, materials and equipment and incidentals required to make ready for use complete electrical systems as shown on the Drawings and specified herein.
- D. It is the intent of these Specifications that the electrical systems shall be suitable in every way for the service required. All material and all work which may be reasonably implied as being incidental to the work of this Division shall be furnished at no extra cost.
- E. The work shall include, but not be limited to, furnishing, coordinating, and installing the following:
 - 1. Underground electrical service from the utility company pad mounted transformer to service equipment.
 - 2. Electrical distribution system for power, lighting, receptacles and miscellaneous power as shown on the contract drawings.
 - 3. Electrical lighting systems as shown on the contract drawings, complete with indicated switching, circuiting, etc.
 - 4. Electrical receptacle systems as shown on the contract drawings.
 - 5. Exit and emergency lighting systems.
 - 6. Power supplies for equipment furnished by others as detailed in Specification Section 260580.
 - 7. Cable tray system.
 - 8. Existing Fire Detection and Alarm System extensions.
 - 9. Standby Emergency Power System.
 - 10. Raceway, outlet and cabling systems for data and other special systems.
 - 11. Grounding.
 - 12. Seismic restraint systems.
 - 13. Other special requirements and/or systems where shown.
- F. Each bidder (or Representative) shall, before preparing a proposal, visit all areas of the existing site. If the work includes demolition, restoration, renovation and/or addition; then existing buildings and structures should be carefully inspected. The submission of the proposal by this Bidder shall be considered evidence that the Bidder (or Representative) has visited the site and noted the locations and conditions under which the work will be performed and that the Bidder takes full responsibility for a complete knowledge of all factors governing the work.

- G. All power interruptions to existing equipment shall be at the Owner's convenience with 24 hours (minimum) notice. Each interruption shall have prior approval.
- H. The work shall include complete testing of all equipment and wiring at the completion of work and making any minor correction changes or adjustments necessary for all the proper functioning of the system and equipment. All work shall be of the highest quality; substandard work will be rejected.
- I. Field verify all existing underground electrical and mechanical piping.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop drawings shall be submitted for all equipment, apparatus, and other items as required by the Architect/Engineer. Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submittals are required for all materials shown in the individual specifications sections.
- C. Submittals are required for materials used for penetrations of rated assemblies and for seismic restraints.
- D. All shop drawings and submittals shall be submitted at the same time. Partial shop drawing and submittals will be rejected and not processed. Materials and equipment with long lead times or other materials and equipment requiring special handling, if identified and requested by the contractor, will be processed separately.
- E. Proposed equipment and/or materials substitutions shall be clearly indicated in shop drawings. All deviations from the specified quality, functionality, appearance or performance of the proposed equipment and/or materials shall be clearly summarized in the preface of each submittal. If none are disclosed, and the deviation specifically approved, the Contractor is responsible for providing the specified materials regardless of submittal approval.
- F. The project shall be bid based on the equipment listed in these specifications and on the drawings. After award of the Electrical Contract the Contractor may wish to substitute equipment other than that specified, subject to approval. The Electrical Contractor shall bear the "burden of proof" for demonstrating substitute equipment equivalency and suitability.
- G. The Electrical Contractor shall be required to replace installed "equivalent" equipment if the operation of this equipment does not meet the full design intent of the specified system.
- H. Physical size of equipment used in the design layout are those of reputable equipment manufacturers. The Contractor is responsible for providing equipment which will fit the space provided. If the Contractor elects to use other manufacturer's equipment, any resulting conflicts with space clearance or codes shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to correct at the Contractor's expense.
- I. The Contractor assumes all responsibility for providing code clearances. Submit a scale drawing of each electrical equipment room showing exact size and location of all proposed

electrical equipment with code clearances and working space clearly indicated and dimensioned.

1.3 COORDINATION OF WORK

- A. It is understood and agreed that the Contractor is, by careful examination, satisfied as to the nature and location of the work, the conformation of the ground, the character, quality and quantity of the materials to be encountered, the general and local conditions and all other matters which can and may affect the work under this contract. The Contractor shall be held responsible for visiting the site and thoroughly familiarizing himself with the existing conditions and also any contractual requirements as may be set forth in the other Divisions of these Specifications. No extras will be considered because of additional work necessitated by obvious job conditions that are not indicated on the drawings.
- B. The Contractor shall compare the electrical drawings and specifications with the drawings and specifications for other trades, and shall report any discrepancies between them to the Architect/Engineer and obtain written instructions for changes necessary in the electrical work. The electrical work shall be installed in cooperation with other trades installing interrelated work. Before installation, the Contractor shall make proper provisions to avoid interferences in a manner approved by the Architect/Engineer. All changes required in the work of the Contractor caused by neglect to do so shall be made at the expense of the Contractor.
- C. Location of electrical raceways, switches, panels, equipment, fixtures, etc., shall be adjusted to accommodate the work to interferences anticipated and encountered. The Contractor shall determine the exact route and location of each electrical raceway prior to make up and assembly.
 - 1. Right of Way: Lines which pitch shall have the right of way over those which do not pitch. For example, steam, condensate and plumbing drains shall normally have right of way. Lines whose elevations cannot be changed shall have the right of way over lines whose elevations can be changed.
 - 2. Offsets and changes in direction of electrical raceways shall be made as required to maintain proper headroom and to clear pitched lines whether or not indicated on the drawings. The Contractor shall furnish and install elbows, pull boxes, etc., as required to affect these offsets, transitions, and changes in directions. Conflicts between electrical raceways, fixtures, etc., and ductwork or piping which cannot be resolved otherwise, will be resolved by the Architect/Engineer.
- D. Installation and Arrangements: The Contractor shall install all electrical work to permit removal (without damage to other parts) of any equipment requiring periodic replacement or maintenance. The Contractor shall arrange electrical raceways and equipment to permit ready access to valves, cocks, traps, starters, motors, control components, etc., and to clear the opening of swinging and overhead doors and of access panels.

1.4 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS (GENERAL)

- A. In compliance with North Carolina General Statute 133.3, the Architect/Engineer has, wherever possible, specified the required performance and design characteristics of all materials utilized in this construction. In some cases it is impossible to specify the required performance and design characteristics and when this occurs the Architect/Engineer has

specified three or more examples of equal design or equivalent design, establishing an acceptable range for items of equal or equivalent design. Cited examples are used only to denote the quality standard of product desired and do not restrict bidders to a specific brand, make, manufacturer or specific name and are used only to set forth and convey to bidders the general style, type, character and quality of product desired. Equivalent products will be acceptable.

- B. Substitution of materials, items, or equipment of equal or equivalent design shall be submitted to the Architect/Engineer for approval or disapproval. Equal or equivalent shall be interpreted to mean an item of material or equipment, similar to that named and which is suitable for the same use and capable of performing the same functions as that named, the Architect/Engineer being the judge of equality.
- C. The materials used in all systems shall be new, unused and as hereinafter specified and shall bear the manufacturer's name, trade name and a qualified third party testing agency label in every case where a standard has been established for the particular material. Equipment furnished under this specification shall be essentially the standard product of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of the required type of equipment, and shall be the manufacturer's latest approved design. All materials where not specified shall be of the very best of their respective kinds. Samples of materials or manufacturer's specifications shall be submitted for approval as required by the Architect/Engineer.
- D. Protection: Electrical equipment shall at all times during construction be adequately protected against damage. Equipment shall be tightly covered and protected against dirt, water and chemical or mechanical injury and theft. Electrical equipment shall be stored in dry, and heated if required to reduce condensation, permanent shelters. If an apparatus has been damaged, such damage shall be repaired at no additional cost. If any apparatus has been subject to possible injury by water, it shall be replaced at no additional cost to the Owner. At the completion of the work, fixtures, equipment, and materials shall be cleaned and polished thoroughly and turned over to the Owner in a condition satisfactory to the Architect/Engineer. Damage or defects, developing before acceptance of the work shall be made good at the Contractor's expense.
- E. Any damage to factory applied paint finish shall be repaired using touch-up paint furnished by the equipment manufacturer. The entire damaged panel or section shall be repainted per the field painting specifications in Division 9, at no additional cost to the Owner.
- F. Where materials such as wiring devices and plates, fire alarm equipment, paging system components, etc. are specified to match existing, provide materials to match existing equipment in finish, color, capacity, ratings, operating characteristics, performance, etc.
- G. Delivery and Storage: Equipment and materials shall be delivered to the site and stored in original containers, suitably sheltered from the elements, and heated if required to reduce condensation, but readily accessible for inspection by the Architect/Engineer until installed.
- H. Equipment and materials of the same general type shall be of the same make throughout the work to provide uniform appearance, operation and maintenance.
- I. Manufacturer's directions shall be followed completely in the delivery, storage, protection, and installation of all equipment and materials. The Contractor shall promptly notify the

Architect/Engineer, in writing, of any conflicts between any requirements of the Contract Documents and the manufacturer's directions and shall obtain the Architect/Engineer's written instructions before proceeding with the work. Should the Contractor perform any work that does not comply with the manufacturer's direction or such written instructions from the Architect/Engineer, the Contractor shall bear all costs arising in correcting the deficiencies.

1.5 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Submit under relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. The Contractor shall provide three compilations of catalog data, bound in suitable looseleaf binders, for each manufactured item of equipment used in the electrical work. These shall be presented to the Architect/Engineer for transmittal to the Owner before the final inspection is made. Data shall include printed installation, operation and maintenance instructions for each item, indexed by product with heavy sheet dividers and tabs. All warranties shall be included with each item. Each manufacturer's name, address and telephone number shall be clearly indicated.
- C. Shop drawings with Architect/Engineer's "as noted" markings are not acceptable for the above. "Approved" shop drawings are acceptable if adequate information is contained therein. Generally, shop drawings alone are not adequate.
- D. Installation information packed with lighting fixtures, devices and equipment shall be retained for inclusion in the operations and maintenance manuals.

1.6 PAINTING

- A. All painting will be performed by the General Contractor for the project, unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- B. The Electrical Contractor shall clean all exposed electrical work for painting. Should the Electrical Contractor delay in installing exposed conduit and outlets until the General Contractor has begun painting, the Electrical Contractor shall be required to paint all exposed electrical work at the Electrical Contractor's own expense. Such painting will be accomplished in accordance with the detailed specifications for the Project.
- C. Conductors exposed in boxes and cabinets shall be protected against painting. Devices, cover plates, trims, etc., for panelboards and cabinets shall not be installed until painting has been completed.
- D. The Electrical Contractor shall be responsible for touch up painting that may be required for electrical material or apparatus furnished with factory applied finish.

1.7 LOCATIONS AND MEASUREMENTS

Outlets and appliances are shown and located on the drawings as accurately as possible. All measurements shall be verified on the project and in all cases the work shall suit the surrounding trim, finishes and/or construction. The locations of outlets for special appliances shall be installed so

that when extended, they are flush with the finished wall or ceiling and permit the proper installation of fixtures and/or devices. Heights of all outlets shown on the drawings are approximate only. Slight relocations of outlets, devices and equipment shall be made by the Contractor as required or as directed by the Architect/Engineer at no additional cost to the Owner.

1.8 QUALITY OF WORK

All work shall be executed as required by this specification and the accompanying drawings and shall be done by skilled mechanics, and shall present a neat, trim, and mechanical appearance when completed. All work shall be performed as required by the progress of the job.

1.9 SUPERVISION

- A. The Contractor shall personally, or through an authorized and competent representative, constantly supervise the work from the beginning to completion and final acceptance. So far as possible, the Contractor shall keep the same foreman and mechanics throughout the project duration.
- B. During the progress of the work it shall be subject to inspection by representatives of the Architect/Engineer, the Owner, and local inspection authorities, at which time the Contractor shall furnish such required information and data on the project as requested.
- C. The Electrical Contractor shall coordinate the electrical work with other Contractors and cooperate in the preparation and maintenance of a master schedule for the completion of the project.

1.10 EXCAVATION, TRENCHING AND BACKFILLING

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall do all excavating, trenching and backfilling in connection with this contract. All such excavation shall be done in a manner as not to endanger or damage existing utility lines and other structures. If damage occurs, the Contractor shall pay for and repair damage to the satisfaction of the Architect/Engineer.
- B. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to investigate conditions before excavation and to exercise care during the excavation to avoid any utilities or other objects which may not be shown. Whether or not utilities, etc., are shown on the drawings shall not relieve the Contractor from the responsibility to repair any damage caused by this work. Location of all ditching shall be laid out at grade and shall be approved by the Architect/Engineer before excavating and no work shall be done until such approval has been obtained.
- C. All surplus earth shall be removed by the Contractor from the site and disposed of at the Contractor's expense.
- D. All excavation, trenching and shoring shall be in accordance with rules and regulations set forth in Article XXI, Bulletin 1 "Trenching" as published in a separate bulletin by the North Carolina Department of Labor, Division of Standards and Inspection Construction Bureau.
- E. Backfilling shall be in 6" layers with each layer tamped. No boulders or debris shall be used for backfill material. Where trenching passes through areas designated as streets, driveways,

walkways, or parking areas, backfill shall be tamped with power tamps to 95 percent compaction.

- F. Excavation shall be bid unclassified with no extra payment for removal of rock.

1.11 CLOSING IN WORK

Work shall not be covered up or enclosed until it has been inspected, tested and approved by the authorities having jurisdiction over this work. Should any of the work be enclosed or covered up before such inspection and test, the Contractor shall uncover the work at the Contractor's expense; after it has been inspected, tested and approved, the Contractor shall restore the work to its original condition. The electrical contractor is responsible for notifying the appropriate Code Officials to schedule required inspections including rough-in, above ceiling and final inspections.

1.12 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. All electrical equipment, materials, and installation shall be in accordance with the latest edition of the following codes and standards:
1. American Association of Edison Illuminating Companies (AEIC)
 2. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
 3. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
 4. Building Officials Code Administrators (BOCA)
 5. Energy Code 90.1 (ASHRAE/IES)
 6. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE)
 7. Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ICEA)
 8. International Code Council (ICC)
 9. International Conference of Building Officials (ICBO)
 10. National Electrical Code (NEC) 2020 edition
 11. National Electrical Contractor's Association (NECA)
 12. National Electrical Installation Standards (NEIS)
 13. National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA)
 14. National Electrical Safety Code (NESC)
 15. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
 16. North Carolina State Building Code (NCSBC)
 17. North Carolina Construction Manual with GS as listed (NCCM)
 18. Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA)
 19. Requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), latest edition.
 20. Underwriters Laboratories Inc (U.L.)
 21. Southern Building Code Congress International (SBCCI)
 22. Toxicity Characteristics Leaching Procedure (TCLP)
- B. All electrical equipment and material shall be listed by a qualified third party testing agency. Acceptable qualified third party testing laboratories/agencies shall be amongst those accredited by the NCBCC (North Carolina Building Code Council) to Label Electrical & Mechanical Equipment. Equipment and materials shall bear the appropriate testing agency's listing mark or classification marking. Equipment, materials, etc. utilized not bearing a third party testing agency certification shall be field or factory third party testing agency certified prior to equipment acceptance and use.
- C. Where reference is made to one of the above standards, the revision in effect at the time of the bid opening shall apply.

1.13 ENCLOSURE TYPES

Unless otherwise specified herein or shown on the Drawings, electrical enclosures shall have the following ratings:

1. NEMA 1 for dry, indoor locations.
2. NEMA 3R for outdoor locations, rooms below grade (including basements and buried vaults), "DAMP" and "WET" locations.
3. NEMA 4X for locations subject to corrosion when specifically noted.

1.14 CODES, INSPECTION AND FEES

- A. All equipment, materials and installation shall be in accordance with the requirements of the local authority having jurisdiction.
- B. The Electrical Contractor shall obtain all necessary permits and pay all fees required for permits and inspections of electrical work.
- C. The Electrical Contractor shall contact Code Officials to schedule any and all required inspections.

1.15 TESTS AND SETTINGS

- A. Test all systems furnished under Divisions 26, 27 and 28 and repair or replace all defective work. Make all necessary adjustments to the systems and instruct the Owner's personnel in the proper operation of the systems.
- B. See other Sections for specific testing and acceptance requirements.
- C. Make the following minimum tests and checks prior to energizing electrical equipment:
 1. Mechanical inspection, testing and settings of all circuit breakers, disconnect switches, motor starters, control equipment, etc., for proper operation. All overcurrent protective devices shall be set as recommended by the Selective Coordination Study, if applicable.
 2. Check all wire and cable terminations. Verify to the Architect/Engineer that connections meet the equipment torque requirements.
 3. Check rotation of motors, obtain permission from other contractors to start motor, and proceed to check for proper rotation. If the motor rotates in the wrong direction, correct it. Take all necessary precautions not to damage any equipment.
 4. Provide all instruments and equipment for the tests specified herein.
- D. All testing shall be scheduled and coordinated by the Contractor. Notify the Owner at least two (2) weeks in advance of conducting tests. The Contractor shall have qualified personnel present during all testing.
- E. All tests shall be completely documented with the time of day, date, temperature, and all other pertinent test information. All required documentation of readings indicated shall be submitted to the Architect/Engineer prior to, and as one of the prerequisites for, final acceptance of the project.
- F. Electrical Distribution System Tests: All current carrying phase conductors and neutrals shall be tested as installed, and before load connections are made, for insulation resistance and accidental grounds. This shall be done with a 500 volt cable insulation tester. The following procedures shall be as follows:
 1. Minimum readings shall be one million (1,000,000) ohms or more for #6 AWG wire and smaller; 250,000 ohms or more for #4 AWG wire or larger. Measurement to be taken between conductors and between conductor and the grounded metal raceway.

2. After all fixtures, devices and equipment are installed and all connections completed to each panel, the Contractor shall disconnect the neutral feeder conductor from the neutral bar and take a cable insulation tester reading between the neutral bar and grounded enclosure. If this reading is less than 250,000 ohms, the Contractor shall disconnect the branch circuit neutral wires from this neutral bar. The Contractor shall then test each one separately to the panel until the low reading ones are found. The Contractor shall correct troubles, reconnect and retest until at least 250,000 ohms from the neutral bar to the grounded panel can be achieved with only the neutral feeder disconnected.
 3. The Contractor shall send a letter to the Architect/Engineer certifying that the above has been done and tabulating the cable insulation tester readings for each panel. This shall be done at least four (4) days prior to final inspection.
 4. At inspection, the Contractor shall furnish a cable insulation tester and show Architect/Engineer's representative that the panels comply with the above requirements. The Contractor shall also furnish a clamp type ammeter and a voltmeter and take current and voltage readings as directed by the representatives.
 5. At inspection, the Contractor shall furnish ladders, required tools, and mechanics to open fixtures, boxes, panels, or any other equipment to enable the Architect/Engineer's representatives to see into any parts of the installation that may be requested.
- G. Electrical Grounding System Tests: Provide documentation showing values of earth ground impedance for the system ground. See Specifications Section 260526 for testing requirements.

1.16 SLEEVES AND FORMS FOR OPENINGS

- A. Anchor bolts, sleeves, inserts, supports, etc., that may be required for electrical work shall be furnished, located and installed by the Electrical Contractor. The Electrical Contractor shall give sufficient information (marked and located) to the General Contractor in time for proper placement in the construction schedule. Should the Electrical Contractor delay or fail to provide sufficient information in time, then the Electrical Contractor shall cut and patch construction as necessary and required to install electrical work. Such cutting and patching will be done by the General Contractor but paid for by the Electrical Contractor.
- B. Provide and place all sleeves for conduits penetrating floors, walls, partitions, etc. Locate all necessary slots for electrical work and form before concrete is poured.
- C. Where exact locations are required by equipment for stubbing-up and terminating conduit concealed in floor slabs, request shop drawings, equipment location drawings, foundation drawings, and any other data required to locate the concealed conduit before the floor slab is poured.
- D. Where such data is not available in time to avoid delay in scheduled floor slab pours, the Architect/Engineer may elect to allow the installations of such conduits to be exposed. No additional compensation for such change will be allowed and written approval must be obtained from the Architect/Engineer.
- E. Seal all openings, sleeves, penetration, and slots as specified and as shown on the Contract Drawings.

1.17 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. For the purposes of the Electrical Contract, “cutting and patching” shall be defined as that work required to introduce new electrical work into existing construction. Work required to install or fit electrical boxes, conduit, enclosures, equipment, etc. into new construction is not “cutting and patching”.
- B. The Electrical Contractor shall perform all cutting and patching necessary to install all equipment as required under his contract and shall re-establish all finishes to their original condition where cutting and patching occur.
- C. All cutting and patching shall be done in a thoroughly workmanlike manner.
- D. Core drill holes in existing concrete floors and walls as required.
- E. Install work at such time as to require the minimum amount of cutting and patching.
- F. Do not cut joists, beams, girders, columns or any other structural members without first obtaining written permission from the Architect/Engineer.
- G. Cut opening only large enough to allow easy installation of the conduit.
- H. Patching shall be of the same kind of material as was removed.
- I. The completed patching work shall restore the surface to its original appearance.
- J. Patching of waterproofed surfaces shall render the area of the patching completely waterproofed.
- K. Remove rubble and excess patching materials from the premises.
- L. Raceways and ducts penetrating rated floor, ceiling or wall assemblies shall be properly sealed in accordance with the corresponding Underwriters Laboratories approved method utilizing approved and listed materials.

1.18 INTERPRETATION OF DRAWINGS

- A. The Electrical drawings and specifications are complementary each to the other and what may be called for by one shall be as binding as if called for by both. The drawings are diagrammatic and indicate generally the location of outlets, devices, equipment, wiring, etc. Drawings shall be followed as closely as possible; however, all work shall suit the finished surroundings and/or trim.
- B. Do not scale electrical drawings. Refer to the architectural drawings for dimensions.
- C. Where the words “furnish and install” or “provide” are used, it is intended that this contractor shall purchase the equipment or material and install it completely with any and/or all material necessary and required for this particular item, system, equipment, etc.
- D. Where the words “the Contractor” or “this Contractor” appear in either the Electrical Drawings or Division 26, 27 and 28 Specifications, it shall mean the Electrical Contractor.

- E. Any omission from either the drawings or these specifications are unintentional, and it shall be the responsibility of this Contractor to call to the attention of the Architect/Engineer any pertinent omissions before submitting a bid. Complete and working systems are required, whether every small item of material is shown and specified or not.
- F. Where no specific material or equipment type is mentioned, a high quality product of a reputable manufacturer may be used provided it conforms to the requirements of these specifications. These materials shall be listed or labeled by a Third Party Testing Agency accredited by the NCBCC to label electrical equipment.
- G. The electrical drawings show the general arrangement of raceways, equipment, fixtures, and appurtenances and shall be followed as closely as actual building construction and the work of other trades will permit. Some adjustment of routings and installation of raceways, ducts, wireway, cable tray, equipment, components and devices should be expected. The electrical work shall conform to the requirements shown on all of the Drawings. General and Structural drawings shall take precedence over Electrical Drawings. Because of small scale of the electrical drawings, it is not possible to indicate offsets, fittings and accessories which may be required. The Contractor shall investigate the structural and finish conditions affecting the work and shall arrange his work accordingly, providing such fittings and accessories as may be required to meet such conditions, without additional cost to the Owner and as directed by the Architect/Engineer.
- H. Each 3-phase circuit shall be run in a separate conduit unless otherwise shown on the Drawings.
- I. Unless otherwise approved by the Architect/Engineer, conduit shown exposed shall be installed exposed; conduit shown concealed shall be installed concealed.
- J. Where circuits are shown as "home runs" all necessary fittings and boxes shall be provided for a complete raceway installation.
- K. Verify with the Architect/Engineer the exact locations and mounting heights of lighting fixtures, switches and receptacles prior to installation.
- L. Any work installed contrary to or without approval by the Architect/Engineer shall be subject to change as directed by the Architect/Engineer, and no extra compensation will be allowed for making these changes.
- M. The locations of equipment, fixtures, outlets, and similar devices shown on the Drawings are approximate only. Exact locations shall be as approved by the Architect/Engineer during construction. Obtain in the field all information relevant to the placing of electrical work and in case of any interference with other work, proceed as directed by the Architect/Engineer and furnish all labor and materials necessary to complete the work in an approved manner.
- N. Surface mounted panel boxes, junction boxes, conduit, etc., shall be supported by spacers to provide a clearance between wall and equipment.
- O. Circuit layouts are not intended to show the number of fittings, or other installation details. Furnish all labor and materials necessary to install and place in satisfactory operation all power, lighting, and other electrical systems shown. Additional circuits shall be installed wherever needed to conform to the specific requirements of equipment.

- P. All connections to the equipment shall be made as required, and in accordance with the approved shop and setting drawings.
- Q. Redesign of electrical work, which is required due to the Contractor's use of an alternate item, arrangement of equipment and/or layout other than specified herein, shall be done by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense. Redesign and detailed plans shall be submitted to the Architect/Engineer for approval. No additional compensation will be provided for changes in the work, either the Electrical Contractor's or others, caused by such redesign.
- R. All floor mounted electrical equipment shall be placed on 4-inch thick concrete housekeeping pads. Edges shall be chamfered.

1.19 SIZE OF EQUIPMENT

- A. Investigate each space in the structure through which equipment must pass to reach its final location. If necessary, the manufacturer shall be required to ship his materials in sections sized to permit passing through such restricted areas in the structure.
- B. The equipment shall be kept upright at all times. When equipment has to be tilted for ease of passage through restricted areas during transportation, the manufacturer shall be required to suitably brace the equipment, to insure that the tilting does not impair the functional integrity of the equipment.

1.20 EXISTING BUILDINGS AND CONSTRUCTION

- A. The Contractor is cautioned that some of the work to be performed under this contract is to be accomplished adjacent to and in an existing occupied building. All such work shall be scheduled and arranged to be done at the convenience of the Owner so as not to interfere with, disrupt, or disturb normal operations in the building. The Contractor shall obtain approval from the Owner before proceeding with work in existing buildings and shall work in existing buildings on schedule as agreed upon with the Owner. This is not to be necessarily construed to mean that the Contractor is expected to perform work on buildings on holidays, weekends, etc., but that the Contractor must schedule work with the Owner for the Owner's beneficial and normal usage of the buildings, and that the Contractor will be required to maintain the schedule as approved by the Owner.
- B. The Contractor shall, at all times, provide safety barriers, protective devices, screening, dust barriers, etc., as required to maintain the safety and comfort of the building's personnel and/or occupants in or near the work area.
- C. The Contractor shall be responsible for cleanup in connection with work in existing buildings. At the end of each working day, all debris, boxes, waste, etc., shall be removed from the buildings and properly disposed of. Equipment, materials, etc., may be left inside the buildings, but such must be properly stored, stacked and located as approved by the Owner.
- D. The Contractor shall do all cutting, patching, finishing, repairing, painting, etc., necessary for electrical work to be installed in existing buildings. All finishes shall be left to equal finish and condition prior to cutting. No cutting of structural members will be allowed. All cutting of walls, floors, roofs, etc., shall be repaired and/or replaced to equal finish prior to cutting. The Contractor shall route conduits and locate equipment as approved by the Owner and

Architect/Engineer. Routings and locations shall be firmly established and approved before proceeding with any phase of the work.

- E. The Contractor shall be responsible for any and all damage to the existing buildings, grounds, walkways, paving, etc., caused by the work, the Contractor and/or Contractor's personnel, and/or Contractor's equipment in the accomplishment of this work. Such damages shall be repaired and/or replaced by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner, to finish equal to that finish prior to damage. The Architect/Engineer shall be the judge as to equal finishes, etc.

1.21 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. As the work progresses, legibly record all field changes on one set of project contract drawings, herein after called the "record drawings".
- B. Record drawings shall accurately show the installed condition of the following items:
 - 1. Power distribution one-line diagram(s).
 - 2. Panel schedule(s).
 - 3. Control wiring diagram(s).
 - 4. Lighting fixture schedule(s).
 - 5. Service, feeder, branch circuit conduit and conductor sizes.
 - 6. Lighting fixture, receptacle, and switch outlets, interconnections and homeruns with circuit identification.
 - 7. Underground raceway routing.
 - 8. Plan view, sizes and locations of panelboards.
 - 9. Fire alarm system.
 - 10. Telecommunications system.
 - 11. Cable tray system.

1.22 CORROSION PROTECTION

All equipment, raceways, hardware, etc., furnished under the electrical contract shall be protected from corrosion by factory applied coatings, paint and galvanizing, or shall be fabricated of high quality 300 series stainless steel. All exposed hardware shall be hot dip galvanized. The requirements of preceding section entitled "Delivery and Storage" shall be strictly followed. Touch up any scratched metallic surfaces immediately to prevent corrosion. Apply cold galvanizing compound to all galvanized surfaces damaged during installation, i.e., cutting, etc. Rusted or corroded materials shall be replaced before final acceptance of the work.

1.23 SEISMIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. All equipment furnished under the electrical contract shall be installed in a manner to be fully compliant with the seismic restraint requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code (NCSBC). The Contractor shall provide any and all seismic restraint details and calculations that may be required by the NCSBC and/or the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- B. Requirements for restraints are detailed in the NCSBC. All tables and references shall conform to building's location. Restraints shall be per Seismic Performance Category stated on Architectural Drawings.
- C. The Contractor shall retain the services of a Professional Engineer registered in the State of North Carolina to design seismic restraint elements required for this project. The Engineer's

calculations, bearing his professional seal, shall accompany shop drawings and shall demonstrate Code compliance including certification that the seismic system components comply with the testing requirements of NCSBC Section 1708.5. Calculations and shop drawings shall be submitted for review prior to the purchasing of materials, equipment, systems and assemblies. Internal seismic restraint elements of manufactured equipment shall be certified by a professional engineer retained by the manufacturer. Such certificate applies only to internal elements of the equipment. All equipment anchorage requirements shall be coordinated with the building structure and shall be compatible thereto. All such anchorages shall be subject to the review and approval of the project's structural engineer.

- D. The Professional Engineer retained for seismic restraint calculations shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation to comply with the Special Inspections requirement of the Code. This engineer shall provide written verification of compliance of the installation with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall be submitted as a Special Inspections Report and shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspections by other than this engineer are not acceptable.
- E. Review of the seismic design computations and shop drawings by the Architect/Engineer or his agent shall not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to comply with the seismic or any other requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code.

1.24 GUARANTEE

The Contractor shall guarantee the materials and workmanship covered by these drawings and specifications for a period of one year from the date of acceptance by the Owner. The Contractor shall repair and/or replace any parts of any system that may prove to be defective at no additional cost to the Owner within the guarantee period. All equipment warranties shall be as specified and included in the Contract Documents.

1.25 PHASING OF THE WORK

The Electrical Contractor shall schedule his work as described in the relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

1.26 ALTERNATE BIDS

Alternate bid items are described in relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not used.

PART 3 - EXECUTION Not used.

END OF SECTION 260500

SECTION 260519 - BUILDING WIRE AND CABLE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Building wire and cable.
- B. Lighting Control Cable.
- C. Wiring connectors and connections.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding.
- C. Section 260533 - Conduit.
- D. Section 260534 - Boxes.
- E. Section 260553 - Identification.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- B. NECA Standard of Installation (National Electrical Contractors Association).

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions, ratings, colors, and configurations.
- C. Test Reports: Indicate procedures and values obtained.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this Section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of ANSI/NFPA 70.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified and shown.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. All wire and cable shall be installed in conduit. This includes all power wiring; fire alarm, emergency systems control conductors, sound and communications wire and cable (unless noted otherwise); lighting control cable; HVAC control cable; etc. and other electrical systems required by Codes to be installed raceways. Lighting control cable is permitted above accessible ceilings and in conduit to the switch location.
- B. Verify that field measurements are as shown on Drawings.
- C. Conductor sizes are based on 75° C. copper.
- D. Wire and cable routing shown on Drawings is approximate unless dimensioned. Route wire and cable as required to meet Project Conditions.
- E. Where wire and cable routing is not shown, and destination only is indicated, determine exact routing and lengths required.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Work under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BUILDING WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Description: Single conductor insulated building wire.
- B. Conductor: Copper. Solid and stranded as specified below. Minimum #12 AWG, maximum 500 KCMil.
- C. Insulation/Voltage Rating: 600 volts.
- D. Insulation: Dual-rated THHN/THWN or XHHW.
- E. Color Coding:

	120/240 volts <u>and 208/120 volts</u>
Phase A -	Black
Phase B -	Red
Phase C -	Blue
Neutral -	White*
Ground -	Green

*Provide neutral conductors with factory color coded markings or stripes identified for their associated phase conductor (white-black, white-blue, white-red) where individual neutral conductors are required.

2.2 LIGHTING CONTROL CABLE

Lighting control cable for dimming and occupancy sensor control shall be provided as required. Lighting control cable may be provided integral to MC cable, or discrete, as approved by the lighting controls manufacturer and as required by NEC Article 725. If discrete, cable shall be NEC Type CMP, in raceway from the switch outlet box to the accessible ceiling cavity, then free run to follow the lighting power system raceways to the fixtures controlled, be secured to the structure to the plane of the lighting power raceway system, then supported by the lighting power raceway system using NEC approved cable ties installed on no more than six foot intervals, or less if required by Codes and the AHJ. Lighting control cable shall be plenum rated and be approved by the lighting controls manufacturer. It shall consist of a 2#18 AWG solid, violet and gray insulated conductors minimum with an outer jacket rating of 300V minimum. Cable outer jacket shall not be red. Cable shall be daisy chain connected to lighting fixtures or be taped in junction boxes installed at the same plane of the lighting power raceway system. Do not support cable with ceiling grid supports wires. Do not drape cable over ceilings, lighting fixtures, conduit, ductwork, piping or equipment. Daisy chaining cable at the ceiling level is not permitted.

2.3 WIRING CONNECTORS AND CONNECTIONS

- A. Conductors shall be installed continuous from outlet to outlet with no splicing except within outlet or junction boxes, troughs and gutters. Make splices, taps, and terminations to carry full ampacity of conductors with no perceptible temperature rise.
- B. Use mechanical connectors for copper conductor splices and taps, 8 AWG and larger, except main grounding conductors, which shall be terminated with compression lugs. Tape un-insulated conductors and connector with electrical tape to 150 percent of insulation rating of conductor or use third party testing agency-approved insulating covers.
- C. Use insulated spring wire connectors with plastic caps for copper conductors, 10 AWG and smaller, splices and taps in junction boxes, outlet boxes and lighting fixtures, Ideal "Wire-Nut" or "Wing-Nut", 3M Company "Scotchlock" series or NSI "Easy-Twist". "Push wire" type connectors are not acceptable.
- D. "Sta-Kon" or other permanent type crimp connectors shall not be used for branch circuit connections.
- E. Joints in stranded conductors shall be spliced by approved mechanical connectors and insulated with vinyl mastic tape and covered with vinyl electrical tape, 3M Scotch Vinyl Mastic Tape 2210 and Scotch Vinyl Electrical Tape Super 88, respectively, or approved equal. Solderless mechanical connectors for splices and taps, provided with U.L approved insulating covers, may be used instead of mechanical connectors plus tape.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that interior of building has been protected from weather.

B. Verify that mechanical work likely to damage wire has been completed.

C. Verify that raceway installation is complete and supported.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Completely and thoroughly swab raceway before installing wire.

3.3 WIRING METHODS

A. Service: Use only building wire in raceway.

B. Panelboard and Equipment Feeders: Use building wire in metallic raceway.

C. Exposed Branch Circuits in Unfinished Dry Interior Locations: Use only building wire in metallic raceway.

D. Branch Circuits in Concealed Dry Interior Locations:

1. Use building wire in metallic raceway or metal clad cable.
2. Where panelboards are installed on the surface, building wire in raceway shall be extended to the source panel from the last outlet box.

E. Branch Circuits in Wet or Damp Interior Locations: Use only building wire in metallic raceway.

F. Underground Installations: Use only building wire in non-metallic raceway.

G. Wet or Damp Interior Locations: Use only building wire in metallic raceway.

H. Exterior Locations: Use only building wire in metallic raceway or Schedule 40 PVC where noted.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Route wire and cable as required to meet Project Conditions.

C. Install cable in accordance with the NECA "Standard of Installation".

D. Use solid conductor for feeders and branch circuits 10 AWG and smaller, and Class B stranded for larger conductors.

E. Use conductor not smaller than 12 AWG for power and lighting circuits.

F. Use conductor not smaller than 14 AWG for fire alarm and control circuits.

G. Pull all conductors into raceway at same time.

H. Use suitable wire pulling lubricant for building wire 4 AWG and larger.

- I. Neatly train and lace wiring inside boxes, equipment, and panelboards. Do not tightly bundle conductors.
- J. Clean conductor surfaces before installing lugs and connectors.
- K. Identify wire and cable under provisions of Section 260553.
- L. Identify each conductor with its circuit number or other designation indicated on Drawings.
- M. Common neutral multiwire receptacle branch circuits are not permitted. Provide separate, individual neutral conductors for receptacle circuits.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform field inspection and testing under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Inspect wire for physical damage and proper connection.
- C. Measure tightness of bolted connections and compare torque measurements with manufacturer's recommended values.
- D. Verify continuity of each branch circuit conductor.
- E. Prior to energizing, feeders, sub-feeders and service conductor cables shall be tested for electrical continuity and short circuits. A copy of these tests shall be retained on site as part of the project record documents for review at time of final project inspection. A copy of these tests shall be sent to the Architect.

END OF SECTION 260519

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Grounding electrodes and conductors.
- B. Equipment grounding conductors.
- C. Grounding well components.
- D. Ground Bars.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 260519 – Building Wire and Cable.
- C. Section 260533 - Conduit.
- D. Section 260534 - Boxes.
- E. Section 260553 – Electrical Identification.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. IEEE 142 - Recommended Practice for Grounding of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems.
- B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

1.4 GROUNDING SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. The neutral of each secondary electrical distribution system shall be grounded at one point only which shall be at the main disconnecting device. From the main disconnecting device, a copper grounding conductor sized in accordance with the NEC shall be extended to the earth electrode. Main grounding conductors #8 AWG through and including #4 AWG shall be insulated and identified by a green colored insulation. All grounding conductors shall be installed in conduit sized in accordance with the NEC. Conduit carrying a grounding conductor shall also be grounded at the earth electrode.
- B. The earth electrode shall be:
 - 1. The metallic domestic water piping system of the building. Connection of the grounding conductor shall be made by an approved grounding clamp. The point of connection to the water system shall be within 6 inches of the entrance of the pipe inside the building or structure. Where dielectric unions are used in the water piping system, the grounding connection shall be made on the “street side” of the first such union in the system. A bonding jumper the same wire size as the grounding

conductor shall be installed across the water piping connection such that the water meter may be removed without interrupting the grounding system continuity. Where no metallic domestic water piping system exists, the earth electrode shall be a ground rod with supplemental ground electrodes as defined below.

2. Ground Rods: Size as specified below driven 11 feet into the earth where shown on the contract drawings or as required. The rods shall be connected to the system ground point as shown on the Drawings by an insulated, green copper jumper in conduit. The connection at the rods shall be brazed or exothermically welded. The points of connection to the earth electrode system shall be visible and accessible upon completion of construction. Sectional rods of the same size and length shall be used in multiple rod installations, if required by soil conditions.
3. The building steel and slab reinforcing steel as shown and as required by the NEC. Connection points shall be as directed by the Architect/Engineer.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

The ground resistance of the earth electrode shall not exceed 25 ohms. The Electrical Contractor shall test the earth electrode using a standard three point ground resistance tester and shall advise the Architect/Engineer of the results of such tests in writing. Where tests show the resistance to ground exceeds 25 ohms, appropriate action shall be taken to reduce the resistance to 25 ohms, or less, by driving additional ground rods or other approved methods. Compliance shall be demonstrated by retesting.

1.6 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide for grounding electrodes and connections.

1.7 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. Submittals: Submittals for information. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Test Reports: Indicates overall resistance to ground and resistance of each electrode.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of Product.

1.8 SUBMITTALS FOR CLOSEOUT

- A. Contract Closeout: Procedures for submittals as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of components and grounding electrodes.
- C. Certificate of Compliance: Indicate approval of installation by authority having jurisdiction.

1.9 QUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience, and with service facilities within 100 miles of Project.

1.10 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Products: Listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ROD ELECTRODES

- A. Material: Copper-clad steel.
- B. Diameter: 3/4 inch (19mm)
- C. Length: 10 feet (3000 mm).

2.2 MECHANICAL CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.
- E. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- F. Cable Tray Ground Clamp: Mechanical type, zinc-plated malleable iron.
- G. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- H. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- I. Ground clamps shall not be fabricated from aluminum or any aluminum alloy.

2.3 WIRE

- A. Material: Copper. Use solid conductor for 10 AWG and smaller, and Class B stranded for larger conductors, all sized per NEC requirements. Conductors shall be tinned bare copper for direct buried installations.

2.4 BONDING BUSHINGS

Bonding bushings shall be steel or malleable iron, insulated, threaded type, zinc plated for interior use and galvanized for exterior use. Provide with dual rated tin plated saddle for use with bonding conductors and resilient plastic insulation throat liner with 150°C rating molded on over the metallic stop. All bushings shall be third party testing agency approved and listed. Die cast zinc bushings are not acceptable.

2.5 GROUND ROD INSPECTION WELLS

- A. Pedestrian Traffic Rated
 1. Well Housing: 9 inch diameter High Density Polyethylene (HDPE), 10" minimum length. Static vertical load rating of 300 PSF minimum. Two knock out mouse holes for conductor entrance. Harger GAW910, nVent Erico T416B or approved equal.
 2. Well cover: HDPE twist lock with locking bolt and the legend "GROUND" embossed on cover.
- B. Vehicle Traffic Rated
 1. Well Housing: 10 inch diameter reinforced concrete, 12" minimum length. Static vertical load rating of 20,000 PSF minimum. Two knock out mouse holes for conductor entrance.
 2. Well cover: Bolt down cast iron with the legend "GROUND" embossed on cover.

2.5 GROUNDING BUSBARS

- A. Electrical Power Grounding Busbars: Third party testing agency listed and labelled. Grounding busbars shall be provided for single point termination of power distribution system grounding and bonding conductors as shown on the Drawings. Grounding busbars shall be tin plated solid copper factory drilled with a NEMA hole size and pattern for termination of two hole lugs, quantity as required with 25% spare, and be of the minimum dimensions shown on the Drawings. Provide with 600V standoff insulators, stainless steel mounting brackets and stainless steel hardware. Provide clear Lexan cover over connections.
- B. Telecommunications Grounding Busbars: Comply with TIA-607-C and BISCII Standards. Grounding busbars shall be provided for single point termination of telecommunications system grounding and bonding conductors as shown on the Drawings. Grounding busbars shall be tin plated solid copper factory drilled with a BISCII hole size and pattern for termination of two hole lugs, quantity as required with 25% spare, and be of the minimum dimensions shown on the Drawings. Provide with 600V standoff insulators, stainless steel mounting brackets and stainless steel hardware. Provide clear Lexan cover over connections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Coordination and Meetings: Verify existing conditions prior to beginning work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Quality Control: Manufacturer's instructions shall be followed as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Provide bonding to meet Regulatory Requirements.
- C. Provide separate, insulated conductor within each feeder and branch circuit raceway.
- D. Equipment Grounding Conductor: The raceway system shall not be relied on for ground continuity. A green grounding conductor, properly sized per the NEC shall be run in all raceways. Terminate each end on suitable lug, bus, or bushing. Exceptions are as follows:
 - 1. Raceways for telecommunications.
 - 2. Raceways for data.
 - 3. Raceways for audio conductors.
 - 4. Services.
- E. Equipment grounding continuity shall be maintained through flexible conduit as required in previous sections.
- F. Grounding conductors shall be installed as to permit the shortest and most direct path from equipment to ground. All connections to ground conductors shall be accessible for inspection and made with approved solderless connectors, brazed or bolted to the equipment or structure to be grounded. All contact surfaces shall be thoroughly cleaned before connections are made to insure good metal to metal contact.
- G. All equipment housings and/or enclosures, and all non-current carrying metallic parts of electrical equipment, raceway systems, etc., shall be effectively and adequately bonded to ground.
- H. Grounding type insulated bonding bushings and jumpers shall be provided where concentric, eccentric or over-sized knockouts are encountered. The jumpers shall be sized per the NEC.
- I. All metallic raceways entering or leaving panelboards (branch circuits less than 30 amperes in branch circuit panelboards excepted), switchboards, transfer switches, enclosed circuit breakers, safety switches, transformers, pull boxes, splice boxes, etc. shall be provided with insulated grounding and bonding bushings and each separate piece of raceway shall be individually bonded to the equipment ground bus or metallic enclosure, as applicable, by means of copper conductor sized in accordance with the NEC.
- J. Bond the above ground portion of the gas piping system upstream from equipment shutoff valve to the building electrical service ground. The bonding jumper shall be sized per the NEC.

- K. An equipment ground bus shall be installed in each panelboard for terminating equipment grounding conductors.
- L. All wiring devices equipped with grounding connections shall be permanently and securely connected to the enclosure in which they are mounted with a copper grounding jumper.
- M. The frame of all lighting fixtures shall be securely grounded to the equipment ground system with grounding conductors.
- N. Provide grounding electrode conductor and connect to reinforcing steel in foundation footing where indicated. Bond reinforcing steel together.
- O. Install rod electrodes at locations indicated. Install additional rod electrodes as required to achieve specified resistance to ground.
- P. Provide ground rod inspection well with cover at each rod location. Install well top flush with finished grade.

3.3 EXISTING WORK

If the work includes renovation and/or addition to existing conditions:

1. Modify existing grounding system to maintain continuity and to accommodate renovations.
2. Extend existing grounding system using materials and methods specified.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality Assurance: Field inspection, testing and adjusting as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

END OF SECTION 260526

SECTION 260529 - SUPPORTING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Conduit and equipment supports.
- B. Anchors and fasteners.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. NECA - National Electrical Contractors Association.
- B. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog data for fastening systems.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, installation, and starting of Product.

1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of ANSI/NFPA 70.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified and shown.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Materials and Finishes: Provide adequate corrosion resistance.
- B. Provide materials, sizes, and types of anchors, fasteners and supports to carry the loads of equipment and conduit. Consider weight of wire in conduit when selecting products.
- C. Anchors and Fasteners:
 - 1. Concrete Structural Elements: Use expansion anchors.
 - 2. Steel Structural Elements: Use beam clamps.
 - 3. Concrete Surfaces: Use self-drilling anchors and expansion anchors.
 - 4. Hollow Masonry, Plaster, and Gypsum Board Partitions: Use toggle bolts.
 - 5. Solid Masonry Walls: Use expansion anchors.

- 6. Sheet Metal: Use sheet metal screws or bolts
- 7. Wood Elements: Use wood screws.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Provide anchors, fasteners, and supports in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation".
- C. Do not fasten supports to pipes, ducts, mechanical equipment, and conduit.
- D. Do not use powder-actuated anchors.
- E. Obtain permission from Architect/Engineer before drilling or cutting structural members.
- F. Fabricate supports from structural steel or steel channel. Rigidly weld members or use hexagon head bolts to present neat appearance with adequate strength and rigidity. Use spring lock washers under all nuts.
- G. Install surface-mounted cabinets and panelboards with minimum of four anchors.
- H. In wet and damp locations use steel channel supports to stand cabinets and panelboards one inch (25 mm) off wall.
- I. Conduits installed on the interior of exterior building walls shall be spaced away from the wall surface a minimum of 1/4 inch (65mm) using "clamp-backs" or struts.
- J. Use sheet metal channel to bridge studs above and below cabinets and panelboards recessed in hollow partitions.

END OF SECTION 260529

SECTION 260533 - CONDUIT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Metal conduit.
- B. Flexible metal conduit.
- C. Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
- D. Electrical metallic tubing.
- E. Nonmetallic conduit.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Division 7: Fire Stopping.
- C. Division 7: Roofing penetrations.
- D. Section 260534 - Boxes.
- E. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding.
- F. Section 260529 - Supporting Devices.
- G. Section 260553 - Electrical Identification.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI C80.1 - Rigid Steel Conduit, Zinc Coated.
- B. ANSI C80.3 - Electrical Metallic Tubing, Zinc Coated.
- C. ANSI/NEMA FB 1 - Fittings, Cast Metal Boxes, and Conduit Bodies for Conduit and Cable Assemblies.
- D. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- E. NECA "Standard of Installation".
- F. NEMA TC2 - Schedule 40 PVC

- G. NEMA TC 3 - PVC Fittings for Use with Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing.

1.4 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

Conduit Size: ANSI/NFPA 70.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide for metallic conduit, flexible metal conduit, liquidtight flexible metal conduit, metallic tubing, nonmetallic conduit, fittings and conduit bodies.

1.6 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Accurately record actual routing of conduits larger than 2 inches (51 mm).

1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of ANSI/NFPA 70.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified and shown. "Third party agencies shall be amongst those accredited by the NCBCC (North Carolina Building Code Council) to Label Equipment".

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle Products to site under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Accept conduit on site. Inspect for damage.
- C. Protect conduit from corrosion and entrance of debris by storing above grade. Provide appropriate covering.
- D. Protect PVC conduit from sunlight.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on Drawings.
- B. Verify routing and termination locations of conduit prior to rough-in.
- C. Conduit routing is shown on Drawings in approximate locations unless dimensioned. Route as required to complete wiring system.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUIT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Size: Conduit shall be sized in accordance with the latest edition of the NEC unless shown otherwise, with minimum conduit size of ½ inch, except homeruns minimum size shall be 3/4". Flexible metal and watertight ("sealtite") conduit in size ½ inch and larger are acceptable for motor, appliance and fixture connections provided green ground wire is installed (see Section 260526) and NEC is followed.
- B. Underground Installations:
 - 1. More than Five Feet from Foundation Wall: Use rigid steel conduit, intermediate metal conduit, plastic coated conduit, thickwall nonmetallic conduit and thinwall nonmetallic conduit.
 - 2. Within Five Feet from Foundation Wall: Use rigid steel conduit.
 - 3. In or Under Slab on Grade: Use rigid steel conduit, intermediate metal conduit, plastic coated conduit, thickwall nonmetallic conduit and thinwall nonmetallic conduit.
 - 4. Minimum Size: 1 inch (25 mm).
- C. Outdoor Locations, Above Grade: Use rigid steel conduit.
- D. In Slab Above Grade:
 - 1. Use rigid steel conduit.
 - 2. Maximum Size Conduit in Slab: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
- E. Wet and Damp Locations: Use rigid steel conduit.
- F. Dry Locations:
 - 1. Concealed: Use rigid steel conduit, intermediate metal conduit or electrical metallic tubing. EMT may be utilized as permitted by the NEC, with the following restrictions. EMT shall not be installed:
 - a. Any location outdoors, in direct contact with earth, or underground (in/below slab- on grade or in earth).
 - b. Indoors in wet or damp locations, or in concrete, cinderblocks or bricks.
 - c. Where exposed to severe corrosive influence and/or severe physical damage.
 - d. Encased in concrete.
 - e. For transition between EMT and rigid conduits, use JB.

2.2 METAL CONDUIT

- A. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.
- B. Plastic-Coated Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1, 40 mil PVC coating.
- C. Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC): Rigid steel.
- D. Fittings and Conduit Bodies: ANSI/NEMA FB 1; material to match conduit with zinc-plated steel or malleable iron fittings.

2.3 FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT

- A. Description: Interlocked steel construction.
- B. Fittings: ANSI/NEMA FB 1, steel.
- C. Shall be used for final equipment connections only.

2.4 LIQUIDTIGHT FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT

- A. Description: Interlocked steel construction with PVC jacket.
- B. Fittings: ANSI/NEMA FB 1, steel or nonmetallic type.
- C. Shall be used for final equipment connections only.

2.5 ELECTRICAL METALLIC TUBING (EMT)

- A. Description: ANSI C80.3; galvanized tubing.
- B. Fittings and Conduit Bodies: ANSI/NEMA FB 1; steel or malleable iron, compression type, insulated throat.

2.6 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT

- A. Description: NEMA TC 2; Schedule 40 PVC.
- B. Fittings and Conduit Bodies: NEMA TC 3.

2.7 ONE PIECE SURFACE METAL RACEWAY

- A. The raceway shall be dual channel (one side for power and one side for data) with a base and cover factory assembled.

- B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5.
- C. A hand operated cutting tool shall be available for the base and cover to ensure clean, square cuts.
- D. A full complement of fittings shall be available including but not limited to mounting clips and straps, couplings, flat, internal and external elbows, cover clips, tees, entrance fittings, conduit connectors and bushings. The covers shall be painted with an enamel finish, in to match the raceway. They shall overlap the raceway to hide uneven cuts. All fittings shall be supplied with a base where applicable.
- E. Device boxes shall be available for mounting standard devices and faceplates. A device box shall be available in single- and multiple-gang configurations up to six-gang. They shall range in depth from 0.94" to 2.75" [23.88mm to 69.85mm]. Single-gang boxes shall allow for snap-on and fastener application. Extension boxes shall be available to adapt to existing standard flush switch and receptacle boxes. All device and fixture box covers shall be painted with an enamel finish, ivory in color to match the raceway cover.
- F. The raceway manufacturer will provide a complete line of connectivity outlets and modular inserts for UTP/STP Fiber Optic, Coaxial and other cabling types with face plates and bezels to facilitate mounting. A complete line of preprinted station and port identification labels, snap-in icon buttons as well as write-on station identification labels shall be available.
- G. Raceway shall be paintable to match adjacent colors.
- H. Raceway shall be painted by Electrical Contractor.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Circuiting is shown schematically. Exact routing of branch circuits may be varied to suit building construction; however, the combination of circuits within raceways and panelboard connections shall not be changed from those shown on the drawings.
- B. Raceways shall be installed concealed in finished areas. Where construction does not permit concealed raceways and where indicated on the drawings, raceways shall be run exposed. Exposed raceways shall be run parallel to, or at a right angle with the building walls. Route conduit installed above accessible ceilings parallel and perpendicular to walls.
- C. Where any run of rigid conduit may change to a run of EMT or vice-versa, each change shall be made in a junction or outlet box with each conduit terminated separately therein. Rigid conduit to EMT (or vice-versa) adapters shall not be permitted.
- D. Install conduit in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation".
- E. Arrange conduit to maintain headroom and present neat appearance.

- F. Maintain adequate clearance between conduit and piping.
- G. Maintain 12 inch (300 mm) clearance between conduit and surfaces with temperatures exceeding 104 degrees F (40 degrees C).
- H. Cut conduit square using saw or pipecutter and de-burr cut ends.
- I. Bring conduit to shoulder of fittings; fasten securely.
- J. Use conduit hubs or sealing locknuts to fasten conduit to sheet metal boxes in damp and wet locations and to cast boxes.
- K. Install no more than equivalent of three 90-degree bends between boxes. Use conduit bodies to make sharp changes in direction, as around beams. Use factory elbows, or hydraulic one-shot bender, to fabricate bends in metal conduit larger than 2 inch size.
- L. Avoid moisture traps; provide junction box with drain fitting at low points in conduit system.
- M. Provide suitable fittings to accommodate expansion and deflection where conduit crosses control and expansion joints.
- N. Provide suitable pull string in each empty conduit except sleeves and nipples.
- O. Use suitable caps to protect installed conduit against entrance of dirt and moisture.
- P. The raceway system shall not be relied on for grounding continuity. Ground and bond conduit under provisions of Section 260526.
- Q. Identify conduit under provisions of Section 260553.
- R. The use of "LB's" shall be limited where possible. Where necessary to use "LB's" sized above 2 inch, mogul units shall be installed.
- S. Grounding type insulated bonding bushings and jumpers shall be provided where concentric, eccentric or over-sized knockouts are encountered. The jumpers shall be sized per the NEC.
- T. Fasten conduit supports to building structure and surfaces under provisions of Section 260529.
- U. Arrange supports to prevent misalignment during wiring installation.
- V. Support conduit using coated steel or malleable iron straps, lay-in adjustable hangers, clevis hangers, and split hangers.
- W. Group related conduits; support using conduit rack. Construct rack using steel channel; provide space on each for 25 percent additional conduits.

- X. Do not support conduit with wire or perforated pipe straps. Remove wire used for temporary supports.
- Y. Do not attach conduit to ceiling support wires.
- Z. All metallic raceways entering or leaving panelboards (branch circuits less than 30 amperes in branch circuit panelboards excepted), switchboards, transfer switches, enclosed circuit breakers, safety switches, transformers, pull boxes, splice boxes, etc. shall be provided with insulated grounding and bonding bushings and each separate piece of raceway shall be individually bonded to the equipment ground bus or metallic enclosure, as applicable, by means of copper conductor sized in accordance with the National Electrical Code.
- AA. The term “fittings” includes couplings, connectors, offsets, LBs, conduit bodies, hubs, bushings, bonding bushings, etc.
- BB. No pressure cast (pot metal) fittings or conduit bodies shall be allowed.
- CC. Outlets, junction, taps, etc., on exposed rigid metal conduit shall be cast malleable iron conduit fittings or cast malleable metal boxes of the type and size appropriate for the location. Sheet steel outlet boxes shall not be permitted on exposed raceway runs except at or near a ceiling for interior construction.
 - 1. Interior exposed raceway junction, switch, receptacle and outlet boxes installed at or below 8 feet AFF/AFG shall be cast malleable type with hubs and cast, gasketed plates.
 - 2. Exterior exposed raceway junction, switch, receptacle and outlet boxes shall be cast malleable type with hubs and cast, gasketed plates.
- DD. EMT couplings and terminations shall be made utilizing zinc-plated, steel hexagonal compression connectors. No set screw or indented type fittings shall be utilized.
- EE. EMT couplings and terminations shall be “concrete tight” where buried in masonry or concrete. EMT fittings, where installed in damp locations, shall be of the “raintight” type.
- FF. Install nonmetallic conduit in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions.
- GG. Join nonmetallic conduit using cement as recommended by manufacturer. Wipe nonmetallic conduit dry and clean before joining. Apply full even coat of cement to entire area inserted in fitting. Allow joint to cure for 20 minutes, minimum.
- HH. PVC schedule 40 shall not be used exposed or concealed in gypsum walls, but may be used in CMU walls.
- II. IMC and GRC shall terminate with either a double locknut / bushing set, or in a threaded hub.
- JJ. Conduit couplings for IMC, GRC and PVC shall be in accordance with the NEC.

- KK. The placement of conduit in floor slabs shall be thoroughly coordinated with the General Contractor to avoid conflicts with steel reinforcing bars, reductions in net concrete sections and floor penetrations.
- LL. Route conduit in and under slab from point-to-point.
- MM. Do not cross conduits in slab.
- NN. Schedule 40 PVC may be used in elevated floor slabs and in foundation slabs. Minimum concrete cover shall be 3/4 inch at finished or formed surface and shall be 3 inches at concrete surface cast against earth or for slabs placed on-grade. Greater amounts of concrete cover shall be used in areas subject to damage.
- OO. Where underground or underslab [service and feeder] raceways are required to turn up into cabinets, equipment, etc., and on to poles, the elbow required and the stub-up out of the slab or earth shall be of 40 mil plastic-coated rigid steel. Alternately, field applied corrosion protection wrap systems utilizing a primer, putty tape and all-weather corrosion protection tape may be used, in equivalent thickness to factory applied materials, with the specific approval of the Architect/Engineer.
- PP. Raceways run external to building foundation walls, with the exception of branch circuit raceways, shall be encased with a minimum of three (3) inches of concrete on all sides.
- QQ. Service entrance raceways run inside building foundation walls shall be buried at least eighteen (18) inches below grade or encased with a minimum of three (3) inches of concrete on all sides. Concrete encasement shall extend to the service equipment for raceways exposed above grade in crawl spaces.
- RR. Encased raceways shall be of a type approved by the NEC as “suitable for concrete encasement”.
- SS. Encased raceways shall have a minimum cover of eighteen (18) inches, except for raceways containing circuits with voltages above 600 volts, which shall have a minimum cover of thirty (30) inches.
- TT. Branch circuit raceways run underground external to building foundation walls shall be run in raceways installed in accordance with the NEC, and shall be of a type approved by the NEC as “suitable for direct burial.” Minimum raceway size shall be 1 inch.
- UU. Raceways run underground, internal to building foundation walls shall be of a type, and installed by a method approved by the NEC.
- VV. Raceways that penetrate outside walls, ceilings from conditioned space or other similar condition shall be effectively sealed to prevent condensation from infiltrating humid air.
- WW. Where raceways pass through a below grade wall, from a conditioned interior building space, the raceway shall be sealed utilizing fittings similar and equal to OZ/GEDNEY type “FSK” thru-wall fitting with “FSKA” membrane clamp adapter if required.

- XX. All underground raceways shall be identified by underground line marking tape within the provisions of Section 260553. The tape to be located directly above the raceway and 6 to 8 inches below finished grade.
- YY. EMT conduit provided below roof deck shall be installed 1 1/2 inches away from the deck to allow for screws not to penetrate the EMT conduit during reroofing.
- ZZ. Conduits, JB's, Troughs, any enclosure when mounted outside on the walls, shall be off the walls by one inch.
- AAA. Surface metal raceways shall be used only where indicated on the drawings. All hardware and supports shall be per NEC and supplied by with raceway.
- BBB. Surface Raceways:
 - 1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) radius control at bend points.
 - 2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches (1200 mm) and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.

3.2 INTERFACE WITH OTHER PRODUCTS

- A. Install conduit to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using materials and methods under the provisions of Division 7.
- B. Route conduit through roof openings for piping and ductwork or through suitable roof jack with pitch pocket. Coordinate location with roofing installation specified under Division 7.

END OF SECTION 260533

SECTION 260534 - BOXES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Wall and ceiling outlet boxes.
- B. Pull and junction boxes.
- C. Floor boxes.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Division 7: Firestopping.
- C. Division 8: Access Doors.
- D. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding.
- E. Section 260553 - Electrical Identification.
- F. Section 262726 - Wiring Devices.
- G. Section 260529 – Supporting Devices.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NECA - Standard of Installation.
- B. NEMA FB 1 - Fittings and Supports for Conduit and Cable Assemblies.
- C. NEMA OS 1 - Sheet-steel Outlet Boxes, Device Boxes, Covers, and Box Supports.
- D. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum).
- E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

1.4 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions and configurations.

1.5 SUBMITTALS FOR CLOSEOUT

- A. Contract Closeout: Submittals for Project closeout. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Record actual locations and mounting heights of outlet, pull, and junction boxes on project record documents.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide Products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OUTLET BOXES

- A. Sheet Metal Outlet Boxes: NEMA OS 1, galvanized steel.
 - 1. Junction, switch, receptacle and outlet boxes for interior use in dry locations shall be zinc coated or cadmium plated sheet steel, 4" square and 2-1/8" deep, unless otherwise indicated on the contract drawings. Smaller and shallower outlet boxes will be permitted only by special permission of the Architect/Engineer where such boxes are necessary due to structural conditions encountered. Where larger junction boxes are required, they shall be fabricated from No. 10, 12, 14 or 16 gauge sheet steel as required by the Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., and galvanized after fabrication. All junction boxes shall have screw fastened covers. Outlet boxes shall be provided with extension plaster rings where required by structural and finish conditions. Sheet steel boxes shall be as manufactured by Appleton, Raco, Steel City or Spring City.
 - 2. Luminaire and Equipment Supporting Boxes: Rated for weight of equipment supported; include 2 inch (13 mm) male fixture studs where required.
 - 3. Concrete Ceiling Boxes: Concrete type.
- B. Cast Boxes: NEMA FB 1, Type FD, cast fer alloy. Provide gasketed cover by box manufacturer. Provide threaded hubs. Cast boxes shall be by Crouse-Hinds, Appleton, O. Z. Gedney or Killark.
- C. Wall Plates for Finished Areas: As specified in Section 262726.

2.2 FLOOR BOXES

- A. Floor Boxes: NEMA OS 1, fully adjustable, oversize, reach-in, concealed service, multi-compartment, two and three gang type (one and two duplex receptacles and one telecommunications outlet as shown), 3-3/4 inches deep, minimum. See Drawings for raceway connection requirements.
- B. Material: Cast metal or non-metallic. Do not use plastic boxes in rated assemblies.

- C. Shape: Rectangular.
- D. Service Fittings Covers and Trims: As specified in Section 262726.
- E. Boxes shall be Hubbell SystemOne or approved equal.
- F. Boxes shall be as specified on the Drawings.

2.3 PULL AND JUNCTION BOXES

Sheet Metal Boxes: NEMA OS 1, galvanized steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Verify locations of outlets, floor boxes and poke-throughs prior to rough-in.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install boxes in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation".
- B. Install in locations as shown on Drawings, and as required for splices, taps, wire pulling, equipment connections and compliance with regulatory requirements.
- C. Set wall mounted boxes at elevations to accommodate mounting heights indicated and specified in section for outlet device. Boxes are shown on Drawings in approximate locations unless dimensioned. Adjust box location up to 10 feet if required to accommodate intended purpose. Install pull boxes and junction boxes above accessible ceilings and in unfinished areas only. Install boxes to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using approved materials and methods. Coordinate mounting heights and locations of outlets mounted above counters, benches, and backsplashes. Use flush mounting outlet box in finished areas. Use Erico Caddy RBS series, Raco 9001 or Cooper B-Line BB8-16 box mounting brackets to support flush mounting outlet boxes between studs.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Contract Closeout: Adjust installed work under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Adjust floor box and poke-throughs flush with finish flooring material.
- C. Adjust flush-mounting outlets to make front flush with finished wall material.
- D. Install knockout closures in unused box openings.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Contract Closeout: Clean installed work under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

- B. Clean interior of boxes to remove dust, debris, and other material.
- C. Clean exposed surfaces and restore finish.

END OF SECTION 260534

SECTION 260553 - ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Nameplates and labels.
- B. Wire and cable markers.
- C. Conduit markers.
- D. Wiring device plates marking.
- E. Underground warning tape.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Division 9: Painting.

1.3 REFERENCES

ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide catalog data for nameplates, labels, and markers.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under regulatory requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation and installation of Product.

1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of ANSI/NFPA 70.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified and shown.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 NAMEPLATES AND LABELS

- A. Nameplates: Engraved three-layer laminated plastic as follows:

Furnish and install engraved laminated phenolic nameplates for all electrical equipment supplied under this contract for identification of system, equipment controlled or served, phase, voltage, ampacity, fault current, etc. Nameplates shall be securely attached to equipment with stainless steel screws, and shall identify by name the equipment controlled, attached, etc. Embossed, self adhesive plastic tape is not acceptable for marking equipment. Nameplate material colors shall be:

1. Blue surface with white core for all 120/208 volt equipment.
2. Bright red surface with white core for all equipment related to fire alarm system.
3. Dark red (burgundy) surface with white core for all equipment related to Security.
4. Green surface with white core for all equipment related to "emergency" systems.
5. Orange surface with white core for all equipment related to telephone systems.
6. Brown surface with white core for all equipment related to data systems.
7. White surface with black core for all equipment related to paging systems.
8. Purple surface with white core for all equipment related to TV systems.

- A. Locations:

1. Each electrical distribution and control equipment enclosure (safety switches, panelboards, transformers, etc.)
2. Communication cabinets.
3. Pull and splice boxes.

- B. See details on the Drawings for additional requirements.

- C. Provide nameplates as specified above for all existing electrical equipment to remain.

2.2 WIRE MARKERS

- A. Description: Split sleeve type wire markers or approved equivalent.

- B. Locations: Each conductor at panelboard gutters, pull boxes, outlet and junction boxes, and each load connection.

- C. Legend:

1. Power and Lighting Circuits: Branch circuit or feeder number as indicated on drawings.
2. Control Circuits: Control wire number as indicated on schematic and interconnection diagrams on drawings.

2.3 CONDUIT, RACEWAY AND BOX MARKING

Paint visible surfaces of exposed junction and outlet boxes and covers of raceway systems above lay-in and other accessible ceilings. Paint all boxes and covers before installation. Paint conduit and

raceways above accessible ceilings at ten foot minimum intervals with a 6 inch wide band in accordance with the color scheme outlined above. Legibly mark conduits at junction boxes above accessible ceilings with the panelboard and circuit numbers of the circuits contained in the raceway using a permanent black, bold marking pen.

2.4 WIRING DEVICE PLATES MARKING

- A. Description: Adhesive backed, laminated plastic receptacle device plate labels identifying the circuit feeding the device. Labels shall be label machine printed, **black lettering on a clear background**, to indicate panel and circuit number and shall be Casio, Brother, T&B or approved equal.
- B. Locations: Each receptacle device plate. Apply centered on the lower portion below the receptacle, parallel to the lower surface.
- C. Legend: Typed labels to indicate panel and circuit number feeding the device (i.e., RPA-24).

2.5 UNDERGROUND WARNING TAPE

6 inch wide, 4 mils thick, minimum, permanent plastic tape compounded for direct burial, detectable type, colored bright yellow with suitable continuous warning legend describing buried electrical lines.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Degrease and clean surfaces to receive nameplates and labels.

3.2 APPLICATION

- A. Install nameplate parallel to equipment lines.
- B. Secure nameplate to equipment front using stainless steel rivets or stainless steel machine screws, lockwashers and acorn nuts as shown on the Drawings. Stainless steel screws and nylon locknuts may be used in lieu of lockwashers and acorn nuts if the screw threads are not exposed.
- C. Secure nameplate to inside surface of door on panelboard that is recessed in finished locations.
- D. Install receptacle circuit identification labels.
- E. Identify conduit using field painting under provisions of Division 9.
- F. All empty conduit runs and conduit with conductors for future use shall be identified for use and shall indicate where they terminate. Identification shall be by tags with string or wire attached to conduit or outlet.

- G. Update all existing panelboard directories where changes are made. Provide new panel schedule cards as required to maintain legibility.
- H. Identify underground conduits using one underground warning tape per trench at 6 - 8 inches below finished grade.
- I. Install adhesive backed labels only when ambient temperature and humidity conditions for adhesive use are within range recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260553

SECTION 260580 - EQUIPMENT WIRING SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

Electrical power supply for, and connections to, equipment specified under other Divisions and/or provided by the Owner or Owner's vendors.

1.2 RELATED DIVISIONS AND SECTIONS

NOTE: Work specified to be accomplished by Division 26 in Related Divisions and Sections shall be as binding as work specified in Division 26.

- A. Division 1: Owner-furnished equipment.
- B. Division 11: Equipment.
- C. Division 13: Special Construction.
- D. Division 21: Fire Suppression.
- E. Division 22: Plumbing.
- F. Division 23: Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning.
- G. Section 260533 – Conduit.
- H. Section 260519 - Building Wire and Cable.
- I. Section 260534 – Boxes.
- J. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding.
- K. Section 260553 - Electrical Identification.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NEMA WD 1 - General Purpose Wiring Devices.
- B. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Device Configurations.
- C. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

- B. Product Data: Provide wiring device manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions, configurations, and construction.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, installation, and starting of Product.

1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of ANSI/NFPA 70.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified and shown.
- C. Where electrical wiring is required by trades other than covered by Division 26, specifications for that section shall refer to same wiring materials and methods as specified under Division 26.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate work under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Obtain and review shop drawings, product data, and manufacturer's instructions for equipment furnished under other sections.
- C. Determine connection locations and requirements.
- D. Sequence rough-in of electrical connections to coordinate with installation schedule for equipment.
- E. Sequence electrical connections to coordinate with start-up schedule for equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CORDS AND CAPS

- A. Attachment Plug Construction: Conform to NEMA WD 1.
- B. Configuration: NEMA WD 6; match receptacle configuration at outlet provided for equipment.
- C. Cord Construction: ANSI/NFPA 70, Type SO multiconductor flexible cord with identified equipment grounding conductor, suitable for use in damp locations.
- D. Size: Suitable for connected load of equipment, length of cord, and rating of branch circuit overcurrent protection.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify conditions under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Verify that equipment is ready for electrical connection, wiring, and energization.

3.2 ELECTRICAL WORK IN CONNECTION WITH OTHERS

- A. Division 26 shall provide a source of power, and final connections, for mechanical, plumbing, sprinkler, elevator, General Contractor-furnished and Owner-furnished equipment shown on the Drawings. Provide pigtails, flexible connections, conductors, raceways, circuit breakers, safety switches, receptacles, junction boxes, panelboards, wiring troughs, etc. as detailed in this section and/or as shown on the Drawings.
- B. The locations of safety switches and other electrical equipment and devices shown on the Electrical Drawings are approximate only and some adjustment of their locations should be anticipated. Coordinate exact locations with the entity (contractor or Owner) providing the equipment. See other specifications divisions for further explanation of contractor responsibility. Do not apply power to equipment without the permission of the entity providing the equipment.
- C. Division 26 shall coordinate with the mechanical, plumbing, sprinkler, elevator, and general contractors, and the Owner, prior to ordering or installation of any equipment, to verify equipment requirements are provided in the electrical design. Coordinate and verify all electrical requirements, final connections, phasing and rotation, overcurrent and overload protective device sizes with the entity providing the equipment. The contractor will not be compensated for costs associated with changing the electrical systems to match utilization equipment, even if the electrical work is installed per the electrical drawings.
- D. Fuses, variable speed drives, magnetic motor starters, magnetic motor starter overload elements, control devices and sensors and control wiring and control raceways for such equipment will be provided and installed by the entity providing the equipment. The locations of local disconnecting means furnished by other divisions are shown on the respective division's Drawings. Coordinate exact locations with the entity providing the equipment.
- E. Division 23 (Mechanical) Equipment.
 - 1. Division 26 shall furnish and install power wiring, and final connections, to equipment provided by Division 23. If the equipment is provided with an external motor starter, variable frequency drive, etc., Division 23 will install the starter, VFD, etc. and Division 26 shall wire complete. If the equipment has built-in disconnects, Division 26 shall make final connections to the disconnects. If shown on the Drawings, Division 26 shall provide circuit breakers in adjacent panelboards, where allowed by Code and equipment requirements, in lieu of safety switches, to serve local mechanical equipment. Circuit breaker ratings shall be coordinated with Division 23. Division 26 shall make final connections to the equipment.
 - 3. HVAC Control Panels, Control Equipment and Computers:

- a. Division 26 shall provide and install 120V power wiring to the control panel(s) terminals or to receptacle(s), as required. Division 26 shall provide sufficient electrical circuits from the fire alarm control panel to enable all required mechanical equipment operations during fire mode. See Division 23 Specifications for further definition of the required fire alarm/mechanical control system interface and operation sequence and coordinate with Division 23.
 - b. HVAC Control and Miscellaneous Power: Division 26 shall provide branch circuit power sources (designated "HVAC Control Power" 20A circuit breakers in selected branch circuit panelboards) as indicated in the panel schedules on the Drawings. Division 23 shall extend power from these circuit breakers as required for control power, damper power, and power for unscheduled HVAC equipment. If additional circuits are required, the contractor may use circuit breakers designated as "Spare".
 - c. All control and similar equipment less than 120VAC including fuses, relays, actuators, timers, seven-day clocks, alternators, pressure, vacuum, float and flow sensors, pneumatic-electric and low voltage thermostats, thermal overloads, remote selector switches, remote pushbutton stations, emergency break-glass stations, interlocking, etc. and other appurtenances associated with equipment in Division 23, shall be furnished, installed and wired under Division 23. All wiring required for controls and instrumentation, not indicated on the Drawings, shall be furnished and installed by Division 23.
2. Heat Tape: Division 26 shall provide junction boxes or weatherproof, ground fault interrupting type duplex receptacles for heat tapes. See the Drawings for locations and confirm exact locations and termination requirements with Division 23.
 3. Duct Mounted Smoke Detectors: Duct mounted smoke detectors shall be provided and wired by Division 26, but installed by Division 23. Fire Alarm Air Handling Units (AHU) shut down circuits shall be wired, by Division 26, from the fire alarm control panel to a termination point, adjacent to the AHU. Division 26 shall leave sufficient marked conductor tails in a junction box adjacent to each unit for final connection by Division 23 to the equipment. Duct mounted smoke detectors are shown on the mechanical floor plans only.
 6. Smoke Dampers: Division 26 shall provide 120VAC power for smoke dampers provided by Division 23. Circuits are not shown on the Electrical Drawings. Division 26 shall extend power circuits to dampers from circuit breakers designated as "HVAC Control Power". Leave sufficient marked conductor tails in a junction box adjacent to each damper for final connection by Division 23. Smoke dampers are shown on the mechanical floor plans only. The branch circuit breaker(s) supplying smoke dampers shall be physically protected by a panelboard lock and circuit breaker handle lock and each circuit breaker shall be identified with a 1/4" permanent red dot applied to its handle.
 7. Refer to Division 23 for additional detail concerning electrical connections to Division 23 equipment.
- F. Division 22 (Plumbing) Equipment:
1. Division 26 shall furnish and install a properly sized fused safety switch, and make final power connections for each item of equipment specified in Division 22 and as shown on the Drawings.
 2. All control and similar equipment less than 120VAC including fuses, relays, actuators, timers, seven-day clocks, alternators, pressure, vacuum, float and flow

sensors, pneumatic-electric and low voltage thermostats, thermal overloads, remote selector switches, remote pushbutton stations, emergency break-glass stations, interlocking, etc. and other appurtenances associated with equipment in Division 22, shall be furnished, installed and wired under Division 22. All wiring required for controls and instrumentation, not indicated on the Drawings, shall be furnished and installed by Division 23.

3. Electric and Gas-Fired Water Heaters: Division 26 shall furnish and install a fusible safety switch (for electric water heaters) or snap switch (for gas water heaters) adjacent to each water heater and shall make final power connections to the water heater.
4. Hot Water Circulation Pump: Division 22 will furnish and install a manual motor starter for circulator pump. Division 26 shall wire the system complete.
5. Electric Water Coolers: Division 26 shall provide grounding type 120VAC GFCI receptacle(s), quantity as required by the equipment, for 120VAC power supply at each electric water cooler and shall consult with Division 22 and determine the exact location and type service required for each type installed before roughing in. All outlets and cords shall be concealed within the cabinet.
6. Refer to Division 22 for additional detail concerning electrical connections to Division 22 equipment.

G. Division 14 (Elevator) Equipment:

1. Division 26 shall provide a power source for all elevator equipment including elevator controllers and elevator cab lighting. Furnish and install a properly sized fusible safety switch, adjacent to the respective equipment or in locations as required by the elevator manufacturer, and make final power connections for each item of equipment specified in Division 14 and as shown on the Drawings. Provide connections as required and coordinate exact locations and configurations with the General Contractor and the elevator vendor.
2. Division 26 shall also provide raceways for telephone connections, and telephone cable to the telephone backboard if specified, to each elevator controller.
3. The electrical design for the elevator(s) is based on the elevator specified in Division 14. The Contractor shall compensate the electrical engineer for any and all required modifications to the electrical design required by alternate elevator electrical requirements. Modifications to the electrical requirements shall be provided by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.
4. Provide fire alarm system connections to the elevator controllers and provide appropriate signals to the controllers during fire mode, including recall and fire hat signals. Coordinate requirements with the Division 14. See Specs Section 283111 for additional requirements.
5. Provide power for elevator sump pumps, control panels and alarm systems as required. Provide connections as required and coordinate exact locations and configurations with the General Contractor and Division 14.
6. Provide accessory power and lighting as required by Division 14.
7. Provide shunt trip accessory for all feeder circuit breakers supplying elevator controllers, if required. Coordinate shut trip coil voltage. Provide electrical supervision for shunt trip circuits as indicated and as required by Codes. See Drawings and Specifications Section 283111 for control requirements and details.

H. Division 21 (Fire Protection) System: Division 26 shall connect fire alarm system conductors to sprinkler flow and tamper switches, provided and installed by Division 21. Final connections shall be made by Division 26 under the direct supervision of Division 21.

See Fire Alarm System Drawings and Specifications Section 283111 for interface requirements and details.

- I. General Contractor Provided Equipment: Division 26 shall provide a power source adjacent to equipment provided by the General Contractor. Final connections to this equipment shall be provided by Division 26. Coordinate exact locations and requirements with the General Contractor.
 - 1. Door Hold-Open Devices: Division 26 shall furnish and install electrical connections from the fire alarm system to each door hold-open device, furnished by the General Contractor, at locations as shown and as directed by the General Contractor. Provide connections as required and coordinate exact locations and configurations with the General Contractor and the door hardware vendor. Final connections to the equipment shall be by Division 26 in cooperation with the General Contractor.
 - 2. Electrically-Operated Doors: Division 26 shall furnish and install a power supply to each electrically-operated door at locations as shown and as directed by the General Contractor. Division 26 shall also install and wire door activation switches provided by the General Contractor. Provide connections as required and coordinate exact locations and configurations with the General Contractor and the door hardware vendor. Final connections to the equipment shall be by Division 26 in cooperation with the General Contractor.
 - 3. Projection Screens: Division 26 shall furnish and install a junction box and disconnect switch adjacent to each projection screen and make power connections to the screen power terminals. Division 26 shall also install and wire screen position switches provided by the General Contractor. Provide connections as required and coordinate exact locations and configurations with the General Contractor and the projection screen vendor. Final connections to the equipment shall be by Division 26 in cooperation with the General Contractor.
- J. Owner Provided Equipment: Division 26 shall provide a power source adjacent to equipment provided by the Owner. Coordinate exact locations and requirements with the General Contractor. Final connection to the equipment will be provided by Division 26. Provide receptacle configurations and/or provide direct connection as required by equipment and coordinate exact locations and configurations with the Owner. Do not apply power to equipment without the permission of the Owner.
- K. A/V Systems Equipment: Division 26 shall provide boxes, raceways and power for A/V equipment. Coordinate exact locations and requirements with the Owner. Final connection to the equipment will be provided by Division 26 in coordination with the A/V Systems contractor. Provide receptacle configurations as required and coordinate exact locations and configurations with the A/V Systems contractor. Do not apply power to equipment without the permission of the A/V Systems contractor.

3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Make electrical connections in accordance with equipment manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Make conduit connections to equipment using flexible conduit. Use liquidtight flexible conduit with watertight connectors in damp or wet locations.

- C. Make wiring connections using wire and cable with insulation suitable for temperatures encountered in heat producing equipment.
- D. Provide receptacle outlet where connection with attachment plug is indicated. Provide cord and cap where field-supplied attachment plug is indicated.
- E. Provide suitable strain-relief clamps and fittings for cord connections at outlet boxes and equipment connection boxes.
- F. Provide interconnecting conduit and wiring between devices and equipment where indicated.

END OF SECTION 260580

SECTION 260923 - ENCLOSED CONTACTORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. General purpose contactors.
- B. Lighting contactors.
- C. Time switches.
- D. Photocells.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. NEMA ICS 6 - Enclosures for Industrial Controls and Systems.
- B. NEMA ICS 2 - Industrial Control Devices, Controllers, and Assemblies.
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

1.3 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide dimensions, size, voltage ratings and current ratings.

1.4 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. Submittals: Submittals for information. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.

1.5 PROJECT CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Contract Closeout: Submittals for project closeout. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Record actual locations of each contactor and indicate circuits controlled on project record documents.
- C. Maintenance Data: Include instructions for replacing and maintaining coil and contacts.

1.6 QUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide Products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. ABB/General Electric.
 - 3. Siemens.
 - 4. Schneider/Square D.
 - 5. Substitutions: As permitted in relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Description: NEMA ICS 2, magnetic lighting contactor.
- C. Configuration: Mechanically held, 3 wire control.
- D. Coil Voltage: As indicated/required.
- E. Poles: As indicated, with 2 spares minimum.
- F. Contact Rating: As indicated, 30 amperes minimum.
- G. Enclosure: ANSI/NEMA ICS 6, as indicated.
- H. Accessories:
 - 1. Pushbutton: ON/OFF.
 - 2. Selector Switch: ON/OFF/AUTOMATIC.
 - 3. Indicating Light: RED.
 - 4. Auxiliary Contacts: Two, field convertible.
 - 5. Astronomical time switch with momentary contact output.
 - 6. Photocell.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Pushbuttons and Selector Switches: NEMA ICS 2, heavy duty type.
- B. Indicating Lights: NEMA ICS 2, transformer type.
- C. Auxiliary Contacts: NEMA ICS 2, Class A300.

- D. Time Switch: Astronomic, two channel, electronic type with 48 hour capacitor or battery reserve, digital display, 30 ampere output contact rating, two, single pole output contacts, voltage compatible with load served, NEMA-1 enclosure.
- E. Photocell: Weatherproof, enclosed, single pole, 1800 VA, 120VAC, twist lock plug-in type with base.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- A. Connect time switch(es) and/or photocell(s) to contactor(s) and program per Owner's requirements to control loads.
- B. Install photocell where shown or as required and adjust to provide proper operation.

END OF SECTION 260923

SECTION 262200 - DRY TYPE TRANSFORMERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Two-winding transformers rated for nonlinear loads.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 260533 - Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding.
- C. Section 260529 Supporting Devices.
- D. Section 260548.16 - Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems.
- E. Section 260533 – Conduit.
- F. Section 260548.16 - Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems.
- G. Section 260553 - Electrical Identification.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NEMA ST 1 - Specialty Transformers (Except General-Purpose Type).
- B. NEMA ST 20 - Dry-Type Transformers for General Applications.
- C. NEMA TP-1 - Guide for Determining Energy Efficiency for Distribution Transformers
- D. NETA ATS - Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Distribution Equipment (International Electrical Testing Association).
- E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- F. IEEE C57.96 (Standard transformers) and C57.110 (K Rated transformers) - Transformer Overload Capability

1.4 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide outline and support point dimensions of enclosures and accessories, unit weight, voltage, kVA, and impedance ratings and characteristics, tap configurations, insulation system type, and rated temperature rise.

1.5 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. Submittals: Submittals for information. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Test Reports: Indicate loss data, efficiency at 25, 50, 75 and 100 percent rated load, and sound level.
- C. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions. Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of Product.

1.6 SUBMITTALS FOR CLOSEOUT

- A. Contract Closeout: Submittals for project closeout. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Record actual locations of transformers in project record documents.

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.8 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Products: Listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Material and Equipment: Transport, handle, store, and protect products as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Store in a clean, dry space. Maintain factory wrapping or provide an additional heavy canvas or heavy plastic cover to protect units from dirt, water, construction debris, and traffic.
- C. Handle in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Lift only with lugs provided for the purpose. Handle carefully to avoid damage to transformer internal components, enclosure, and finish.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TWO-WINDING TRANSFORMERS RATED FOR NONLINEAR LOADS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Eaton.

2. ABB/General Electric.
 3. Siemens.
 4. Schneider/Square D.
 5. Substitutions: As permitted in relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Description: NEMA ST 20, factory assembled, air cooled dry type transformers, ratings as indicated, designed to supply nonlinear load (K-rated). Transformers shall be energy efficient with minimum efficiencies as set forth in the Department of Energy 1/1/16 Standards.
- C. Primary Voltage: 480 delta volts, 3 phase.
- D. Secondary Voltage: 208Y/120 volts, 3 phase.
- E. Core Flux Density: Below saturation at 10 percent primary overvoltage.
- F. Insulation and temperature rise: Class 220 insulation system with 115° C average winding temperature rise.
- G. Case temperature: Do not exceed 35° C rise above ambient at warmest point at full load.
- H. Winding Taps:
1. Transformers Less than 15 kVA: Two 5 percent below rated voltage, full capacity taps on primary winding.
 2. Transformers 15 kVA and Larger: NEMA ST 20.
- I. Sound Levels: NEMA ST 20.
- J. Basic Impulse Level: 10 kV for transformers less than 300 kVA, 30 kV for transformers 300 kVA and larger.
- K. Ground core and coil assembly to enclosure by means of a visible flexible copper grounding strap.
- L. Mounting:
1. 1-15 kVA: Suitable for wall mounting. Provide manufacturers standard wall mounting brackets.
 2. 16-75 kVA: Suitable for wall or floor mounting. If wall mounted, provide manufacturers standard wall mounting brackets.
 3. Larger than 75 kVA: Suitable for floor mounting.
- M. Coil Conductors: Continuous windings with terminations brazed or welded. Individually insulate secondary conductors and arrange to minimize hysteresis and eddy current losses at harmonic frequencies. Size secondary neutral conductor at twice the secondary phase conductor ampacity.
- N. Electrostatic Shield: Copper, between primary and secondary windings.
- O. Enclosure: NEMA ST 20, Type 1 ventilated. Provide lifting eyes or brackets.
- P. Isolate core and coil from enclosure using vibration-absorbing mounts.

- Q. Nameplate: Include transformer connection data and overload capacity based on rated allowable temperature rise.

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality Control: Manufacturer quality control as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections..
- B. Production test each unit according to NEMA ST20.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Set transformer plumb and level.
- B. Use flexible conduit, under the provisions of Section 260533, 2 feet minimum length, for connections to transformer case. Make conduit connections to side panel of enclosure.
- C. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 260526 and details on the Drawings.
- D. Mount wall-mounted transformers using integral flanges or accessory brackets furnished by the manufacturer.
- E. Install floor-mounted transformers on vibration isolating pads suitable for isolating the transformer noise from the building structure. Use one ½" thick, 4" square, resilient waffle design, oil-resistant elastomeric pad at each corner of the transformer, between the concrete base and the transformer frame, each sized for load of 50 pounds per square inch minimum.
- F. For wall hung transformer installations, use spring type Korfund Series CE, sized for the transformer load. Provide sound pads at each corner of the transformer sized for ½" deflections. Securely anchor wall mounting brackets to wall to provide adequate support.
- G. For floor transformer installations, use one pad type Korfund Elasto-Grip waffle at each corner of the transformer, sized for load of 50 pounds per square inch.
- H. Secure transformer to concrete base according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- I. Transformers shall be installed in a manner to be fully compliant with the seismic restraint requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code. Provide mounting devices and hardware, bracing, fittings, etc. as required for seismic restraint. See Section 260500, Paragraph 1.23 for additional requirements.
- J. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 260526.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality Assurance: Field inspection, testing, adjusting shall be as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections..
- B. Inspect and test in accordance with NETA ATS, except Section 4, or provide for qualified technicians to perform testing according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Contract Closeout: Adjust installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Measure primary and secondary voltages and make appropriate tap adjustments.
- C. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at secondary terminals. Optimum is defined as not exceeding nameplate voltage plus 5 percent and not being lower than nameplate voltage minus 3 percent at maximum load conditions. Submit recording and tap settings as test results.
- D. Output Settings Report: Prepare a written report recording output voltage and tap settings.

3.7 CLEANING

Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

END OF SECTION 262200

SECTION 262416 – PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Distribution panelboards.
- B. Branch circuit panelboards.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Division 3: Concrete for supporting foundations and pads.
- C. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding.
- D. Section 260553 - Electrical Identification.
- E. Section 262421 - Utility Service Entrance.
- F. Section 262813 - Fuses.
- G. Section 264313 – Surge Protection Devices for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NECA Standard of Installation (published by the National Electrical Contractors Association).
- B. NEMA AB1 - Molded Case Circuit Breakers.
- C. NEMA ICS 2 - Industrial Control Devices, Controllers and Assemblies.
- D. NEMA KS1 - Enclosed and Miscellaneous Distribution Equipment Switches (600 Volts Maximum).
- E. NEMA PB 1 - Panelboards.
- F. NEMA PB 1.1 - Instructions for Safe Installation, Operation and Maintenance of Panelboards Rated 600 Volts or Less.
- G. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

1.4 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions, ratings, features, colors, and configurations.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate outline and support point dimensions, voltage, main bus ampacity, integrated short circuit ampere rating, circuit breaker and fusible switch arrangement and sizes.
- D. Arrange panelboard branch circuit breakers as shown on the Drawings. Agreement of circuit breaker (pole) numbers with the Drawings panel schedules and floor plans is required in order to avoid confusion during construction, redrawing the circuitry for record drawing purposes and accurate documentation of the as-built conditions.

1.5 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. Submittals: Submittals for information. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions. Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of Product.

1.6 SUBMITTALS FOR CLOSEOUT

- A. Contract Closeout: Submittals for project closeout. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Record actual locations of panelboards and record actual circuiting arrangements in project record documents.
- C. Maintenance Data: Include spare parts listing; source and current prices of replacement parts and supplies; and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.8 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Products: Listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

1.9 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

- A. Contract Closeout. As required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Furnish two of each panelboard key.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. General Electric/ABB.
 - 3. Siemens.
 - 4. Square D Schneider.
 - 5. Substitutions: As permitted in relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Description: NEMA PB 1, circuit breaker type.
- C. Service Conditions:
 - 1. Temperature: 104° F. (40° C.).
 - 2. Altitude: N/A.
 - 3. Terminal Rating: 75° C. minimum.
- D. Panelboard Bus: Copper, ratings as indicated. Provide 100% copper ground and neutrals buses in each panelboard. Provide insulated ground bus where scheduled. Provide 200% copper neutral bus in each panelboard fed by a K rated transformer.
- E. Minimum integrated short circuit rating: 10,000 amperes rms symmetrical for 208 volt panelboards, or as indicated.
- F. Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, bolt-on or plug-on (Square D I-Line and similar only, secured in place with 1 or 2 fastening screws) type.
 - 1. Circuit breakers in distribution panelboards shall be fully rated.
 - 2. Solid-state Trip Molded Case Main and Branch Circuit Breakers (100A and larger): Panel mounted, NEMA AB 1, with electronic sensing, timing and tripping circuits for adjustable current settings. Electronic trip units shall be provided with external, permanently-mounted power supplies in the gear where required to program trip units while the breakers are deenergized. Trip units shall be field-programmable with an internal display for programming and display and have:
 - a. Adjustable instantaneous trip.
 - b. Adjustable long time pickup and delay.
 - c. Adjustable short time pickup and delay.
 - d. Ground fault pickup and delay.
 - e. Arc flash reduction mode with external switch and indicator (1,200A and larger).
 - f. Include shunt trip, undervoltage release, and other accessories where indicated.

- g. Display line currents and cause of trip.
 - 3. Conventional Thermal Magnetic Molded Case Branch Circuit Breakers: Circuit breakers with integral thermal and instantaneous magnetic trip in each pole.
 - 4. Circuit Breaker Accessories: Trip units and auxiliary switches as indicated.
- G. Enclosure: NEMA PB 1, Type 1 or Type 3R, cabinet box.
- H. Cabinet Front: Flush and Surface cabinet front door-in-door type with concealed trim clamps, concealed hinge, metal directory frame, and flush lock all keyed alike. Finish in manufacturer's standard gray enamel. Distribution panelboards larger than 400 amperes are not required to have door-in-door trims.

2.2 BRANCH CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. General Electric/ABB.
 - 3. Siemens.
 - 4. Square D Schneider.
 - 5. Substitutions: As permitted in relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Description: NEMA PB1, circuit breaker type, lighting and appliance branch circuit panelboard.
- C. Service Conditions:
 - 1. Temperature: 104° F. (40° C.).
 - 2. Altitude: N/A.
 - 3. Terminal Rating: 75° C. minimum.
- A. Panelboard Bus: Copper, ratings as indicated. Provide 100% copper ground and neutrals buses in each panelboard. Provide 200% copper neutral bus where indicated. Provide insulated ground bus where scheduled. Provide 200% copper neutral bus in each panelboard fed by a K rated transformer.
- B. Minimum Integrated Short Circuit Rating: 10,000 amperes rms symmetrical for 208 volt panelboards; 14,000 amperes rms symmetrical for 480 volt panelboards, or as indicated.
- C. Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, bolt-on type.
 - 1. Circuit breakers in branch circuit panelboards shall be fully rated.
 - 2. Solid-state Trip Molded Case Main Circuit Breakers (100A and larger): Panel mounted, NEMA AB 1, with electronic sensing, timing and tripping circuits for adjustable current settings. Electronic trip units shall be provided with external, permanently-mounted power supplies in the gear where required to program trip units while the breakers are deenergized. Trip units shall be field-programmable with an internal display for programming and display and have:
 - a. Adjustable instantaneous trip.
 - b. Adjustable long time pickup and delay.
 - c. Adjustable short time pickup and delay.
 - d. Ground fault pickup and delay.
 - e. Arc flash reduction mode with external switch and indicator.
 - f. Include shunt trip, undervoltage release, and other accessories where

- indicated.
 - g. Display line currents and cause of trip.
 - 3. Conventional Thermal Magnetic Molded Case Branch Circuit Breakers: Thermal magnetic trip circuit breakers, with common trip handle for all poles, listed as Type SWD for lighting circuits and Class A ground fault interrupter circuit breakers where scheduled. Do not use tandem circuit breakers.
 - 4. Circuit Breaker Accessories: Trip units and auxiliary switches as indicated.
- D. Enclosure: NEMA PB 1, Type 1 or Type 3R.
- E. Cabinet Box: 6 inches deep, 20 inches wide for 240 volt and less panelboards.
- F. Cabinet Front: Flush and Surface cabinet front door-in-door type with concealed trim clamps, concealed hinge, metal directory frame, and flush lock all keyed alike. Finish in manufacturer's standard gray enamel.

2.3 METERING

- A. The main distribution panelboard shall be provided with a front mounted, digital power quality meter / analyzer package. The metering shall include simultaneous display of six (6) parameters including voltage, current, power, kVA, kVAR, power factor, frequency, kW demand, amperes demand, kWH, kVARH, auxiliary voltage input and neutral current. Phase switching shall be provided and the display shall indicate the phase being displayed. Provide all voltage and current transformers required to provide the above data.
- B. Manufacturers: The power quality meter / analyzer package shall be:
- 1. Eaton IQ 260.
 - 2. General Electric/ABB.
 - 3. Siemens.
 - 4. Square D/Schneider.
 - 5. Substitutions: refer to provisions of the General and supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 specification sections.
- C. Install at 60" AFF to bottom of the meter case or, if the meter is to be installed above 60" AFF but no more than 78" AFF, provide an angle adapter to lower the meter viewing angle. Angle adapter shall be acceptable to the Architect/Engineer.

2.4 METERING TRANSFORMERS

- A. Current Transformers: ANSI C57.13, 5 ampere secondary, bar or window type, with single secondary winding and secondary shorting device, primary/secondary ratio as required, burden and accuracy consistent with connected metering and relay devices, 60 Hertz.
- B. Potential Transformers: ANSI C57.13, 120 volt secondary, disconnecting type with integral fuse mountings, primary/secondary ratio as required, burden and accuracy consistent with connected metering and relay devices, 60 Hertz.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install panelboards in accordance with NEMA PB 1.1 and the NECA "Standard of Installation."
- B. Install panelboards plumb. Install recessed panelboards flush with wall finishes.
- C. Panelboards shall be installed in a manner to be fully compliant with the seismic restraint requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code. Provide mounting devices and hardware, bracing, fittings, etc. as required for seismic restraint. See Section 260500, Paragraph 1.23 for additional requirements.
- D. Height: 6 feet to top of panelboard; install panelboards taller than 6 feet with bottom no more than 4 inches above floor.
- E. Provide filler plates for unused spaces in panelboards.
- F. Provide typed circuit directory for each branch circuit panelboard. Final typed panelboard directories installed in the panelboard door pocket shall include final actual room names and numbers in addition to the general description shown on the panel schedules on the drawings. Revise directory to reflect circuiting changes required to balance phase loads.
- G. Provide engraved plastic nameplates under the provisions of Section 260553.
- H. Provide spare conduits out of each recessed panelboard to an accessible location above ceiling and below floor. Minimum spare conduits: 5 empty 1 inch. Identify each as SPARE.
- I. Ground and bond panelboard enclosure according to Section 260526.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality Control: Field inspection, testing and adjusting shall be as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Contract Closeout: Adjust installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Cleaning: Vacuum dirt and debris from panelboard tubs; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.
- C. Measure steady state load currents at each panelboard feeder; rearrange circuits in the panelboard to balance the phase loads to within 20 percent of each other. Maintain proper phasing for multi-wire branch circuits.
- D. Adjust circuit breaker trip and time delay settings to minimum values that do not cause false tripping.

END OF SECTION 262416

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Wall switches.
- B. Wall box dimmers.
- C. Receptacles.
- D. Wall plates.
- E. Floor box service fittings.

1.2 DESCRIPTION

Provide wiring devices in types, characteristics, grades, colors and electrical ratings for applications indicated which are third party testing agency listed and which comply with NEMA WD 1 and other applicable third party testing agency, NEMA and DSCC (Fed Spec) standards. All devices shall be produced by the same manufacturer.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding.
- C. Section 260534 - Boxes.
- D. Section 260553 - Electrical Identification.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. NECA - Standard of Installation.
- B. NEMA WD 1 - General Requirements for Wiring Devices.
- C. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Device - Dimensional Requirements.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- E. Underwriters Laboratories (UL) 498.
- F. DSCC (Fed Spec) W-C-596G

1.5 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions, colors, and configurations.

1.6 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. Submittals: Submittals for information. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.8 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide Products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WALL SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Hubbell Model 1221/2/3/4 Series.
 - 2. Leviton 1221/2/3/4.
 - 3. Pass and Seymour PS20AC1/2/3/4.
 - 4. Substitutions: Refer to provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Description: NEMA WD 1, third party testing agency listed, DSCC, heavy-duty, AC only, general-use, grounding type, back and side wired, single pole, three-way and four-way as indicated, snap switch with hex-head equipment grounding screw. Switches shall have a steel, nickel plated bridge with integral ground, one piece rivetless copper alloy spring contact arm and terminal plate and large silver cadmium oxide contacts. All switches shall have quiet operating mechanisms without the use of mercury switches. All switches shall be approved by a third party agency, approved for the voltage and current indicated.
- C. Body and Handle: Gray plastic with toggle handle.

- D. Indicator Light: Neon lighted handle type switch; red color handle. Voltage per system rating.
- E. Locator Light: Neon lighted handle type switch; green color handle. Voltage per system rating.
- F. Ratings:
 - 1. Voltage: 120-277 volts AC.
 - 2. Current: 20 amperes.

2.2 WALL BOX LED 0-10V DIMMERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Lutron DVSTV and DVTV.
 - 2. Sensor Switch.
 - 3. Wattstopper.
 - 4. Substitutions: Refer to provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Description: NEMA WD 1, third party testing agency, DSCC Type I semiconductor dimmer for LED drivers. Provide line voltage or 0-10V to match lighting fixtures specified.
- C. Body and Handle: Gray plastic with preset slider.
- D. Switch Ratings:
 - 1. Voltage: 120-277 volts AC.
 - 2. Current: 8A minimum. Provide with 16A power pack for loads greater than 8A.
- E. Power Rating: Match load shown on drawings.

2.3 RECEPTACLES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Hubbell Model HBL 5362 and HBL 5362TR.
 - 2. Leviton 5362 and 5363-SGW.
 - 3. Pass and Seymour 5362A and TR63.
 - 4. Substitutions: Refer to provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Description: NEMA WD 1, third party testing agency, DSCC, Federal Grade, heavy-duty, 20 ampere, 120 volt, general use, duplex, straight blade, grounding type receptacle arranged for back and side wiring, with separate single or double grounding terminals. Receptacles shall have a full wrap around brass bridge with integral ground and standup double wipe contacts. Self grounding or automatic type grounding receptacles are not acceptable in lieu of receptacles with separate grounding screw lugs and a direct, green insulated conductor connection to the equipment grounding system.
- C. Device Face and Body: Gray nylon or reinforced thermoplastic.
- D. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, type as specified and indicated.

- E. Convenience Receptacle: Type 5-20R.
- F. Provide tamper resistant devices where required by Codes.

2.4 GROUND FAULT CIRCUIT INTERRUPTERS (GFI)

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Hubbell Model GFR5362S.
 - 2. Leviton G5362.
 - 3. Pass and Seymour 2097TRWR.
 - 4. Substitutions: Refer to provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Description: NEMA WD 1, third party testing agency, DSCC, Federal Grade, heavy-duty, 20 ampere, 120 volt, general use, duplex, straight blade, grounding type receptacle arranged for back and side wiring, with separate single or double grounding terminals. Receptacles shall have a full wrap around brass bridge with integral ground and standup double wipe contacts. Self grounding or automatic type grounding receptacles are not acceptable in lieu of receptacles with separate grounding screw lugs and a direct, green insulated conductor connection to the equipment grounding system.
- C. Device Face and Body: Gray nylon or reinforced thermoplastic.
- D. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, type as specified and indicated.
- E. Convenience Receptacle: Type 5-20R.
- F. Provide tamper resistant devices where required by Codes.

2.5 WALL PLATES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Hubbell.
 - 2. Leviton.
 - 3. Pass and Seymour.
 - 4. Substitutions: Refer to provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Decorative Cover Plate: Single and combination, of types, sizes and with ganging and cutouts as indicated. Provide plates which mate and match with wiring devices to which attached. Material shall be smooth, 0.04" thick, type 302 Stainless Steel as manufactured by the device vendor.
- C. Weatherproof Cover Plate: Exterior mounted receptacles, and those noted to be weatherproof, shall be provided with weatherproof PVC transparent cover plates, standard size, and shall be single or ganged as indicated on the contract drawings. Weatherproof plates shall be "approved" third party listed as "raintight while in use".
- D. Provide a minimum of 2% (not less than 2) spare cover plates of each type at project close-out.

2.6 FLOOR MOUNTED SERVICE FITTINGS

- A. Pedestal Convenience Receptacle:
 - 1. Housing: Satin aluminum.
 - 2. Device Plate: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Configuration: As shown.
- B. Flush Cover Convenience Receptacle:
 - 1. Material: Brass.
 - 2. Configuration: Duplex threaded opening.
- C. Pedestal Communication Outlet:
 - 1. Housing: Satin aluminum.
 - 2. Device Plate: By Owner.
 - 3. Configuration: N/A.
- D. Flush Cover Communication Outlet:
 - 1. Material: Brass.
 - 2. Configuration: 2-1/8 x 1 inch combination threaded opening.
- E. Pedestal Combination Fitting:
 - 1. Housing: Satin aluminum.
 - 2. Device Plate: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Configuration: One duplex convenience receptacle with one bushed opening, 1 inch inside diameter.
- F. Flush Cover Combination Fitting:
 - 1. Material: Brass.
 - 2. Configuration: Duplex threaded opening with 2-1/8 x 1 inch combination threaded opening.
- G. Protective Ring: Brass finish.
- H. Split Nozzle: Brass finish.
- I. Carpet Ring: Brass.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Ensure that outlet boxes are installed at proper height.
- B. Ensure that wall openings are neatly cut and will be completely covered by wall plates.
- C. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to wiring devices.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide extension rings to bring outlet boxes flush with finished surface.
- B. Clean debris from outlet boxes.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation".
- B. Install devices vertically, plumb and level.
- C. Install switches with OFF position down.
- D. Install receptacles with grounding pole on top. Install horizontally oriented receptacles with the grounding pole on the left.
- E. Receptacles installed over counters, backsplashes, etc., shall be mounted horizontally.
- F. Install line voltage wall dimmers to achieve full rating specified and indicated after derating for ganging as instructed by manufacturer.
- G. Do not share neutral conductor on load side of line voltage dimmers.
- H. Connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- I. Install decorative plates on switch, receptacle, and blank outlets in finished areas. Schedule installation of finish plates after the surface upon which they are installed has received final finish.
- J. Connect switches by wrapping conductor around screw terminal.
- K. Connect receptacles by utilizing back wiring provisions only. Do not use side wire terminals.
- L. Install galvanized steel plates on outlet boxes and junction boxes in unfinished areas, above accessible ceilings, and on surface mounted outlets. Use cast box covers and plates on cast boxes.
- M. Install protective rings on active flush cover service fittings.
- N. Provide adhesive backed, laminated plastic receptacle device plate labels identifying the circuit feeding the device. Labels shall be label machine printed to indicate panel and circuit number and shall be Casio, Brother, T&B or approved equal. See Section 260553 for additional requirements

3.4 INTERFACE WITH OTHER PRODUCTS

- A. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 260534 to obtain mounting heights specified and indicated on drawings.
- B. All wiring devices shall be installed at heights as required by the ADA

- C. Install wall switch 48 inches above finished floor, measured to top of device plate.
- D. Install convenience receptacle 18 inches above finished floor, measured to bottom of device plate, unless noted otherwise on the Drawings.
- E. Install convenience receptacle horizontally 6 inches above backsplash of counter, unless noted otherwise on the Drawings.
- F. Install dimmer 48 inches (1.2 m) above finished floor, measured to top of device of plate.
- G. Install telecommunications jack 18 inches (450 mm) above finished floor, measured to bottom of device plate, unless noted otherwise on the Drawings.
- H. Install telephone jack for side-reach wall telephone to position top of telephone at 54 inches (1.4 m) above finished floor, unless noted otherwise on the Drawings.
- I. Install telephone jack for forward-reach wall telephone to position top of telephone at 48 (1.2 m) above finished floor, unless noted otherwise on the Drawings.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality Control. As required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Inspect each wiring device for defects.
- C. Operate each wall switch with circuit energized and verify proper operation.
- D. Verify that each receptacle device is energized.
- E. Test each receptacle device for correct polarity and for ground continuity.
- F. Test each GFCI receptacle device for correct operation.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Contract Closeout: Adjust installed work under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Adjust devices and wall plates to be flush and level.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Contract Closeout: Clean installed work under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces to remove splatters and restore finish.

END OF SECTION 262726

SECTION 262727 - OCCUPANCY SENSORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

Wall box and ceiling type occupancy sensors and accessories.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 260534 - Boxes.
- C. Section 260553 - Electrical Identification.
- D. Section 262726 - Wiring Devices.
- E. Section 260526 - Grounding.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NECA - Standard of Installation.
- B. NEMA WD 1 - General Requirements for Wiring Devices.
- C. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Device -- Dimensional Requirements.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

1.4 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions, colors, ratings and configurations.

1.5 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. Submittals: Submittals for information. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.

1.6 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide Products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. The Occupancy Sensor system shall sense the presence of human activity within the spaces indicated and fully control the “On” / “Off” function of the lighting loads automatically. Sensors shall turn “On” the load upon entrance into the room and shall not initiate “On” outside of entrance.
- B. Acceptable technology is Passive Infrared (PIR), Ultrasonic and Microphonic. Dual Technology is required utilizing PIR and one of the other technologies.
- C. Occupancy sensors shall be field convertible to operate in either the occupancy or vacancy mode.
- D. Sensors shall automatically adjust time delays and sensitivity based on the activity level in the space.
- E. All line voltage devices shall be approved third party testing agency listed under Energy Management Equipment, or Industrial Control Equipment. Listing under Appliance Control shall not be accepted.
- F. All line voltage devices shall be UL Listed under Energy Management Equipment, or Industrial Control Equipment. UL Listing under Appliance Control shall not be accepted.
- G. Product shall be manufactured in the USA and be warranted for 5 years.

2.2 WALL BOX LINE VOLTAGE SENSORS FOR SMALL AREAS

- A. Description: Line voltage, single gang, wall mounted occupancy sensor switch with one override or two (as shown) switch(es). Switch shall recess into single gang switch box and fit a standard GFI receptacle plate opening. Switches shall be compatible with standard three and four-way toggle switches. All switches shall be approved by a third party agency, approved for the voltage and current indicated. Provide hard lens switches in storage rooms and other location subject to abuse.

- B. Manufacturers
 - 1. Lutron.
 - 2. Sensor Switch.
 - 3. Wattstopper.
 - 4. Substitutions: Refer to provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- C. Body and Handle: Match device colors specified in Section 262726.
- D. Ratings:
 - Voltage: 120-277 volts AC.
 - Minimum Load Rating: 800 watts at 120 VAC, 1200 watts at 277 VAC. Sensors shall be compatible with all load types, including LED, electronic and compact fluorescent ballasts, incandescent or fluorescent and require no minimum load.

2.3 WALL BOX LOW VOLTAGE SENSOR/DIMMER SWITCHES FOR SMALL AREAS

- A. Description: Low voltage, single gang, wall mounted occupancy sensor switch 0-10v dimmer with one override or two (as shown) switch(es). Switch shall recess into single gang switch box and fit a standard GFI receptacle plate opening. Switches shall be compatible with standard three and four-way toggle switches. All switches shall be approved by a third party agency, approved for the voltage and current indicated. Provide hard lens switches in storage rooms and other location subject to abuse.
- B. Manufacturers
 - 1. Lutron.
 - 2. Sensor Switch.
 - 3. Wattstopper.
 - 4. Substitutions: Refer to provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- C. Body and Handle: Match device colors specified in Section 262726.

2.4 CEILING MOUNTED LOW VOLTAGE SENSORS FOR LARGE AREAS

- A. Sensor Switches: Low voltage, recess ceiling mounted occupancy sensor switch. Sensors shall be adjustable to accommodate the room geometry as shown or the contractor shall provide multiple sensors as required for complete coverage. The device shall operate in conjunction with a line voltage power pack to control the connected lighting loads. Sensors shall operate on a Class 2, three-conductor system. Multiple sensors shall be connectable to a single power pack. Sensor shall recess into a two gang outlet box. All devices shall be approved by a third party agency, approved for the voltage and current indicated.
 - Manufacturers:
 - 1. Lutron.
 - 2. Sensor Switch.
 - 3. Wattstopper.
 - 4. Substitutions: Refer to provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

- B. Control units/Power packs: Devices shall be rated 20A at 120-277 volts and shall be compatible with all load types, including LED. They shall have the capacity to power additional remote heads or additional relays. Control relays may be paralleled to accommodate extra load or more than three heads or additional relays. Additional relay shall be used where there is more than one circuit being controlled or where there is a need to control multiple voltages.
- Manufacturers:
1. Lutron.
 2. Sensor Switch.
 3. Wattstopper.
 4. Substitutions: Refer to provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- C. Sensor Body: White plastic, or match device colors specified in Section 262726.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Ensure that outlet boxes are installed at the proper location.
- B. Ensure that ceiling openings are neatly cut and will be completely covered by devices.
- C. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to wiring devices.

3.2 PREPARATION

Clean debris from outlet boxes.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation."
- B. Install in locations in accordance with manufacturers recommendation.
- C. Install devices vertically, plumb and level.
- D. Connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.

3.4 INTERFACE WITH OTHER PRODUCTS

- A. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 260534 to obtain mounting heights specified and indicated on drawings.
- B. All wiring devices shall be installed at heights as required by the A.D.A.

- C. Install wall switch 48 inches (1.2 m) above finished floor, measured to bottom of outlet box.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality Control. As required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Inspect each wiring device for defects.
- C. Operate each system with circuit energized and verify proper operation.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Contract Closeout: Adjust installed work under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Adjust devices and wall plates to be flush and level.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Contract Closeout: Clean installed work under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces to remove splatters and restore finish.

END OF SECTION 262727

SECTION 262813 - FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fuses.
- B. Spare fuse cabinet.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 262816 – Enclosed Switches.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NFPA 70 - National Electric Code.
- B. NEMA FU 1 - Low Voltage Cartridge Fuses.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide data sheets showing electrical characteristics including time-current curves.

1.5 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Record actual fuse sizes.

1.6 QUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified and indicated.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Provide no less than 10% of each fuse size and type installed, with a minimum of at least one set of three of each.
- B. Provide one fuse puller.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.3 FUSE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Dimensions and Performance: NEMA FU 1, Class as specified or indicated.
- B. Voltage: Provide fuses with voltage rating suitable for circuit phase-to-phase voltage.
- C. Third party testing agency Listed.

	<u>Circuit Type</u>	<u>Fuse type</u>
1.	Service Entrance and Feeder Circuits over 600Amp 200K Amp interrupting rating.	Class L
2.	Service Entrance and Feeder Circuits 600Amp or less 200K Amp interrupting rating.	Class RK1 or J
3.	Motor, Motor Controller and Transformer Circuits 200K Amp interrupting rating.	RK5
- D. For individual equipment where fault current does not exceed 50KA use Class K5 fuses with 50KA interrupting rating.
- E. Fusible safety switches with short-circuit withstand ratings of 100KA or 200KA require Class R or Class J rejection fuse block feature.

2.4 SPARE FUSE CABINET

- A. Description: Wall-mounted sheet metal cabinet, suitably sized to store spare fuses and fuse puller specified.
- B. Doors: Hinged, with hasp for Owner's padlock.
- C. Finish: Beige enamel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

- B. Install fuse with label oriented such that manufacturer, type, and size are easily read.
- C. Install spare fuse cabinet in main electrical equipment room or adjacent to the main service equipment.

END OF SECTION 262813

SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fusible switches.
- B. Nonfusible switches.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding.
- C. Section 260529 – Supporting Devices.
- D. Section 260553 – Electrical Identification.
- E. Section 262813 – Fuses.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NECA - Standard of Installation (published by the National Electrical Contractors Association).
- B. NEMA FU1 - Low Voltage Cartridge Fuses.
- C. NEMA KS1 - Enclosed and Miscellaneous Distribution Equipment Switches (600 Volts Maximum).
- E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

1.4 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Provide switch ratings and enclosure dimensions.

1.5 SUBMITTALS FOR CLOSEOUT

- A. Contract Closeout: Submittals for project closeout. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Record actual locations of enclosed switches in project record documents.

1.6 QUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Products: Listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Eaton.
- B. General Electric/ABB.
- C. Siemens.
- D. Square D Schneider.
- E. Substitutions: As permitted in relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

2.2 RATINGS

- A. Service Conditions:
 - 1. Temperature: 104°F. (40°C.).
 - 2. Altitude: N/A.
 - 3. Terminal Rating: 75°C. minimum.
- B. Minimum Integrated Short Circuit Rating: 10,000 amperes rms symmetrical, or as indicated.

2.3 FUSIBLE SWITCH ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: NEMA KS 1, heavy duty type with externally operable handle interlocked (defeatable) to prevent opening front cover with switch in ON position, enclosed load interrupter knife switch. Mechanisms shall be non-teasible, positive, quick make-quick break type. Handle lockable in ON or OFF position. Switches shall have handles whose positions are easily recognizable in the ON or OFF position.
- B. Fuse clips: Designed to accommodate NEMA FU1, Class R fuses.
- C. Provide accessories required by their installation. Provide auxiliary switch contacts as required by other systems. Coordinate with other Divisions as required.

2.4 NONFUSIBLE SWITCH ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: NEMA KS 1, heavy duty type with externally operable handle interlocked (defeatable) to prevent opening front cover with switch in ON position, enclosed load

interrupter knife switch. Mechanisms shall be non-teasible, positive, quick make-quick break type. Handle lockable in ON or OFF position. Switches shall have handles whose positions are easily recognizable in the ON or OFF position.

- B. Provide accessories required by their installation. Provide auxiliary switch contacts as required by other systems. Coordinate with other Divisions as required.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide neutral assemblies and equipment grounding kits as required.
- B. For safety switches installed in elevator controller feeders, provide electrical interlock kit(s) with sufficient contacts for elevator control interlock as required by the elevator vendor.

2.6 ENCLOSURES

- A. Fabrication: NEMA KS 1.
 - 1. Interior Dry Locations: Type 1.
 - 2. Exterior Locations: Type 3R.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation".
- B. Switches shall be installed in a manner to be fully compliant with the seismic restraint requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code. Provide mounting devices and hardware, bracing, fittings, etc. as required for seismic restraint. See Section 260500, Paragraph 1.23 for additional requirements.
- C. Install fuses in fusible disconnect switches serving Division 26 equipment.
- D. Apply adhesive tag on inside door of each fused switch indicating NEMA fuse class and size installed.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality Control: Field inspection, testing and adjusting as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

END OF SECTION 262816

SECTION 262923 - VARIABLE-FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes separately enclosed, pre-assembled, combination VFCs, rated 600 V and less, for speed control of three-phase, squirrel-cage induction motors, furnished and installed by Division 23.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 262813 - Fuses.
- B. Section 260553 – Electrical Identification.
- C. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding.
- D. Section 260529 - Supports.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. BAS: Building automation system.
- B. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- C. LAN: Local area network.
- D. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- E. MCP: Motor-circuit protector.
- F. NC: Normally closed.
- G. NO: Normally open.
- H. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- I. PCC: Point of common coupling.
- J. PWM: Pulse-width modulated.
- K. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- L. TDD: Total demand (harmonic current) distortion.

M. THD(V): Total harmonic voltage demand.

N. VFC: Variable-frequency motor controller.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: VFCs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and rating of VFC indicated. Include features, performance, electrical ratings, operating characteristics, shipping and operating weights, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. LEED Submittals:

1. Product Data for Credit EA 5: For continuous metering equipment for energy consumption.

C. Shop Drawings: For each VFC indicated. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, and sections; and conduit entry locations and sizes, mounting arrangements, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment.

1. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings. Include the following:
 - a. Each installed unit's type and details.
 - b. Factory-installed devices.
 - c. Enclosure types and details.
 - d. Nameplate legends.
 - e. Short-circuit current (withstand) rating of enclosed unit.
 - f. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of each VFC and installed devices.
 - g. Specified modifications.
2. Schematic and Connection Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

D. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, drawn to scale, showing dimensioned layout, required working clearances, and required area above and around VFCs. Show VFC layout and relationships between electrical components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Indicate field measurements.

E. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

F. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For VFCs, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.

3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based, and their installation requirements.
- G. Product Certificates: For each VFC, from manufacturer.
- H. Source quality-control reports.
- I. Field quality-control reports.
- J. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VFCs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting thermal-magnetic circuit breaker and MCP trip settings.
 2. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.
 3. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor control modules.
 4. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable timers, controls, and status and alarm points.
- K. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate, full-load currents.
- L. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor-running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NRTL [or NETA .
 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.][delete for SCO projects]
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. IEEE Compliance: Fabricate and test VFC according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. If stored in space that is not permanently enclosed and air conditioned, remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside controllers and install temporary electric heating, with at least 250 W per controller.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation, capable of driving full load without derating, under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than 14 deg F (minus 10 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
 - 2. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C) and not exceeding 140 deg F (60 deg C)
 - 3. Humidity: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
 - 4. Altitude: Not exceeding 3300 feet (1005 m).
 - 5. Provide sealed and gasketed NEMA 4X enclosures in outdoor locations.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for VFCs, including clearances between VFCs, and adjacent surfaces and other items.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, load characteristics, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 2. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 3. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
- C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace VFCs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five (5) years from date of final acceptance of the work.

1.12 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 - 2. Control Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
 - 3. Indicating Lights: Two of each type and color installed.
 - 4. Auxiliary Contacts: Furnish one spare(s) for each size and type of magnetic controller installed.
 - 5. Power Contacts: Furnish three spares for each size and type of magnetic contactor installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 - 3. Rockwell Automation, Inc.; Allen-Bradley Brand.
 - 4. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 - 5. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. General Requirements for VFCs: Comply with NEMA ICS 7, NEMA ICS 61800-2.
- C. Application: Variable torque for compressors, fans and pumps.
- D. VFC Description: Variable-frequency power converter (rectifier, dc bus, and IGBT, PWM inverter), 12 pulse drive factory packaged in an enclosure, with integral disconnecting means and overcurrent and overload protection; listed and labeled by an NRTL as a complete unit; arranged to provide self-protection, protection, and variable-speed control of one or more three-phase induction motors by adjusting output voltage and frequency.
 - 1. Units suitable for operation of inverter-duty motors as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 31, "Definite-Purpose Inverter-Fed Polyphase Motors."
 - 2. Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Design and Rating: Match load type, such as fans, blowers, and pumps; and type of connection used between motor and load such as direct or through a power-transmission connection.
- F. Output Rating: Three-phase; 10 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range; maximum voltage equals input voltage.
- G. Unit Operating Requirements:
 - 1. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 percent of VFC frequency rating.
 - 2. Minimum Efficiency: 96 percent at 60 Hz, full load.
 - 3. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 percent under any load or speed condition.
 - 4. Vibration Withstand: Comply with IEC 60068-2-6.
 - 5. Overload Capability: 1.1 times the base load current for 60 seconds; minimum of 1.8 times the base load current for three seconds.
 - 6. Starting Torque: Minimum 100 percent of rated torque from 3 to 60 Hz.
 - 7. Output Carrier Frequency: Selectable; 0.5 to 15 kHz.
 - 8. Stop Modes: Programmable; includes fast, free-wheel, and dc injection braking.
- H. Inverter Logic: Microprocessor based, isolated from all power circuits.

- I. Isolated Control Interface: Allows VFCs to follow remote-control signal over a minimum 40:1 speed range.
 - 1. Signal: Electrical.
- J. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:
 - 1. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
 - 2. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
 - 3. Current Limit: 30 to minimum of 150 percent of maximum rating.
- K. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
 - 1. Input transient protection by means of surge suppressors to provide three-phase protection against damage from supply voltage surges 10 percent or more above nominal line voltage.
 - 2. Loss of Input Signal Protection: Selectable response strategy, including speed default to a percent of the most recent speed, a preset speed, or stop; with alarm.
 - 3. Under- and overvoltage trips.
 - 4. Inverter overcurrent trips.
 - 5. VFC and Motor Overload/Overtemperature Protection: Microprocessor-based thermal protection system for monitoring VFCs and motor thermal characteristics, and for providing VFC overtemperature and motor overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad; NRTL approved.
 - 6. Critical frequency rejection, with three selectable, adjustable deadbands.
 - 7. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
 - 8. Loss-of-phase protection.
 - 9. Reverse-phase protection.
 - 10. Short-circuit protection.
 - 11. Motor overtemperature fault.
- L. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempt three restarts after drive fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction; adjustable delay time between restart attempts.
- M. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.
- N. Integral Input Disconnecting Means and OCPD: NEMA KS 1, fusible switch with pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.
 - 1. Disconnect Rating: Not less than 115 percent of NFPA 70 motor full-load current rating or VFC input current rating, whichever is larger.

2.2 CONTROLS AND INDICATION

- A. Status Lights: Door-mounted LED indicators displaying the following conditions:
 - 1. Power on.
 - 2. Run.
 - 3. Overvoltage.
 - 4. Line fault.
 - 5. Overcurrent.
 - 6. External fault.

- B. Historical Logging Information and Displays:
 - 1. Real-time clock with current time and date.
 - 2. Running log of total power versus time.
 - 3. Total run time.
 - 4. Fault log, maintaining last four faults with time and date stamp for each.
- C. Indicating Devices: Digital display and additional readout devices as required, mounted flush in VFC door and connected to display VFC parameters including, but not limited to:
 - 1. Output frequency (Hz).
 - 2. Motor speed (rpm).
 - 3. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
 - 4. Motor current (amperes).
 - 5. Fault or alarming status (code).
 - 6. Set point frequency (Hz).
- D. Control Signal Interfaces:
 - 1. Electric Input Signal Interface:
 - a. A minimum of six multifunction programmable digital inputs.
 - 2. Remote Signal Inputs: Capability to accept any of the following speed-setting input signals from the BAS or other control systems:
 - a. 0- to 10-V dc.
 - b. 4- to 20-mA dc.
 - 3. Output Signal Interface: A minimum of one programmable analog output signal(s) (0- to 10-V dc, which can be configured for any of the following:
 - a. Output frequency (Hz).
 - b. Motor speed (rpm).
 - 4. Remote Indication Interface: A minimum of two programmable dry-circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:
 - a. Motor running.
 - b. Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).

2.3 BYPASS SYSTEMS

- A. Bypass Operation: Safely transfers motor between power converter output and bypass circuit manually. Selector switches set modes and indicator lights indicate mode selected. Unit is capable of stable operation (starting, stopping, and running) with motor completely disconnected from power converter.
- B. Bypass Mode: Manual operation only; requires local operator selection at VFC. Transfer between power converter and bypass contactor and retransfer shall only be allowed with the motor at zero speed.
- C. Bypass Controller: Two-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller, with input isolating switch and barrier arranged to isolate the power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode.
 - 1. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, NEMA-rated contactor.
 - 2. Output Isolating Contactor: Non-load-break, NEMA-rated contactor.
 - 3. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized

and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.

- D. Bypass Contactor Configuration: Full-voltage (across-the-line) type.
 - 1. NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch.
 - 2. HAND/OFF/AUTO selector switch.
 - 3. NORMAL/TEST Selector Switch: Allows testing and adjusting of VFC while the motor is running in the bypass mode.
 - 4. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors.
 - a. Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
 - b. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double break, and silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
 - 5. Control Circuits: 120-V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, of sufficient capacity to operate all integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
 - a. CPT Spare Capacity: 50 VA.
 - 6. Overload Relays: NEMA ICS 2.
 - a. Solid-State Overload Relays:
 - 1) Switch or dial selectable for motor-running overload protection.
 - 2) Sensors in each phase.
 - 3) Class 10/20 selectable tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
 - 4) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
 - 5) Analog communication module.
 - b. NO isolated overload alarm contact.
 - c. External overload reset push button.

2.4 LINE CONDITIONING

- A. Input Line Conditioning: Provide input filtering, as required, to limit TDD at input terminals of all VFCs to less than 8 percent and THD(V) to 5 percent.

2.5 ENCLOSURES

- A. VFC Enclosures: NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 and 4X as required to meet conditions of installation. See Section 260500 for enclosure requirements.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. General Requirements for Control-Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in VFC enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Push Buttons, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: Heavy-duty, type.
 - a. Push Buttons: Shielded types; momentary.
 - b. Pilot Lights: LED types; push to test.
- B. Bypass contactor auxiliary contact(s).
- C. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable solid-state time-delay relays.

- D. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.
 - 1. Current Transformers: Continuous current rating, basic impulse insulating level (BIL) rating, burden, and accuracy class suitable for connected circuitry. Comply with IEEE C57.13.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Test and inspect VFCs according to requirements in NEMA ICS 61800-2.
 - 1. Test each VFC while connected to its specified motor.
 - 2. Verification of Performance: Rate VFCs according to operation of functions and features specified.
- B. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, surfaces, and substrates to receive VFCs, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine VFC before installation. Reject VFCs that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for conduit systems to verify actual locations of conduit connections before VFC installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of VFCs with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Wall-Mounting Controllers: Install VFCs on walls with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches (2000 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not on walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- C. Equipment shall be installed in a manner to be fully compliant with the seismic restraint requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code. Provide mounting devices and

hardware, bracing, fittings, etc. as required for seismic restraint. See Section 260500, Paragraph 1.22 for additional requirements.

- D. Install fuses in each fusible-switch VFC.
- E. Install fuses in control circuits if not factory installed. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Fuses."
- F. Install, connect, and fuse thermal-protector monitoring relays furnished with motor-driven equipment.
- G. Comply with NECA 1.
- H. Install wiring from VFC to motor in conduit and locate the VFC within ten (10) feet and within sight of the motor.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify VFCs, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 - 2. Label each VFC with engraved nameplate.
 - 3. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.
- B. Operating Instructions: Frame printed operating instructions for VFCs, including control sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished metal, and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of VFC units.

3.4 CONTROL WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Install wiring between VFCs and remote devices[and facility's central-control system]. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- B. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.
- C. Connect selector switches and other automatic control devices where applicable.
 - 1. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic control devices that have no safety functions when switches are in manual-control position.
 - 2. Connect selector switches with control circuit in both manual and automatic positions for safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature cutouts, and motor overload protectors.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

- C. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect VFC, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment.
 - 2. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
 - 3. Test continuity of each circuit.
 - 4. Verify that voltages at VFC locations are within 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify Architect before starting the motor(s).
 - 5. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
 - 6. [Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.][delete for SCO projects]
 - 7. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 8. Perform the following infrared (thermographic) scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each VFC. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each VFC 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 9. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- F. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies the VFC and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations made after remedial action.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Program microprocessors for required operational sequences, status indications, alarms, event recording, and display features. Clear events memory after final acceptance testing and prior to Substantial Completion.
- B. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.
- C. Adjust the trip settings of MCPs and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable, instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to six times the motor nameplate full-load amperes and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cool-down between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed eight times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify Architect before increasing settings.
- D. Set the taps on reduced-voltage autotransformer controllers.
- E. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Division 26 Section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."
- F. Set field-adjustable pressure switches.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.
- B. Replace VFCs whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Substantial Completion.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, reprogram, and maintain VFCs.

END OF SECTION 262923

SECTION 264313 - SURGE SUPPRESSION DEVICES FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Section includes field-mounted surge suppression devices (SPD) for low-voltage (120VAC to 480VAC) power distribution and control equipment.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding.
- C. Section 260529 - Supporting Devices.
- D. Section 260553 - Electrical Identification.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance Testing Specifications.
- B. SVR: Suppressed voltage rating.
- C. SPD: Surge Suppression Device.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating weights, electrical characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- C. Product Certificates: For SPD, from manufacturer.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For SPD to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- F. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with IEEE C62.41.2 and test devices according to IEEE C62.45.
- D. Comply with NEMA LS 1.
- E. Comply with UL 1283 and UL 1449.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Service Conditions: SPDs shall be rated for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage: Not less than 115 percent of nominal system operating voltage.
 2. Operating Temperature: 30 to 120 deg F.
 3. Humidity: 0 to 85 percent, noncondensing.
 4. Altitude: Less than 20,000 feet above sea level.

1.7 COORDINATION

Coordinate location of SPDs to allow adequate clearances for maintenance.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of surge suppressors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: Ten (10) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SERVICE ENTRANCE SUPPRESSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. ABB.
 2. Current Technology.
 3. Eaton.
 4. Siemens.
 5. Square D.

- B. Surge Protection Devices:
1. Comply with UL 1449, 5th Edition.
 2. Short-circuit current rating complying with UL 1449, and matching or exceeding the panelboard short-circuit rating and redundant suppression circuits; with individually fused metal-oxide varistors.
 3. Fuses, rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
 4. Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
 5. Redundant suppression circuits.
 6. Arrangement with copper bus bars and for bolted connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
 7. Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
 8. LED indicator lights for power and protection status of each phase and neutral.
 9. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
 10. Form-C contacts rated at 5A and 250VAC, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
 11. Six-digit transient event counter with reset button and nonvolatile memory to totalize transient surges.
- C. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 320 kA per mode/640 kA per phase.
- D. Minimum single impulse current ratings, using 8-by-20-mic.sec waveform described in IEEE C62.41.2
1. Line to Neutral: 70,000 A.
 2. Line to Ground: 70,000 A.
 3. Neutral to Ground: 50,000 A.
- E. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277VAC and 208Y/120VAC, 3-phase, 4-wire circuits shall be as follows:
1. Line to Neutral: 800 V for 480Y/277VAC and 400 V for 208Y/120VAC.
 2. Line to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277VAC and 400 V for 208Y/120VAC.
 3. Neutral to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277VAC and 400 V for 208Y/120VAC.

2.2 PANELBOARD SUPPRESSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following.
1. ABB.
 2. Current Technology.
 3. Eaton.
 4. Siemens.
 5. Square D.
- B. Surge Protection Devices:
1. Comply with UL 1449, 5th Edition.
 2. Short-circuit current rating complying with UL 1449, and matching or exceeding the panelboard short-circuit rating and redundant suppression circuits; with individually fused metal-oxide varistors.
 3. Fuses, rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
 4. Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.

5. Redundant suppression circuits.
 6. Redundant replaceable modules.
 7. Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
 8. LED indicator lights for power and protection status of each phase and neutral.
 9. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
 10. Form-C contacts rated at 5A and 250VAC, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
 11. Six-digit transient event counter with reset button and nonvolatile memory to totalize transient surges.
- C. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 160 kA per mode/320 kA per phase.
- D. Minimum single impulse current ratings, using 8-by-20-mic.sec waveform described in IEEE C62.41.2:
1. Line to Neutral: 70,000 A.
 2. Line to Ground: 70,000 A.
 3. Neutral to Ground: 50,000 A.
- E. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277VAC and 208Y/120VAC, 3-phase, 4-wire circuits shall be as follows:
1. Line to Neutral: 800 V for 480Y/277VAC and 400 V for 208Y/120VAC.
 2. Line to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277VAC and 400 V for 208Y/120VC.
 3. Neutral to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277VAC and 400 V for 208Y/120VC.

2.3 ENCLOSURES

- A. Indoor Enclosures: NEMA 250 Type 1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install SPD at service entrance on load side, with ground lead bonded to service entrance ground.
- B. Install SPD with conductors or buses between suppressor and points of attachment as short and straight as possible. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length. Do not bond neutral and ground.
- C. SPD circuit breaker and feeder conductors shall be as recommended by the device manufacturer, or #8 AWG copper, whichever is greater. Install in metallic raceway.
- D. Coordinate SPD circuit breaker rating with actual SPD provided.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS, "Surge Arresters, Low-Voltage Surge Protection Devices" Section. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. After installing SPDs, but before electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 3. Complete startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. SPD will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Do not energize or connect electrical equipment to their sources until SPDs are installed and connected.
- B. Do not perform insulation resistance tests of the distribution wiring equipment with the SDP installed. Disconnect before conducting insulation resistance tests, and reconnect immediately after the testing is over.

END OF SECTION 264313

SECTION 265100 - INTERIOR LUMINAIRES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Interior luminaires and accessories.
- B. Drivers.
- C. Lamps and LED Light Engines/Sources.
- D. Luminaire accessories.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 260533 - Conduit.
- C. Section 260519 - Building Wire and Cable.
- D. Section 260534 - Boxes.
- E. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding.
- F. Section 260553 - Electrical Identification.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Devices-Dimensional Requirements.
- B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- C. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code.

1.4 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions and components for each luminaire that is not a standard product of the manufacturer.
- C. Product Data: Provide dimensions, ratings, and performance data.

- D. Submittal information must include IES and Photometric files with the fixture specifications. IES Photometric and LM79 data for the submitted LED fixtures, IES file must be from an NVLAP (National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program) accredited laboratory. Submittal information will also include a referenced location for a current installation of the proposed products where the operational performance of these proposed products can be observed and evaluated by the Owner. Provide photometric calculation for the following:

1. Typical office space.
2. Typical classroom space.
3. Typical meeting room.
4. Typical other spaces.
5. Each interior floor plan with emergency lighting fixtures only.
6. Exterior plan with emergency lighting fixtures only.

1.5 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. Submittals: Submittals for information. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions. Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of Product.

1.6 SUBMITTALS FOR CLOSEOUT

- A. Contract Closeout: Submittals for project closeout. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submit manufacturer's operation and maintenance instructions for each product.

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.8 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Conform to requirements of NFPA 101.
- C. [Lighting systems shall comply with the 2009 North Carolina State Energy Code and North Carolina Senate Bill 668.] [SCO]
- D. Products: Listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

1.9 EXTRA PRODUCTS

- A. Furnish one replacement LED lighting module for each type. Furnish one replacement LED lighting module for each 24 of each module type, but no less than one.
- B. Furnish one replacement LED driver type for each 24 of each type, but no less than one.
- C. Furnish one replacement exit lighting fixture for each 24 of each type, but no less than one.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMINAIRES

- A. Furnish Products as scheduled. Refer to relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections for substitutions and product options.
- B. All lighting fixtures shall be approved by third party testing agencies and NFPA and shall bear their label.
- C. All fixtures shall be listed on one or more of the following websites: LED Lighting Facts website (www.lightingfacts.com), Energy Star website (www.energystar.gov), or the Design Light Consortium website www.designlights.org.
- D. Power supplies/drivers/ballasts, LED arrays, boards or light engines shall be easily field replaceable using common hand tools (e.g., screwdrivers, pliers, etc.) and without uninstalling the luminaire.
- E. All fixtures shall have a stock, or standard finish unless otherwise specified. Fixtures subject to corrosive or damp environments shall have corrosion resistant hardware and finishes.
- F. No visible welding, no plane-protruding screws, latches, springs, hooks, rivets or plastic supports viewed from the occupied (room) side are allowed.
- G. All fixtures shall be installed complete with lamps or LED sources as specified.
- H. Lighting fixture types shall be furnished as required by the Lighting Fixture Schedule as indicated on the drawings. Catalog numbers are provided as a guide to the design and quality of fixture desired. Equivalent designs and equal quality fixtures of other manufacturers listed will be acceptable upon approval of the Architect/Engineer. The Contractor shall verify from the contract drawings the type ceilings or walls the fixture is to be used with and shall provide compatible mounting attachments and trim. Provide all accessories or additional materials required to maintain the ceiling fire rating as required by regulatory authorities.
- I. Luminaires shall be designed to operate at an average operating temperature of 25°C. The operating temperature range shall be 0°C to 25°C.

- J. Interior Area LED Fixtures/Lamps:
 - 1. Kelvin temperature of in the range of 3500k to 4000k unless otherwise indicated in schedule.
 - 2. 75 plus lumens per watt minimum.
 - 3. CRI 85 or greater.
 - 4. 5-year warranty minimum with L70 of 50,000 hours or greater.
 - 5. Modular design for field replacement of parts.
 - 6. Series parallel matrix for prevention of LED string outages (not applicable to exit lights and recessed can fixtures).
 - 7. Tool less access to driver and LED modules.
 - 8. UL certified up to 90F degrees operating temperature.
- K. Manufacturers shall be firms regularly engaged in the manufacture of lighting fixtures of types and ratings required, who have a service organization in the continental US, and whose products have been satisfactorily used in similar service for not less than 5 years. Fixtures shall comply with the provisions of all applicable code and standards. All fixtures shall be tested before shipping.
- L. Warranty: 10 years from the date of Final Acceptance non-prorated on complete fixture including driver including premature failure, discoloration and defects. The contractor shall provide a written warranty against defects in material and workmanship, including replacement for ten years from the date of final acceptance.

2.2 LED SOURCES

LED sources shall be high intensity white, single color or as noted. Provide white LEDs in the color temperature(s) specified. The color temperature in all lamps of the same type shall be consistent and remain so over the life of the lamp. Color consistency between lamps shall conform to ANSI NEMA ANSLG standard C78.377-2008. The contractor shall replace lamps/fixtures exhibiting inconsistent lamp color. Minimum lumen maintenance shall be 70% of rated initial lumen output at 50,000 hours of operation. Measurement of lumen maintenance shall be in accordance with IES LM-80-08. The lamp and/or luminaire manufacturer shall provide a minimum of five year warranty from the date of Final Acceptance against premature failure, discoloration and defects. The color or color temperature of replacement LED lamps shall match those of the same lamp types that remain in operation. The minimum color rendering index of white LEDs shall be 80. Electrical and photometric performance of LED assemblies and luminaires shall conform to IES LM 79-08. LED arrays in the product(s) will be considered defective in material or workmanship if a total of 10% or more of the individual light-emitting diodes in the product(s) fail to illuminate during normal operation after installation.

2.3 LED DRIVERS

- A. Provide high frequency electronic type with secondary voltages matching those required by the led source they operate. Drivers shall operate within a 0°F – 140°F ambient temperature range. Minimum driver specifications:
 - 1. Power factor $\geq 90\%$ (at full luminaire output and across specified voltage range).
 - 2. Driver efficiency (at full load): $\geq 85\%$ for drivers capable of ≥ 50 watts and $\geq 80\%$ for drivers capable of < 50 watts
 - 3. Current crest factor – 1.5 minimum.
 - 4. Total harmonic distortion $< 20\%$ (at full luminaire output and across specified voltage range).
 - 5. Rated life – 50,000 hours.

6. Transient and surge protection: ANSI C62.41-2002 Category A surge protection standards up to and including 2.5 kv for interior fixtures.
7. Sound: Class A not to exceed a measured value of 24dB.
8. Maximum standby power: 1W.
9. For indoor and building mounted fixtures, provide minimum 2-kv surge suppression integral with the driver (5-kv preferred if available).
10. For outdoor fixtures, provide minimum 10.0-kv surge suppression integral with the driver.
11. Thermal management
 - a. The thermal management (of the heat generated by the LEDs) shall be of sufficient capacity to assure proper operation of the luminaire over the expected useful life.
 - b. The LEDs manufacturer's maximum junction temperature for the expected life shall not be exceeded at the average operating ambient temperature.
 - c. The LED manufacturer's maximum junction temperature for the catastrophic failure shall not be exceeded at the maximum operating ambient temperature.
 - d. The driver manufacturer's maximum case temperature shall not be exceeded at the maximum operating temperature. Thermal management shall be passive by design. The use of fans or other mechanical cooling devices shall not be allowed.
12. Flicker: Comply with IESNA standards for flicker and IEEE PAR1789 Recommended Practice, including flicker at when fully powered and when dimmed.
13. EMI/RFI: The luminaire and associated on-board circuitry shall meet Class A emission limits referred in Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Title 47, Subpart B, Section 15 Non-Consumer requirements for EMI/RFI Emissions.
14. Inrush Current: Comply with NEMA 410.

Manufacturers shall have been manufacturing LED drivers for at least ten years with a documentable low failure rate. The contractor shall provide a written warranty against defects in material and workmanship, including replacement for ten years from the date of final acceptance.

2.4 LENSES

Lenses shall be clear virgin acrylic material with uniform 3/16" square based female cone prisms aligned 45° to the length and width of the lens panel. Minimum prism depth shall be 0.080" with a nominal panel thickness of 0.156" and a minimum overall panel thickness of 0.150" to 0.160" inches.

2.8 CONTROLS

- A. Time Switch: Astronomic, two channel, electronic type with 48 hour capacitor or battery reserve, digital display, 30 ampere output contact rating, two, single pole output contacts, voltage compatible with load served, NEMA-1 enclosure.
- B. Photocell: Weatherproof, enclosed, single pole, 1800 VA, 120VAC, twist lock plug-in type with base.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install suspended luminaires using pendants supported from swivel hangers. Provide pendant length required to suspend luminaire at indicated height.
- B. Lighting equipment shall be installed in a manner to be fully compliant with the seismic restraint requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code. Provide mounting devices and hardware, bracing, fittings, etc. as required for seismic restraint. See Specifications Section 260500, Paragraph 1.23 for additional requirements.
- C. Where a recessed or downlight fixture replaces a section or part of an acoustical ceiling tile, or a section or part of a suspended gypsum board ceiling, the fixture shall be supported at two (2) diagonal corners to the steel frame of the building. Supports shall be provided with the same type of wire as used to support the lay-in ceiling track or GWB ceiling system. Attach one end of the wire to one corner of the fixture and the other end to the building's structural system. The lay-in or flange fixture shall then be screwed to the main runners of the lay-in ceiling track or GWB ceiling system at all four (4) corners using sheet metal screws (parabolic type fixtures shall be attached to the ceiling grid with approved clips). The Electrical Contractor shall be responsible for coordination work with the ceiling contractor; however, the ceiling contractor will provide framed openings for reception of lighting fixtures. All recessed fixtures shall be furnished with all necessary mounting accessories.
- D. Locate recessed ceiling luminaires as indicated on reflected ceiling plan.
- E. Install surface mounted luminaires and exit signs plumb and adjust to align with building lines and with each other. Secure to prevent movement.
- F. Exposed Grid Ceilings: Support surface mounted luminaires on grid ceiling directly from building structure. Provide auxiliary members spanning ceiling grid members to support surface mounted luminaires. Fasten surface mounted luminaires to ceiling grid members using bolts or screws.
- G. Install recessed luminaires to permit removal from below.
- H. Install recessed luminaires using accessories and firestopping materials to meet regulatory requirements for fire rating.
- I. Install wall mounted luminaires, emergency lighting units and exit signs at height as indicated on Drawings.
- J. Install accessories furnished with each luminaire.
- K. Connect luminaires, emergency lighting units and exit signs to branch circuit outlets provided under Section 260534 using flexible conduit.
- L. Make wiring connections to branch circuit using building wire with insulation suitable for temperature conditions within luminaire.
- M. Bond products and metal accessories to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.

- N. Install/provide specified lamps/LEDs in each emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and luminaire.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality Assurance: Field inspection, testing and adjusting shall be as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Operate each luminaire after installation and connection. Inspect for proper connection and operation.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Contract Closeout: Adjust installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Aim and adjust luminaires as directed.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Contract Closeout: Clean installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Clean electrical parts to remove conductive and deleterious materials.
- C. Remove dirt and debris from enclosures.
- D. Clean photometric control surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Clean finishes and touch up damage.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Contract Closeout: Demonstrate installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Demonstrate luminaire operation for minimum of two hours.

3.6 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Contract Closeout: Protect installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Relamp luminaires that have failed lamps at Substantial Completion. Replace LED modules in which more than 5% of the LEDs have failed lamps at Final Acceptance of the Work.

END OF SECTION 265100

SECTION 265200 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Section includes emergency exit lighting and emergency egress lighting units, LED emergency drivers, lighting inverters and transfer switching devices.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 260533 - Conduit.
- C. Section 260519 - Building Wire and Cable.
- D. Section 260534 - Boxes.
- E. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding.
- F. Section 260553 - Electrical Identification.

1.3 STANDARDS

- A. UL 924
- B. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code.
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- D. North Carolina State Building Code including Energy Code Volume X.
- E. NEMA - Standards

1.4 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Submittals: Procedures for submittals. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions and components for each luminaire that is not a standard product of the manufacturer.
- C. Product Data: Provide dimensions, ratings, and performance data.

1.5 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. Submittals: Submittals for information. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions. Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of Product.

1.6 SUBMITTALS FOR CLOSEOUT

- A. Contract Closeout: Submittals for project closeout. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Submit manufacturer's operation and maintenance instructions for each product.

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.8 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Conform to requirements of NFPA 101.
- C. Products: Listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated. Products shall also meet or exceed the standards listed in Part 2.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. All lighting fixtures shall be listed as emergency lighting equipment and approved by third party testing agencies and NFPA and shall bear their label.
- B. All fixtures shall have a stock, or standard finish unless otherwise specified.
- C. All fixtures shall be completely self-contained, provided with maintenance free battery, automatic charger and other features. They shall be installed complete with lamps, batteries, etc. which shall be new and unused at time of final inspection of the project for acceptance.

- D. Lighting fixture types shall be furnished as required by the Lighting Fixture Schedule on the contract drawings and as herein specified. Catalog numbers are provided as a guide to the design and quality of fixture desired. Equivalent designs and equal quality fixtures of other manufacturers listed will be acceptable upon approval of the Architect/Engineer. The Contractor shall verify from the contract drawings the type of ceilings or walls the fixture is to be used with and shall provide compatible mounting attachments and trim. Provide all accessories or additional materials required to maintain the ceiling fire rating as required by regulatory authorities.
- E. Emergency lighting fixtures shall be as shown on the lighting fixture schedule on the contract drawings, and as herein specified.
- F. Warranty: The entire unit shall be warranted for three years. The battery must have a additional two more years pro-rated warranty. Warranty shall date from the date of final project acceptance.

2.2 EMERGENCY LIGHTING (EGRESS) UNITS

- A. Product Description: Self-contained LED emergency lighting unit automatically activated when the line voltage drops below 80%.
- B. Battery: Ten year normal life expectancy, 6 or 12 volt, sealed, maintenance-free, lead calcium type, with 1.5 hour minimum capacity at full load. Battery shall be a high temperature type with an operating range of 0° C. to 60° C., contain a resealable pressure vent and sintered positive and negative terminals. A low voltage disconnect switch shall be included if a lead battery is used, to disconnect the battery from the load and prevent damage from a deep discharge during an extended power outage.
- C. Battery Charger: Automatic, solid state, full wave rectification, surge protected, current-limiting, dual-rate type, with filtered output of sufficient capacity to recharge discharged battery to full charge within twelve hours. Provide fused output circuit, low voltage battery disconnect, brownout and short circuit protection. Thermal protection shall sense circuitry temperature and adjust charge current to prevent overheating and charger failure. Thermal compensation shall adjust charger output to provide optimum charge voltage relative to ambient temperature. Regulated charge voltage shall maintain constant charge voltage over a wide range of line voltages. AC lockout circuit shall allow battery connection before AC power is applied and prevent battery damage due to deep discharge.
- D. Lamps: LED. Heads shall rotate for aiming. Maximum LED failure rate shall be 25% within a seven (7) year period; otherwise, if exceeded, manufacturer shall replace the complete unit at no charge to the Owner.
- E. Mounting: Surface wall or recessed ceiling as indicated by the drawings.
- F. Housing: White polycarbonate, with steel backbox/housing or steel with white finish. Wall mount unit with hinged faceplate and adjustable mounting hardware. Ceiling mount unit with T bar hangar kit.
- G. Self-Diagnostics: Electronics shall automatically, or manually upon demand, conduct self test on battery condition (including actual discharge), charger, lamps and internal wiring integrity per NEC and NFPA at prescribed intervals. A pilot light shall indicate the unit is

connect to AC power. Provide test switch and visual indicator(s) of unit operational condition including charger status, ready and service code. Test switch shall simulate operation of the unit upon loss of AC power by energizing lamps from the battery, and also exercise the transfer relay.

- H. Electrical Connection: Conduit connection.
- I. Input Voltage: Dual voltage input (120/277 volts).

2.3 LED EMERGENCY DRIVER

- A. Product Description: Manufacturer-installed UL924 LED emergency battery power supply suitable for installation in LED luminaire wireway. When normal AC power fails, the unit shall immediately drive the LED load at a reduced light output for a minimum of 90 minutes. When AC power is present, the emergency LED driver shall operate in various charging modes to ensure the sealed, maintenance-free, high-temperature nickel-cadmium batteries are fully recharged within 24 hours after a full discharge and remain fully charged until the next loss of AC power.
- B. Battery: Seven to ten year normal life expectancy, 9.6 volt, sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type, with 1.5 hour minimum capacity at 10 watts output. Battery shall be a high temperature type with an operating range of 32° F. to 122° F.
- C. Provide with self-diagnostics module with status indicator light and test switch. Self-diagnostics shall automatically, or manually upon demand, conduct self test on battery condition (including actual discharge), charger, LEDs and internal wiring integrity per NEC and NFPA at prescribed intervals. Status light shall indicate operational condition including charger status, ready and service code. Test switch shall simulate operation of the unit upon loss of AC power by energizing lamps from the battery.
- D. Input Voltage: Dual voltage input (120/277 volts).

2.4 EXIT LIGHTING UNITS

- A. Product Description: Self-contained exit lighting unit automatically activated when the line voltage drops below 80%.
- B. Battery: Ten year normal life expectancy, 6 or 12 volt, sealed, maintenance-free, lead calcium type, with 1.5 hour minimum capacity. Battery shall be a high temperature type with an operating range of 0° C. to 60° C. and contain a resealable pressure vent and sintered positive and negative terminals. A low voltage disconnect switch shall be included if lead battery is used, to disconnect the battery from the load and prevent damage from a deep discharge during an extended power outage.

- C. Battery Charger: Automatic, solid state, surge protected, full wave rectification, current-limiting, dual-rate type, with filtered output of sufficient capacity to recharge discharged battery to full charge within twelve hours. Provide fused output circuit, low voltage battery disconnect, brownout and short circuit protection. Thermal protection shall sense circuitry temperature and adjust charge current to prevent overheating and charger failure. Thermal compensation shall adjust charger output to provide optimum charge voltage relative to ambient temperature. Regulated charge voltage shall maintain constant charge voltage over a wide range of line voltages. AC lockout circuit shall allow battery connection before AC power is applied and prevent battery damage due to deep discharge.
- D. Lamps: LED, discrete or diffuse. Maximum failure rate shall be 25% within a seven year period, otherwise, if exceeded the manufacturer shall replace the entire unit at no cost to the Owner.
- E. Face:
 - 1. Standard Unit: Single or dual face as indicated or required. Translucent plastic face with red letters on white background.
 - 2. Architectural/Edge Lit Unit: Clear transparent plastic panel with red letters on clear or mirrored background.
- F. Directional Arrows: As indicated or universal type for field adjustment.
- G. Mounting: Universal, surface wall, back or end mount, or ceiling, top or pendant mount.
- H. Housing: White polycarbonate for standard unit, metallic enclosure with clear plexiglass signage panel for architectural/edge lit unit.
- I. Self-Diagnostics: Electronics shall automatically, or manually upon demand, conduct self test on battery condition (including actual discharge), charger, lamps and internal wiring integrity per NEC and NFPA at prescribed intervals. Provide test switch and visual indicator(s) of unit operational condition including charger status, ready and service code. Test switch shall simulate operation of the unit upon loss of AC power by energizing lamps from the battery. This simulation shall also exercise the transfer relay.
- J. Electrical Connection: Conduit connection.
- K. Input Voltage: Dual voltage input (120/277 volts).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install suspended exit signs using pendants supported from swivel hangers. Provide pendant length required to suspend sign at indicated height.
- B. Install surface-mounted emergency lighting units and exit signs plumb and adjust to align with building lines and with each other. Secure to prevent movement.
- C. Install wall-mounted emergency lighting units and exit signs at height as indicated.

- D. Install accessories furnished with each emergency lighting unit and exit sign.
- E. Emergency and exit lighting fixtures shall be installed in a manner to be fully compliant with the seismic restraint requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code. Provide mounting devices and hardware, bracing, fittings, etc. as required for seismic restraint. See Specifications Section 260500, Paragraph 1.23 for additional requirements.
- F. Connect emergency lighting units and exit signs to branch circuit outlets provided under this Division as indicated.
- G. Exposed Grid Ceilings: Support surface mounted luminaires on grid ceiling directly from building structure. Provide auxiliary members spanning ceiling grid members to support surface mounted luminaires. Fasten surface mounted luminaires to ceiling grid members using bolts or screws.
- H. Make wiring connections to branch circuit using building wire with insulation suitable for temperature conditions within unit.
- I. Install specified lamps in each emergency lighting unit.
- J. Ground and bond emergency lighting units and exit signs under the provisions of Section 260526.
- K. Locate exit and emergency lighting fixtures as indicated on reflected ceiling plan.
- L. Install recessed luminaires to permit removal from below.
- M. Install recessed luminaires using accessories and firestopping materials to meet regulatory requirements for fire rating.
- N. Install screws to secure recessed grid-supported luminaires in place.
- O. Install accessories furnished with each luminaire.
- P. Paint a 3/8" diameter red dot on each emergency lighting fixture to provide ready identification of emergency fixtures. Exact location shall be coordinated with the Architect/Engineer.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality Assurance: Field inspection, testing and adjusting shall be as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Operate each luminaire after installation and connection. Inspect for proper connection and operation.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Contract Closeout: Adjust installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Aim and adjust emergency lighting fixture heads to illuminate paths of egress.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Contract Closeout: Clean installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Clean electrical parts to remove conductive and deleterious materials.
- C. Remove dirt and debris from enclosures.
- D. Clean photometric control surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Clean finishes and touch up damage.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Contract Closeout: Demonstrate installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. The Contractor shall perform a test on each unit after it is permanently installed and charged for a minimum of 24 hours. Battery shall be tested for 90 minutes, in accordance with NEC 700. If the battery is not user accessible, the test shall be done by measuring the light output using a light meter at a fixed position at the start and end of the 90 minute test. Battery voltage or light output shall be 87.5% minimum of the initial measurement after 90 minutes run time to pass the test. Any unit which fails the test shall be repaired or replaced, and tested again. A copy of the test report shall be presented at final inspection and included in the Owner's Operation and Maintenance Manual. Include starting voltage, ending voltage, and percent voltage drop in the test report. The Architect/Engineer will provide the testing form for contractor use.

3.6 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Contract Closeout: Protect installed work as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Relamp emergency lighting units and exit signs that have failed lamps at Substantial Completion. Replace exit signs in which more than 5% of the LEDs have failed lamps at Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 265200

SECTION 270510 - TELECOMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Equipment and terminal backboards.
- B. Premises wiring raceways and outlets.

1.2 REFERENCES

The State of North Carolina expects and enforces strict adherence to the latest published versions of the following codes and standards:

1. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Final Guidelines (July 1991) – 36 CFR Part 1191
2. Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Single-Mode Fiber Cable Plant – TIA / EIA526 -7 (OFSTP-7)
3. Optical Power Loss Measurements of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plant – TIA / EIA-526 - 14 (OFSTP-14A)
4. Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring Standard – TIA / EIA-568 - B.1
5. Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring Standard – TIA / EIA-568 - B.2
6. Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring Standard – TIA / EIA-568 - B.3
7. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces – TIA / EIA - 569
8. Residential Telecommunications Cabling Standard – TIA / EIA - 570
9. Optical Fiber Cable Color Coding – TIA / EIA - 598
10. Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings – ANSI / TIA / EIA-606
11. Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications – TIA / EIA - 607
12. Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Standard – TIA / EIA -758
13. Detail Specification for 62.5- μ m Core Diameter / 125- μ m Class 1a Multimode Graded Index Optical Waveguide Fibers – TIA / EIA - 492AAAA
14. Generic Requirements for Optical Fiber and Optical Fiber Cable – Bellcore TR-TSY-000020
15. National Electrical Code (NEC) Articles 600, 700 & 800
16. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) NFPA - 71, - 72, - 75, - 780.
17. BICSI - Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (Newest Edition) Building Industry Consulting Service International
18. BICSI - Customer-Owned Outside Plant Design Manual (Newest Edition) Building Industry Consulting Service International
19. Customer –Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Cabling Standard TIA / EIA –758 – 1

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Individual and combination telecommunications/data outlets shall be installed where shown on the contract drawings. Raceways shall be installed as straight as possible and shall contain not more than the equivalent of three quarter bends.

1.4 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Record actual locations and sizes of pathways and outlets.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Telephone Utility: Field verify.
- B. Perform Work in accordance with telephone utility's rules and regulations.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Furnish Products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified and indicated.
- C. Shall conform to Coastal Carolina Community College Telecommunications Department Guidelines.
- D. Shall conform to North Carolina STS-1000 Telecommunications Guidelines, which can be downloaded from the web site https://files.nc.gov/ncdoa/documents/files/STS1000_ITS.pdf/

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLETS

Outlets shall consist of standard, square cornered boxes 4-11/16" wide by 4-11/16" high by 2-1/8" deep, minimum, flush mounted at the height indicated on the contract drawings. Provide a single gang plaster ring for the square cornered boxes 4-11/16" wide by 4-11/16" high by 2-1/8" deep.

2.2 TELECOM WIRE AND CABLE

All telephone, data and fiber cable shall be furnished and installed by the contractor. See Section 271500.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Finish paint termination backboards with durable white enamel under the provisions of Division 9 prior to installation of equipment.
- B. Support raceways and backboards under the provisions of Section 260529.

- C. Install termination backboards plumb, and attach securely to building wall at each corner.
- D. Install #14 gauge steel or approved, 200 lb. nylon cord pull wire in each empty conduit run. The maximum bends between pull points shall be 180 degrees.
- E. The maximum distance between pull boxes shall be 100 feet.

END OF SECTION 270510

SECTION 271500 - DATA COMMUNICATIONS CIRCUITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Section includes termination devices, racks, and premises wiring for telephone and data communication circuits by certified manufacturers and contract installers with certification and testing of all equipment and cabling.

- A. Shall conform to Cape Fear Community College Telecommunications Department Guidelines.
- B. Shall conform to North Carolina STS-1000 Telecommunications Guidelines, which can be downloaded from the web site <https://files.nc.gov/ncdoa/documents/files/STS1000 ITS.pdf> /

1.2 REFERENCES

The State of North Carolina expects and enforces strict adherence to the latest published versions of the following codes and standards:

1. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Final Guidelines (July 1991) – 36 CFR Part 1191
2. Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Single-Mode Fiber Cable Plant – TIA / EIA526 -7 (OFSTP-7)
3. Optical Power Loss Measurements of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plant – TIA / EIA-526 - 14 (OFSTP-14A)
4. Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring Standard – TIA / EIA-568 - B.1
5. Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring Standard – TIA / EIA-568 - B.2
6. Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring Standard – TIA / EIA-568 - B.3
7. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces – TIA / EIA - 569
8. Residential Telecommunications Cabling Standard – TIA / EIA - 570
9. Optical Fiber Cable Color Coding – TIA / EIA - 598
10. Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings – ANSI / TIA / EIA-606
11. Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications – TIA / EIA - 607
12. Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Standard – TIA / EIA -758
13. Detail Specification for 62.5-µm Core Diameter / 125-µm Class 1a Multimode Graded Index Optical Waveguide Fibers – TIA / EIA - 492AAAA
14. Generic Requirements for Optical Fiber and Optical Fiber Cable – Bellcore TR-TSY-000020
15. National Electrical Code (NEC) Articles 600, 700 & 800
16. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) NFPA - 71, - 72, - 75, - 780.
17. BICSI - Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (Newest Edition) Building Industry Consulting Service International
18. BICSI - Customer-Owned Outside Plant Design Manual (Newest Edition) Building Industry Consulting Service International
19. Customer –Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Cabling Standard TIA / EIA –758 –

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Provide, ready for operation, a complete and operational communication network infrastructure system that is a manufacturer certified 250 MHz, Cat 6A system.
- B. The system shall include, but not be limited to, cabling (copper and fiber optic), modules, patch panels, faceplates, connectors, hardware, accessories, connections, and all other material, labor and operations required for a complete system in this building.
- C. Cabling shall be installed in raceways and/or on a cable support structure as shown on the Drawings. Raceways for cabling shall be installed in compliance with Section 260553. Cable support structure shall be as specified hereinafter.
- D. The horizontal wiring shall consist of the wiring from the telecommunication room(s) to the information services outlet. (The horizontal wiring includes the wiring termination components in the telecommunication room(s), the horizontal wiring itself, and the termination components at the outlet).
- E. Backbone cabling shall consist of fiber and copper cables to connect data services as required and shown on the Drawings.
- F. Horizontal Wiring for Data and Telephone: Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, the normal connections requirements to a standard four position telecommunication outlet are two (2) data cables to each outlet. The two data cables shall terminate at the telecommunications room rack designated for data on the manufacturers end-to-end termination Cat 6A hardware.
- G. The system shall be compliant with the Owner's long range strategic development plan to provide for current and future data requirements by a planned end-to-end manufacturer's system, while recognizing the need for future bandwidth and fault tolerance. The proposed system shall utilize a network of fiber optic and unshielded twisted pair (UTP), riser, tie and station cables. Fiber cables shall terminate on Fiber Distribution Centers and/or modular patch panels as shown on the Drawings. Cables and terminations shall be identified at all locations and cables shall terminate in an alphanumeric sequence at all termination locations. The complete system shall be fully standards compliant. Copper and Fiber Optic drops shall be warranted to the link performance as defined by ANSI/TIA-568-C standards. All UTP end-to-end Channel Configurations as defined by ANSI/TIA 568B-1,2,3 shall be provided by a single manufacturer.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Product Data: Submit catalog data for each termination device, cable, rack, etc.
- C. Test Reports: Indicate procedures and results for specified field testing and inspection.
- D. Reference paragraph 1.7 B below, submit copies of all BICSI RCDD certifications together with picture identification and itemized list of technicians and installers.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of relevant sections of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations and sizes of pathways and outlets.
- C. Provide a certificate of completion of the installation with verifications that each copper cable pair has been tested to a minimum of 250 MHz.
- D. Provide a certificate of completion of the installation with verifications that each fiber optic cable has been tested to industry standards.
- E. Provide a Certified Installation Warranty Certificate.
- F. Provide Test results for each cable and outlet.
- G. Provide marked up Drawings showing additions, deletions, and modifications also identifying cable routings.
- H. Provide electronic copies of marked up final Drawings.
- I. Provide wall mounted copies of the final system Drawings in each telecommunications room.

1.6 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum five years documented experience.
- B. Installer: Company specializing in installing products specified in this section with minimum five years documented experience on projects utilizing infrastructure work similar to that required for this project, and with service facilities within 150 miles of project.
 - 1. The Installer shall be an experienced firm regularly engaged in the layout and the installation of cabling infrastructure systems. Documentation shall be provided to show that the Contractor has successfully completed projects of similar size and scope within the previous twelve months.
 - 2. The Installer shall be manufacturer certified and shall have a current valid certification card.
 - 3. The Telecommunication Project Manager shall:
 - a. be certified as BICSI RCDD
 - b. be experienced in this type of project and provide technical support.
 - c. attend monthly progress meetings and additional meetings as scheduled or required.
 - d. In addition to having the appropriate manufacturer certifications, the installing work force shall wear visible identification badges at the project site showing name, current photograph and company name.
- C. Testing Agency: Company member of International Electrical Testing Association and specializing in testing products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

- D. The Manufacturer and Installation Contractor shall also note the requirements of Paragraph 2.1 below.

1.7 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETING

Convene minimum one week prior to commencing Work of this section.

1.8 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- C. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- D. Furnish Products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified and indicated.
- E. Shall conform to CCCC Campus Telecommunications Department Guidelines.
- F. Shall conform to North Carolina STS-1000 Telecommunications Guidelines, which can be downloaded from the web site <http://www.its.state.nc.us/>

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. AMP NETCONNECT CAT 6A AND THE CORNING CABLE SYSTEMS LANscape.: Contractor shall be a registered and certified designer and installer.

Note: The Corning solution requires the installers to be a current EWP.

2.2 DATA RELAY RACK FRAMES

- A. Product Description: Standard 19" equipment and cable management rack assembly, floor mounted, aluminum, and having double sided wide vertical cabling section. Racks by Chatsworth and Middle Atlantic or equal are acceptable. Secure to floor and wall with manufacturer's recommended hardware and accessories, racks shall be connected to the electrical ground system in compliance with ANSI/TIA 607. Horizontal and vertical cable management panels shall be provided installed above and below each data patch panel to provide neat and orderly routing of patch cables. Cable management panels shall be sized to accommodate the maximum number of patch cables for the patch panels.
- B. Data cables shall be terminated on AMP Cat 6A solution, mounted in 7' x 19" aluminum racks. A double sided vertical cable management unit with cover shall separate each rack. Reverse direction patch cords or NORDX solution patch cords shall be used to connect communication equipment.
- C. Each rack shall have one electrical power strip mounted on the rear of one of the vertical organizers. The power strip shall have a minimum of six outlets and shall not be equipped with an on/off switch.
- D. Each rack will also house a minimum of one (1) rack-mounted 20A rated, power strip with

6" stand-offs (black in color) equal to Chatsworth MOD. 66-16620-3MS.

2.3 DATA OUTLET JACKS, PATCH PANELS AND PATCH CABLES

- A. Product Description: ANSI/TIA 568B Cat 6A compliant rack-mounted assembly or terminals and accessory patch cords, with adequate capacity for all active and 25% spare circuits.
- B. PATCH CORDS
1. The provision of Patch cords shall be included in the project and provided by the data contractor for the rack end and the work area outlet(s).
 2. The patch cords shall be provided to the networking communications department.
 3. Installation of the patch cords shall be by CCCC Network Communications when the communications rooms have been accepted by the University and secured.
 4. Work Area Outlet - Patch cords shall be provided for the work area outlet. The patch cord lengths shall be 50% 6 feet, 30% 10 feet, 20% 14 feet. Unless otherwise designated by the Network Communications Department, the quantity for the Work area outlets shall be for all Network communications data outlets throughout the facility.
 5. Data Racks - Patch cords shall be provided for each data cable in the data rack(s) of all communications rooms. At the rack end the patch cords will be 100% 1 foot.
 6. Wireless Access Point - Patch cords shall be provided for each wireless access point. The length shall be a minimum of 5 feet and the quantity is for each wireless access point. The patch cord for the rack end shall be included in the data cable count quantity at the rack.
 7. Patch cords shall be from one supplier and match the end to end solution being installed for the project.
 8. Patch cords shall be submitted for review.
- C. Product Description: 8 pin modular jack (RJ45), Cat 6A compliant and conforming to ANSI/TIA 568 requirements for cable connectors for specific cable types. Wire per ANSI/TIA 568B pinout. Provide single gang plates with four (4) jack locations, configured for two (2) data. Each faceplate shall have designated label strips for the top and bottom at each face plate.
- D. Jacks shall be as specified. All installers must be properly trained and certified by the manufacturer to install jacks according to manufacturer specifications.

Circuit	Jack	Color
Data	Cat 6A	White

Outlet Faceplates shall match those specified in Section 262726 and shall provide for four jacks.

2.4 INTERIOR CABLES

- A. Network Data Cable shall be Cat 6A installed to the strict ANSI/TIA 568B-1,2,3/569 BICSI and NEC guidelines for the installation of Cat 6A cable, blue in color unless otherwise designated or required by environmental standards.
- B. Cat 6 UTP, 4 Pair (High Performance) cables shall extend between station location and terminal consisting of 4 pair, 100 ohm, 24 or 23 AWG solid conductors, and terminating on 8 pin modular jacks provided at each outlet. Cable jacket shall comply with NEC Article 800 for use as a plenum or non-plenum cable. The 4 pair UTP cable shall be UL® and cUL® Listed Type CMP (plenum) or CMR (non-plenum), as required. The high performance Cat 6E UTP cable shall be of the traditional round design with or without flute. The high performance Cat 6 cable shall be specified to 550 MHz and shall meet the guaranteed electrical performance and physical specifications as follows:

High Performance Category 6A cables Guaranteed electrical performance to 550 MHz:

Freq (MHz)	Attn DB/100m	Cat 6A Industry Standard (DB)	Required NEXT (DB)	Cat 6A Industry Standard (DB)	Required PS NEXT (DB)	CAT 6A Industry Standard (DB)	Required ELFEXT (DB)	CAT 6A Industry Standard (DB)	Required PS ELFEXT (DB)	CAT 6A Industry Standard (DB)	Required Return Loss	CAT 6A Industry Standard (DB)
0.772	1.6	≤ 1.8	76.0	≤ 76.0	74.0	≤ 74.0	70.0	≤ 70.0	67.0	≤ 67.0	‡	‡
1	1.8	≤ 2.0	74.3	≤ 74.3	72.3	≤ 72.3	67.8	≤ 67.8	64.8	≤ 64.8	20	20
4	3.6	≤ 3.8	65.3	≤ 65.3	63.3	≤ 63.3	55.7	≤ 55.7	52.7	≤ 52.7	23	23
8	5.1	≤ 5.4	60.8	≤ 60.8	58.8	≤ 58.8	49.7	≤ 49.7	46.7	≤ 46.7	24.5	24.5
10	5.8	≤ 6.0	59.3	≤ 59.3	57.3	≤ 57.3	47.8	≤ 47.8	44.8	≤ 44.8	25	25
16	7.3	≤ 7.6	56.3	≤ 56.3	54.3	≤ 54.3	43.7	≤ 43.7	40.7	≤ 40.7	25	25
20	8.2	≤ 8.5	54.8	≤ 54.8	52.8	≤ 52.8	41.7	≤ 41.7	38.7	≤ 38.7	25	25
25	9.2	≤ 9.6	53.3	≤ 53.3	51.3	≤ 51.3	39.8	≤ 39.8	36.8	≤ 36.8	24	24
31.25	10.4	≤ 10.7	51.9	≤ 51.9	49.9	≤ 49.9	37.9	≤ 37.9	34.9	≤ 34.9	24	24
62.5	15.0	≤ 15.5	47.4	≤ 47.4	45.4	≤ 45.4	31.8	≤ 31.8	28.8	≤ 28.8	22	22
100	19.3	≤ 19.9	44.3	≤ 44.3	42.3	≤ 42.3	27.8	≤ 27.8	24.8	≤ 24.8	20	20
200	28.3	≤ 29.2	39.8	≤ 39.8	37.8	≤ 37.8	21.7	≤ 21.7	18.7	≤ 18.7	18	18
250	32.1	≤ 33.0	38.3	≤ 38.3	36.3	≤ 36.3	19.8	≤ 19.8	16.8	≤ 16.8	17	17
300	35.6	‡	37.2	‡	35.2	‡	18.2	‡	15.2	‡	17	‡
350	38.9	‡	36.2	‡	34.2	‡	16.9	‡	13.9	‡	16	‡
400	42.0	‡	35.3	‡	33.3	‡	15.7	‡	12.7	‡	16	‡
450	45.0	‡	34.5	‡	32.5	‡	14.7	‡	11.7	‡	16	‡
500	47.9	‡	33.8	‡	31.8	‡	13.8	‡	10.8	‡	15	‡
550	50.6	‡	33.2	‡	31.2	‡	12.9	‡	9.9	‡	15	‡

‡ Not Specified

Testing is specified to 550 MHz. Cable manufacturer will have to provide the performance chart for their cable. Existing Systimax cable XL 7 series on campus meets the performance category listed.

2.5 EQUIPMENT ROOM (ER) AND TELECOMMUNICATION ROOM (TR)

- A. The ER/TR(s) for each building shall provide for a transition between the horizontal and backbone pathways, and provide space for telecommunications components including cable terminations (horizontal and backbone), active and passive equipment, cross-connections cabling, and hardware, and any other materials or equipment associated with the building telecommunications, data and technology systems.
- B. The walls of the ER/TR(s) for each building shall be covered in ¾ inch non- fire rated

plywood void free and finished on one side, mounted horizontally 4 inches AFF. The non-fire rated plywood shall be painted, on all 6 sides, with at least two coats of fire resistant white paint. The final paint finish shall be clear of footprints, markings, etc and shall be a smooth finished product.

- C. All ER/TR(s) shall be equipped with a grounding bus bar. A solid copper grounding bus bar, ¼ inch thick by 4 inches high, with compression fittings and stand off brackets with insulators will be required on the Telecommunications backboard. Bus bars will be connected by a backbone of insulated, solid copper. This backbone shall be connected to the main grounding bus bar in the electrical entrance facility that is tied back to the building's grounding system.
- D. Data cables shall be routed into the ER/TR(s) through overhead ladder racking. The ladder racking shall be 18" minimum width. The data cables shall be terminated on the Amp Cat 6a solution; mounted in 7' x 19" aluminum racks. A doubled-sided vertical cable management unit with cover shall separate each rack. Reverse direction patch cords shall be used to connect communications equipment. Cat 6a cross connect is not permitted. Racks and ladder racking shall be properly anchored to the floor and grounded.
- E. No electrical conduits, refrigerant pipes, water pipes or any type of wiring for non-related Network communications devices may be installed thru the overhead ceiling or the flooring of the MDF, IDF or Entrance Facility.
- F. AV cabling shall not use the communications rooms: MDF, IDF, and entrance Facilities as a pathway due to legal and auditing problems. The AV cable for riser pathways shall use an AV dedicated pathway.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. The project manager and crew shall be consistent through out the project. The project manager shall be present when any work is being performed. The project manager shall contact the Owner designated contact at the beginning and end of each day that work is to be performed.
- B. Cable shall be installed and terminated per manufacturer's specifications. The installer will observe the cabling practices described in ANSI/TIA 568-B. Standard industry practices guided by the ANSI/NECA/BICSI568-2001 BICSI TDMM and BICSI installation manual shall be employed for cable installation, handling, grooming, etc. All cabling will be installed in a manner that will protect the cable from damage during installation, facilitate cable management and identification, and provide a neat and groomed appearance.
- C. Install wire and cable in accordance with ANSI/TIA 568B.1,2,3 and ANSI/TIA 569A.
- D. The maximum bends between pull points shall be 180 degrees.
- E. The maximum distance between pull boxes shall be 100 feet.
- F. If a continuous raceway system is not shown on the Drawings, all cabling not shown in

raceway shall be supported with a cable support structure.

1. Cabling shall be installed in straight paths and exit pathways at ninety-degree angles. Diagonal, beeline and or non-supported cabling are unacceptable. Cabling shall be routed as high as possible and above other building facilities in the path with the least obstructions in the ceiling space while maintaining the separation requirements of ANSI/TIA 568B1,2,3, ANSI/TIA 569A and NFPA 70 (NEC). There shall be a minimum distance of 3 inches between the cable and ceiling grid and cable pathways shall be clear of all possible EMF and RFI interference. Specifically cables shall be at least 2 feet away from all fluorescent lights and other potential EMF sources. Any violations of this shall be corrected at the contractor's expense. Cables shall not be run parallel with electrical conduits or strapped to them. The placing of cable ties shall not deform the cables.
 2. The cable support structure shall utilize Cat 6a approved cable supports and be sized to accommodate change. J hook type cable supports shall be securely fastened to the building structure and be spaced at a maximum distance of four (4) feet so that sag between supports does not exceed 12 inches. J hooks shall be sized as follows: two inch J hooks rated for 75 cables and shall be used to support cable paths of 50 or less cables, four inch J hooks rated for 150 cables and shall be used to support cable paths of 51 to 100 cables. All cable paths shall be sized with 20% spare capacity. All attachment hardware shall be approved for the type of installation and maximum load rating of the products to be installed.
- G. All penetrations through walls and floors shall be sleeved. All sleeves shall have permanently attached bushings. Sleeves shall be sized to accept 50% growth. All sleeves shall be fire-stopped using UL® approved methods and shall maintain assembly fire ratings. All sleeves between floors shall be supported with a conduit riser clamp installed per the manufacturer direction and shall be installed tight to the ceiling with enough sleeve to attach the bushing and rise up three inches above the floor on the opposite end.
- H. Existing sleeves and wall penetrations may be used provided no sleeve exceeds a 40 percent fill ratio. If using an existing sleeve, it shall have a permanently attached bushing, the contractor shall protect all existing cables and be responsible for any damage to existing cables. All existing sleeves and penetrations shall be firestopped and meet state and local codes at the completion of the installation.
- I. The horizontal cables shall be bundled in the ladder tray using Velcro cable ties. Plastic ty-wraps are not permitted. All cable shall be installed according to ANSI/TIA 568B-1, 2, 3 /569A standards.
- J. Cross-connect fields: 110 type IDC connecting clips shall be installed for every installed cable pair. Horizontal station cable shall have 12 inches spare cable at the station outlet and 10 feet of spare at each rack. Cat 6a power sum cables and fiber riser cable shall have 10 feet spare at each rack. Outside plant Cat 3 cables shall have 8 feet spare at each protector block. Cat 6a power sum cables from building protector blocks shall have 10 feet spare at protector blocks. Fiber cables terminating into the building shall have a 20-foot service loop at the data rack. For inter-building cable ducts a slack loop of one full circle shall be arranged in each manhole
- K. All cable shall be installed in a complete, neat and orderly fashion. Install cable with sufficient bending radius as not to kink, shear or damage binders. Bend radius shall meet manufacturer=s specifications for horizontal cable, fiber-optic cable, inter- and intra-

building cable and copper inter- and intra- building cable. Cables shall be groomed, such that cables to be terminated on the left side of the patch panels are routed down the left side of the rack, and cables to be terminated on the right side of the patch panels are to be routed down the right side of the rack.

- L. Terminate all data and telephone cables at outlet devices. Terminate data cables on specified rack designated by the manufacturer's end-to-end solution equipment. Terminate telephone cables on specified rack using manufacturer's end-to-end solution for Cat 6a.
- M. Rigid conduit or surface mounted raceway as indicated on the plans and specifications shall be used for all drops, flex hose shall not be used. If conditions DO NOT provide for conduit or surface mounted raceway to be used, the Contractor shall coordinate with the Owner's Connectivity Department for permission to use alternate raceway.
- N. Install pullwire in each empty telephone or data conduit.
- O. Ground and bond pathways, cable shields, racks and equipment under the provisions of ANSI/TIA - 607 - Commercial Building Grounding/Bonding Requirements.
- P. Each end of all Cat 6a cable shall be labeled at approximately 3 to 6 inches from the Network Data jack, CATV, and campus wide systems with a printed cable label. Labeling for the faceplate and block terminations shall be provided by the contractor with consultation from the Owner. All labeling shall comply with the ANSI/TIA-606A standard. The ER/TR labeling nomenclature shall match that of the station outlet (SO) identifier as listed below:
 - 1. Rack- mounted 110-block labeling: Each 110 block position (each 4-pair connector clip) shall be labeled as follows: Standard SO's/ wall phones outlets FVXX- where FVXX is the SO identifier where the Cat 6a cable on that connector clip terminates.
 - 2. Modular patch panel labeling: Each panel shall be labeled. Each modular jack panel position shall be labeled as XXX where XXX matches the SO identifier. The patch panel shall have a label placed on the upper left hand corner of the panel face identifying the panel.
- Q. All labels for the labeling shall be printed using a computer, printer or Brother P-Touch labeler with TZ tape or equivalent. Labels shall not be hand written. Labels shall be different colors as detailed for identification per the 606A standard. The contractor shall meet with the Owner and verify the numbering schemes and label coloring.
- R. The general numbering sequence shall conform to a sequential numbering pattern common to all floors of the facility. All cables shall be numbered sequentially from room to room as closely as possible. The final numbering scheme shall be agreed upon between the selected vendor and the building owner prior to the start of the physical installation.
- S. Station outlet labeling shall follow Patch panel Letter followed by patch number. EX: A1-48, B1-48, C1-48. Patch panel A, port 1; Patch panel B, port 1, etc.
- T. ANSI/TIA 606 Administration standards for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings is incorporated by reference. Compliance shall be maintained. Each cable record shall indicate the cable type by manufacturer and manufacturer's designation and shall document every pair/conductor in the cable. The cable identifier shall be linked to all pathways in which it runs.

- U. Each piece of termination hardware such as a patch panel or wiring block shall have a unique name and label. Termination positions on cross-connect shall be identified by type (the pair /conductor terminated and a user code). For each element in the route, identification labels shall be completed and attached. Labels shall meet the requirements of UL969® Standard for Marking and Labeling Systems. A final report shall record system configuration, unique identifier, fiber labels, pathways and as-built details and as-built drawings. Loss Measurements and OTDR traces shall also be included with the records. Color coding to match UL606® requirements.

Cable numbering shall follow the example:

Example: CABLE D.5.2.013
D=DATA
5=TELECOMMUNICATIONS ROOM NUMBER
2=FLOOR NUMBER
013=13TH CABLE TO BE INSTALLED

- V. All WAPS locations shall be labeled utilizing above methods. All concealed locations shall have a green dot with label. Coordinate green dot and labeling with owner.
- W. All cables shall be installed according to ANSI/TIA 568B-1,2,3 /569A standards. Care shall be taken during the installation to prevent nicks, abrasions, burning and scuffing of the cable. Cables found to be damaged will be replaced at the contractor's expense regardless of whether the cable passes Cat 6a Level III testing standards.

3.2 TESTING

- A. Horizontal Cable Testing:
1. Each equipment telecommunications room patch cord, patch panel, horizontal cable, RJ 45 jack, station patch cord shall be tested end-to-end for compliance with Cat 6a level III parameters as stated in the ANSI/TIA 568 B1, 2, 3/ 569 standards. Only certified Cat 6a cable testing shall be used. The Test equipment used for horizontal Cat 6 cable tests shall be in compliance with the industry standard Cat 6a cable testers level III, and comply with ANSI/TIA test procedures. Each link shall be tested to ANSI/TIA 568-B.
 2. Testing of all copper wiring shall be performed prior to system cutover. 100 percent of the horizontal and riser wiring pairs shall be tested for opens, shorts, polarity reversals, transposition and presence of AC voltage. Data horizontal wiring pairs shall be tested from the information outlet to the TR. Cat 6a cable runs shall be tested for conformance to the specifications of EIA/TIA 568B Annex D.
 3. Testing shall be accomplished using a ANSI/TIA TSB-67 UL® Certified Level II-E test set. Test shall include length, mutual capacitance, characteristic impedance, attenuation, and near-end and far-end cross talk and ELFEXT.
 4. The contractor, at no charge to the Owner, shall bring any pairs not meeting the requirements of the standard into compliance.
 5. Complete, end-to-end test results shall be submitted to the Owner. AMP testing shall follow the same procedure and use the Permanent link test to meet AMP requirements.
 6. All cable pairs must be tested for the following conditions in conjunction with or in addition to all ANSI/TIA 568b Cat 6a testing requirements: Polarity, Reversal of pairs, Wire transpositions, Continuity, Opens, Shorts.
- B. Fiber Optic Testing:

1. Each 62.5 OR 50/125-micron fiber shall be tested patch panel to patch panel at the 850 and 1300 nm wavelength in both directions using a light meter. Each single mode fiber shall be tested patch panel to patch panel at the 1310 and 1550 nm wavelength using a light meter. The maximum total attenuation for any single fiber between patch panels shall not exceed 3.0 dB.
 2. Power meter tests, for building risers, shall be accomplished for length, attenuation, and micro bends, and for each individual fiber. Test results shall be provided for each individual fiber and maintained for inclusion into the documentation package.
 3. Link attenuation does not include any active devices or passive devices other than cable connectors and splices.
 4. A final report shall be compiled that records system configuration, fiber labels, cable routes, and as-built details and as-built drawings.
- C. A Certified Cat 6a cable tester, Level III, shall perform the certification test on all Cat 6a cables and adhere to ANSI/TIA-568B.
- D. All test equipment shall be consistent throughout the installation. All test equipment shall be available for inspection by the Owner at any time. A valid and current calibration certificate traceable to the National Institute of Standards and Technology for any test equipment to be used shall be provided to the Owner.
- E. Provide electronic copies only of the computer generated reports of the test results.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field inspection and testing shall be performed under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Inspect, test and certify all cabling and equipment and terminations as specified and in accordance with ANSI/TIA 568 B.

3.4 MANUFACTURER WARRANTY

- A. Contractor shall provide a minimum Twenty Year cabling Extended Product Warranty and Application Assurance. The warranty shall support any performance claims the manufacturer makes over and above the Cat 6a standards stated herein.
- B. A Warranty Statement shall be provided by the Manufacturer stating the period of the Warranty for all the products specified for the project, the name and address of the authorized manufacturer's agent and also state who shall honor any and all Warranty claims.

- C. Extended Product Warranty shall cover product defects for all passive manufactured channel components. Passive components are defined as those exhibiting no gain or contributing no energy. As from the date of a Registration Certificate the Manufacturer shall Warrant:
1. That the passive products that comprise the registered Channel solution shall be free from manufacturing defects in material or workmanship under normal and proper use;
 2. That all channel approved passive cabling products that comprise the registered Channel solution exceed the specification of ANSI/TIA 568-B and exceed ISO/IEC 11801 standards and shall be equal to or exceed the performance specifications of the associated Communication product data sheet in effect at the time the Registration Certificate is issued;
 3. That the installation shall meet the insertion and return loss, attenuation and near-end cross talk (NEXT) requirements of ANSI/TIA 568-B and the ISO/IEC 11801 standards for cabling links/channel configurations specified in these standards;
 4. That each channel is exclusively comprised of a single manufacturer's solution in accordance with application standards;
 5. This extended Product Warranty is applicable to the channel cabling solution products only on the original site of installation. Under the Extended Product Warranty, Manufacturer shall either repair or replace the defective product itself at Manufacturer's cost and, pay an Authorized Cable Installation Reseller for the cost of labor to repair or replace any such defective product on behalf of the Manufacturer; and
 6. Corning Cable Systems LANscape solutions "landscape extended warranty" a 25-year warranty on complete fiber optic cabling solutions. The telecom contractor shall be an authorized Corning Cabling Systems extended warranty (EWP) installer
- D. Application Assurance shall cover the failure of the channel structured cabling solution to operate the applications, which the Solution was designed to support, as well as additional application(s) defined below. Manufacturer shall warrant that the registered channel structured cabling solution shall be free from failures which prevent operation of the specific applications for which the original channel structured cabling solution was designed. The Application Assurance Program shall also cover the following additional applications:
1. Those identified in the current (at the time of installation) channel structured cabling solution performance specifications; and
 2. In accordance with application standards specifications, any application introduced in the future by recognized standards or user forums that use ANSI/TIA 568-B or ISO/IEC 11801 components and link/channel specifications for cabling.
- E. Other Warranties
1. Additional Warranty: The Contractor shall state any additional Contractor supplied warranty.
 2. Self Install Warranty: The Cat 6a structured cabling manufacturers shall provide the Owner with a Self Install Warranty for all future moves, additions and changes to the end-to-end cabling solution provided for this project.

END OF SECTION 271500

SECTION 283111A - EXISTING FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM SYSTEM EXTENSIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

Installation of new devices, new conductors, conduit and outlets, extensions/reconfiguration of the existing fire alarm system in the renovation area and recertification of the entire system.

- 1.2 This document substantially incorporates all of the relevant criteria contained in the “2020 SCO Fire Alarm Guidelines and Policies” as published by the Department of Administration, State Construction Office.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Division 23 - Heating and Air Conditioning.
- B. Section 260533 - Conduit.
- C. Section 260519 - Building Wire and Cable.
- D. Section 260534 - Boxes.
- E. Section 260580 - Equipment Wiring Systems.
- F. Section 260553 - Electrical Identification.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- B. NFPA 72 - National Fire Alarm Code.
- C. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code.
- D. North Carolina State Building Code.

1.5 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

The existing fire alarm system is a manual and automatic local fire alarm system with connections to a central station and includes a Notifier NFS-320 fire alarm control panel (FACP). The existing fire alarm control unit, auxiliary power supplies and dialer shall be expanded as required to accommodate the addition. Provide documentation verifying the capacity of the existing system and modifications required to accommodate the renovation area. All equipment supplied shall be listed for the purpose for which it is used, and installed in accordance with any instructions included in its listing. It shall also be new, with a full warranty (parts and labor) of at least one year from the date of final acceptance. The Contractor shall furnish all parts, materials, and labor required for a complete and operating system in accordance with all applicable requirements, even if each needed item is not specifically shown or described on the contract drawings or specifications.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections. Please note also the requirements of Paragraph 3.2A below.
- B. Shop Drawings: As a minimum, provide catalog cuts for all components and wiring/cable; control panel modules and configuration; system wiring diagram / floor plan showing each device and wiring connection required; wire types, sizes, numbers of conductors; transient protection devices; detailed battery capacity calculation and a description/sequence of system operation. Verify and coordinate all voltage, relay, contact, etc., requirements with other equipment before submitting shop drawings.
- C. Product Data: Provide electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- D. The installing contractor's technicians shall, hold current (within previous 24 months) certifications issued by the manufacturer. These certifications shall be submitted to the engineer prior to installation showing name, photo identification, date of training and date of certification.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, installation, and commissioning of products.
- F. Approval of samples, cut sheets, shop drawings, and other matter submitted by the Contractor shall not relieve the Contractor's responsibility for full compliance with the specifications, unless the attention of the Architect/Engineer is called to each non-complying feature by letter sent with the submitted matter, and authorization for the specific deviation is received from the Architect/Engineer in writing.

1.7 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Record actual locations of initiating devices, signaling appliances, and end-of-line devices.

1.8 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. Submit under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Operation Data: Operating instructions.
- C. Maintenance Data: Maintenance and repair procedures.

1.9 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience, and with service facilities within 100 miles of Project.

- B. Installer: Company specializing in installing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- C. Qualifications per SCO Guidelines.
 - 1. Installer's Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work and making the final terminations and connections.
 - 2. Minimum of 5 years documented experience installing fire detection and alarm systems similar in size and scope to the project.
 - 3. Only the Installer may make program changes and must be present for the 100% test, Designer's pre-final review and Owner inspections.
 - 4. All connections to the FACP and the system's programming shall be done only by the manufacturer, or by an authorized distributor that stocks a full complement of spare parts for the system.
 - 5. The technicians are required to be trained and individually certified by the manufacturer, for the FACP model/series being installed. This training and certification must have occurred within the most recent 24 months, except that a NICET Level III certification will extend this to 36 months.
 - 6. Copies of the certifications must be part of the Shop Drawing submittal to the Designers, prior to installation. The submittal cannot be approved without this information.

1.10 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70, NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and NC State Building Code.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified and indicated.
- C. Shop drawings must be submitted by the fire alarm contractor complying with the fire alarm plan review requirements policy of the local AHJ. These drawings may not constitute approval and may change after a full review by the local AHJ. A separate permit must be obtained prior to installation.

1.11 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

Furnish service and maintenance of fire alarm system for one year from Date of Substantial Completion.

1.12 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish as required under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Provide six keys of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

All materials utilized shall match existing materials and be fully compatible with the existing system. The Contractor shall furnish all parts, materials, and labor required for a complete and operating system in accordance with all applicable requirements, even if each needed item is not specifically shown or described on the contract drawings or specifications. The Contractor shall test the existing system prior to performing any work on the system and identify all defective components in writing to the Architect/Engineer. If none are identified, the existing equipment and devices will be considered operational and no extras will be considered for defective equipment and devices.

2.2 POWER SUPPLY

The existing FACP power supply and battery(ies) shall be modified or replaced as required to serve the modified system, and shall be adequate to serve existing and new control panel modules (if required), new initiating devices, relays, alarm signaling devices, etc. The battery-operated emergency power supply shall have a minimum capacity for operating system in standby mode for 24 hours followed by alarm mode for 5 minutes. A battery sizing calculation shall be submitted with the shop drawings. The battery manufacturer's battery discharge curve shall be used to determine the expected battery voltage after 24 hours of providing standby power. The calculated Notification Appliance Circuit current draw in the alarm mode shall be used to determine the expected voltage drop at the end of the line (EOL). This calculation shall be based on conductor resistance per manufacturer's data sheet or NEC 2008, Table 8; with due allowance for the voltage drop in the system's power supply and the double length of the circuit conductors. The voltage drop at EOL shall not exceed 14% of the expected battery voltage, after the required standby time plus alarm time. The resultant voltage shall not be less than the minimum listed operating voltage for the appropriate alarm notification appliance. The contractor shall use power outage testing to verify that the NAC circuit is compliant with design. Note if the contractor elects to provide additional remote power supplies, 120 VAC circuits required by the power supplies shall be provided by the contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.

2.3 INITIATING DEVICES

All devices shall match existing.

- A. Manual Station: Semi-Flush mounted, analog/intelligent/addressable type, double action manual station without break-glass rod. Provide manufacturer's standard backbox.
- B. Spot Heat Detector, low temperature (conditioned environments only): analog/intelligent/addressable, fixed temperature type with plug-in base, rated 135° F. (57° C.) and visual indication of detector actuation, suitable for mounting on 4 inch outlet box.
- C. Spot Heat Detector, rate of rise (conditioned environments only): Analog/intelligent/addressable type, combination rate-of-rise and fixed temperature type with plug-in base, rated 135° F. (57° C.), and temperature rate of rise of 15° F. (8.3° C.) and visual indication of detector actuation, suitable for mounting on 4 inch outlet box.
- D. Spot Heat Detector, low and high temperature as noted (unconditioned environments only): Conventional fixed temperature type with plug-in base, rated 135° F. (57° C.) or 190° F. (88° C.) and visual indication of detector actuation, suitable for mounting on 4 inch outlet box. Provide intelligent monitor module for each detector, mounted remote from the detector at 48" AFF.

- E. Ceiling Mounted Smoke Detector: NFPA 72, analog/intelligent/addressable photoelectric, low profile type with separate plug-in base and visual indication of detector actuation, suitable for mounting on 4 inch outlet box.
- F. Duct Mounted Smoke Detectors: NFPA 72, analog/intelligent/addressable photoelectric type with remote mounted key-operated NORMAL-RESET-TEST switch/alarm light, duct sampling tubes extending width of duct, and visual indication of detector actuation, in duct-mounted housing.

2.4 AUXILIARY DEVICES

All devices shall match existing.

- A. Monitor Module. NFPA 72, addressable type with visual indication of module actuation, suitable for mounting in 4 inch outlet box.
- B. Control Module. NFPA 72, addressable type with visual indication of module actuation, suitable for mounting in 4 inch outlet box.
- C. Isolation Module. NFPA 72, with visual indication of module operation, suitable for mounting in 4 inch outlet box.

2.5 ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

All appliances shall match existing.

- A. Aural/Visual Device (horn): NFPA 72, flush type fire alarm electronic audible signal/strobe. Minimum sound rating: 87 dB at 10 feet (3M). Provide integral synchronized, strobe lamp and flasher with clear lens and red lettered "FIRE" on case. Provide strobe output as shown or as required by NFPA 72 and conditions. Install surface mounted devices using the manufacturer's surface mount backbox.
- B. Visual Only Device: NFPA 72, flush type, synchronized, strobe lamp and flasher with clear lens and red lettered "FIRE" on case. Provide strobe output as shown or as required by NFPA 72 and conditions. Install surface mounted devices using the manufacturer's surface mount backbox.
- C. Remote Annunciator: Modify the existing remote annunciator to accommodate the renovation area.

2.6 FIRE ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Fire Alarm Power Branch Circuits: Building wire as specified in Section 260519. Wire shall be 12 AWG minimum, stranded copper THHN/THWN. All junction boxes that are visible or accessible shall be painted red, unless in finished areas. Conduits that penetrate outside walls or ceilings from conditioned space shall be effectively sealed to prevent condensation from infiltrating humid air.
- B. Addressable loop (signaling line) circuits conductors shall match existing.
- C. Indicating Appliance and Door Hold-open Device Circuits: Match existing. Minimum size:

2 C # 14 AWG for indicating appliance and control circuits. Use larger conductors as required by the manufacturer or for voltage drop compensation.

- D. Provide fire alarm circuit conductors with insulation color coded to match existing installed. Color coding shall be maintained throughout the system, without color change in any wire run.

2.7 TERMINAL CABINETS

If additional terminal cabinets are required, they shall match existing, or shall be sheet steel, hinged cover type not less than 10" x 16" x 10" deep. Cabinets shall conform to Specs Section 260534 and shall be labeled in accordance with Specs Section 260553.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install manual station 48 inches above floor to top of device, and audible and visual signal devices 80 inches above floor to bottom of lens, unless required otherwise by local codes or the ADA.
- C. Set visual signal device intensities for compliance with the ADA.
- D. Install all cabling and wiring in metallic conduit.
- E. There shall be NO splices in the system other than at terminal blocks. "Wire nuts" and crimp splices will NOT be permitted. Permanent wire markers shall be used to identify all splices and terminations for each circuit. For splices, use markers or other means to indicate which conductor leads to the FACP. All terminal block screws shall have pressure wire connectors of the self-lifting or box lug type.
- F. Automatic Detector Installation: Conform to NFPA 72.
- G. All isolation modules shall be clearly labeled, readily accessible for convenient inspection, and shown on the as-built drawings.
- H. Addressable interface modules (used for all contact type initiating devices) shall be located in a conditioned environment which does not exceed listing test parameters.
- I. Final programming of the system shall include addressable device descriptions using final actual room names and numbers.
- J. Identification of individual detectors is required by assigning each a unique number on the record drawings, as follows: (Zone#, Addressable Loop #, Device #). This number shall also be permanently mounted adjacent to the detector, or affixed to its base, so as to be readable standing on the floor below without having to remove the smoke detector. Labels shall be clear, laminated, adhesive backed, type with black print, label machine printed and shall be Brother, T&B or Casio. Lettering shall be approx. ½" high.
- K. Smoke detector trouble contacts (if provided) shall be series-wired between the last alarm initiating device and the end-of-line (EOL) resistor/ capacitor.
- L. All air duct/plenum detectors shall have a Remote Alarm Indicator Lamp (RAIL) and a keyed or magnet-operated Alarm Test switch, installed in the nearest corridor or public area and identified by an engraved label affixed to the wall or ceiling. They are not to be subject to alarm verification. These detectors shall also be installed in a manner that provides suitable, convenient access for required periodic cleaning and calibration.

- M. Duct detector sampling tubes shall extend the full width of the duct. Those over 36 inches long shall be provided with far-end support. The preferred method for doing this is to have the tube go through the far side of the duct, with the point of penetration being tightly sealed to prevent air leakage around the tube. This facilitates smoke testing and tube cleaning.
- N. Detection or alarm circuits shall not be included in raceways containing AC power or AC control wiring. Within the FACP, any 120vac control wiring (such as for HVAC shutdown), or other circuits with an externally supplied ac/dc voltage above the nominal 24 vdc system potential, shall be properly separated from other circuits. The enclosure must also have an appropriate warning label to alert service personnel to the potential hazard.
- O. All system components including relays, transient suppressors, terminal strips, etc. shall be securely mounted by mechanical means. Adhesives are not permitted.
- P. Spot type smoke detectors mounted within 12 feet of a walking surface shall have their built-in locking device activated. Detectors for open area use shall have a concealed locking device securing them to their base, to prevent unauthorized removal.
- Q. Unless suitably protected against dust, paint, etc., detectors shall not be installed until the final construction clean-up is completed. Contaminated detectors shall be replaced.
- R. All addressable loop controller circuits shall be Class "A" and shall have a minimum of 20% spare addresses for future use. "T" taps are not permitted. Alarm notification appliance circuits shall be Class B. The load connected to each circuit shall not exceed 80% of the rated module output and the coverage of each circuit shall not exceed three floors. To minimize the impact of a wiring fault on the system, isolation modules shall be provided as follows:
 - 1. After each 20 devices/ control points on any addressable circuit.
 - 2. For each addressable circuit extending outside the building walls.
 - 3. In or immediately adjacent to the FACP, at each end of the addressable loop.
 - 4. For loops covering more than one floor, an isolator shall be installed at terminal cabinets on each floor, with additional isolators on any floor with more than 20 addresses. Each isolator module shall be clearly labeled, readily accessible for convenient inspection (not above lay-in ceilings) and shown on the as-built drawings.
- S. Notification Appliance Circuit booster ("ADA") power supplies, if required, shall be individually monitored for integrity and shall not be located above a ceiling, or in non-conditioned space. Provide spot smoke detectors within 15 feet of any NAC power supply.
- T. Any 24vdc power circuits serving addressable control relays must also be monitored for integrity.
- U. All junction boxes shall be painted red prior to pulling the wire. Those installed in finished areas are permitted to be painted outside to match the finish color.

3.2 PROGRAMMING, TESTING, AND CERTIFICATION

- A. All connections to the FACP, and the system's programming, shall be done only by the manufacturer, or by an authorized distributor that stocks a full compliment of spare parts for the system. The technicians who do this shall be trained and individually certified by the manufacturer, for the FACP model being installed. Copies of their certifications shall be part of the contractor's submittal to the engineer, prior to installation. The submittal cannot be approved without this information.
- B. Upon completion of the installation and its programming, the fire alarm technician shall test every alarm initiating device for proper response and indication, and all alarm notification appliances for effectiveness. Also, in coordination with the other building system contractors, all other system functions shall be verified, including (where applicable) elevator capture and the control of HVAC systems, door locks, pressurization fans, fire or smoke doors/ dampers/ shutters, etc. The Architect/Engineer shall be given advance notice of these tests, to permit them to be witnessed if desired.
- C. **The existing system shall be reprogrammed for the new devices, tested and certified.** The contractor shall submit the following documentation to the Owner, through the Architect/Engineer, prior to the system acceptance inspection:
 - 1. Written verification that this Code-required 100% system test was done.
 - 2. NFPA 72 "Record of Completion" Form. Use only the referenced form, or an identical reprint. No substitutions are acceptable.
 - 3. The System Status and Programming Report shall be generated on the day of the system acceptance inspection.
 - 4. Reacceptance Testing: Test and recertify the existing fire alarm system per NFPA 7214.1 and Annex A 14.4. Provide written test results to the Architect/Engineer.
- D. After completion of the described 100% system test and submission of the above documentation (Items 1, 2, 3 only), the contractor shall request the Architect/Engineer set up a system acceptance inspection. The system must operate for at least two days prior to this inspection

3.3 DOCUMENTATION AND OWNER TRAINING

- A. The contractor shall provide to the Architect/Engineer two bound copies of the following technical information, for transmittal to the Owner:
 - 1. As-built wiring diagram showing all loop numbers and device addresses in the system, plus equipment terminal numbers
 - 2. Manufacturer's detailed maintenance requirements
 - 3. Technical literature on all control equipment, isolation modules, power supplies, alarm/ supervisory/signal initiating devices, alarm notification appliances, relays, etc.
 - 4. The as-built "calculations" sheet.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field inspection and testing shall be performed under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

- B. Test in accordance with NFPA 72, local fire department requirements and provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

3.5 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

- A. Prepare and start systems under provisions of the General and Supplemental General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections.
- B. Include services of a manufacturer-certified technician to supervise installation, adjustments, final connections, and system testing. All connections at the FACP shall be made by the manufacturer's authorized and factory trained representative (rather than by the Electrical Contractor).

END OF SECTION 283111A

SECTION 221313 - FACILITY SANITARY SEWERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. PVC pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Cleanouts.
 - 3. Manholes.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Non-pressure and pressure couplings
 - 3. Expansion joints and deflection fittings.
 - 4. Backwater valves.
 - 5. Cleanouts.
- B. Shop Drawings: For manholes. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames and covers.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings:
 - 1. Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from sewer system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.
 - 2. Show system piping in profile. Draw profiles to horizontal scale of not less than 1 inch equals 50 feet (1:500) and to vertical scale of not less than 1 inch equals 5 feet (1:50). Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and elevations of other utilities crossing system piping.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of pipe and fitting.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Sewerage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Construction Manager's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Gravity Sewer Piping:
 - 1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F679, T-1 wall thickness, PVC gravity sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends and with integral ASTM F477, elastomeric seals for gasketed joints.

2.2 EXPANSION JOINTS AND DEFLECTION FITTINGS

- A. Ductile-Iron, Flexible Expansion Joints:
 - 1. Description: Compound fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110/A21.10 or AWWA C153/A21.53. Include two gasketed ball-joint sections and one or more gasketed sleeve sections, rated for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure and for offset and expansion indicated.
- B. Ductile-Iron Expansion Joints:
 - 1. Description: Three-piece assembly of telescoping sleeve with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110/A21.10 or AWWA C153/A21.53. Include rating for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure and for expansion indicated.

C. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings:

1. Description: Compound coupling fitting with ball joint, flexing section, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110/A21.10 or AWWA C153/A21.53. Include rating for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure and for up to 15 degrees of deflection.
- 2.

2.3 CLEANOUTS

A. Cast-Iron Cleanouts:

1. Description: ASME A112.36.2M, round, gray-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover. Include gray-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug.
2. Top-Loading Classification(s): Light DutyMedium Duty
3. Sewer Pipe Fitting and Riser to Cleanout: ASTM A74, Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.

B. PVC Cleanouts:

1. Description: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details to indicate general location and arrangement of underground sanitary sewer piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for using lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
- D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

- E. When installing pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed, use pipe-jacking process of microtunneling.
- F. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
 - 1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at minimum slope of [1] percent unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Install piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger with restrained joints at tee fittings and at changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place-concrete supports or anchors.
 - 3. Install piping with 36-inch (915-mm) minimum cover.
 - 4. .
 - 5. Install PVC gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D2321 and ASTM F1668.

3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
 - 1. Join PVC gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D2321 and ASTM D3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D3034 for elastomeric-gasket joints.
 - 2. Join dissimilar pipe materials with non pressure-type, flexible or rigid couplings.
- B. Join force-main, pressure piping according to the following:
 - 1. Join ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
 - 2. Join ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
 - 3. Join PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23 for gasketed joints.
 - 4. Join PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D2855.
 - 5. Join dissimilar pipe materials with pressure-type couplings.
- C. Pipe couplings, expansion joints, and deflection fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use nonpressure flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, nonpressure sewer piping unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Unshielded flexible or rigid couplings for pipes of same or slightly different OD.
 - b. Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible or rigid couplings for pipes with different OD.
 - c. Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.
 - 2. Use pressure pipe couplings for force-main joints.

3.4 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts, and use cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
 - 1. Use Light-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or unpaved foot-traffic] areas.
 - 2. Use Medium-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in paved foot-traffic areas.
 - 3. Use Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
 - 4. Use Extra-Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in roads.
- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place-concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches (450 by 450 by 300 mm) deep. Set with tops 1 inch (25 mm) above surrounding grade.
- C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement and roads with tops flush with pavement surface.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect non pressure, gravity-flow drainage piping to building's sanitary building drains specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- B. Connect force-main piping to building's sanitary force mains specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping." Terminate piping where indicated.
- C. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.
 - 1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye fitting plus 6-inch (150-mm) overlap with not less than 6 inches (150 mm) of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa).
 - 2. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 4 to NPS 20 (DN 100 to DN 500). Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches (150 mm) of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa).
 - 3. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 21 (DN 525) or larger, or to underground manholes by cutting opening into existing unit large enough to allow 3 inches (76 mm) of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of connection pipe passing through pipe or structure wall to conform to shape of, and be flush with, inside wall unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe or manhole wall, encase entering connection in 6 inches (150 mm) of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches (300 mm) to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.
 - a. Use concrete that will attain a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.

4. Protect existing piping and manholes to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for underground utility identification devices. Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground manholes.
 1. Use warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
 2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground manholes.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches (600 mm) of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
 1. Submit separate report for each system inspection.
 2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
 - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
 - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
 - c. Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
 - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
 - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
 3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
 4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
 2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
 4. Submit separate report for each test.
 5. Hydrostatic Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and the following:
 - a. Fill sewer piping with water. Test with pressure of at least 10-foot (3-m) head of water, and maintain such pressure without leakage for at least 15 minutes.
 - b. Close openings in system and fill with water.

- c. Purge air and refill with water.
 - d. Disconnect water supply.
 - e. Test and inspect joints for leaks.
- 6. Air Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
 - a. Test plastic gravity sewer piping according to ASTM F1417.
- C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and superfluous material from interior of piping.

END OF SECTION 221313

SECTION 311000 - SITE CLEARING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Protecting existing vegetation to remain.
2. Removing existing vegetation.
3. Clearing and grubbing.
4. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
5. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Subsoil: Soil beneath the level of subgrade; soil beneath the topsoil layers of a naturally occurring soil profile, typified by less than 1 percent organic matter and few soil organisms.
- B. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile. In undisturbed areas, surface soil is typically called "topsoil," but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.
- C. Topsoil: Top layer of the soil profile consisting of existing native surface topsoil or existing in-place surface soil; the zone where plant roots grow.
- D. Topsoil: Top layer of the soil profile consisting of existing native surface topsoil or existing in-place surface soil; the zone where plant roots grow. Its appearance is generally friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects larger than 2 inches in diameter; and free of weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other nonsoil materials.
- E. Plant-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees, groups of trees, shrubs, or other vegetation to be protected during construction and indicated on Drawings.
- F. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction and indicated on Drawings.

- G. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

1.4 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

- A. Except for materials indicated to be stockpiled or otherwise remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Existing Conditions: Documentation of existing trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that establishes preconstruction conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.
 - 1. Use sufficiently detailed photographs or video recordings.
 - 2. Include plans and notations to indicate specific wounds and damage conditions of each tree or other plant designated to remain.
- B. Record Drawings: Identifying and accurately showing locations of capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed trafficways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing site clearing indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.
 - 1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Architect.
- C. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before site clearing.
- D. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control and plant-protection measures are in place.
- E. Soil Stripping, Handling, and Stockpiling: Perform only when the soil is dry or slightly moist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Satisfactory Soil Material: Requirements for satisfactory soil material are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 - 1. Obtain approved borrow soil material off-site when satisfactory soil material is not available on-site.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Verify that trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to remain or to be relocated have been flagged and that protection zones have been identified and enclosed.
- C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
 - 1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

3.2 EXISTING UTILITIES

- A. Owner will arrange for disconnecting and sealing indicated utilities that serve existing structures before site clearing, when requested by Contractor.
 - 1. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before proceeding with site clearing.
- B. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap utilities indicated to be removed or abandoned in place.
 - 1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.
 - 2. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.
- C. Locate, identify, and disconnect utilities indicated to be abandoned in place.
- D. Interrupting Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others, unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
 - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
- E. Excavate for and remove underground utilities indicated to be removed.

3.3 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.
 - 1. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.
 - 2. Grind down stumps and remove roots larger than 3 inches in diameter, obstructions, and debris to a depth of 18 inches below exposed subgrade.
 - 3. Use only hand methods or air spade for grubbing within protection zones.
 - 4. Chip removed tree branches and dispose of off-site.
- B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
 - 1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

3.4 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

- A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.
- B. Strip topsoil to depth of 6 inches in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.
 - 1. Remove subsoil and nonsoil materials from topsoil, including clay lumps, gravel, and other objects larger than 2 inches in diameter; trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.
- C. Stockpile topsoil away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil or other materials. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust and erosion by water.
 - 1. Dispose of surplus topsoil. Surplus topsoil is that which exceeds quantity indicated to be stockpiled or reused.
 - 2. Stockpile surplus topsoil to allow for resspreading deeper topsoil.

3.5 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

- A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and necessary to facilitate new construction.
- B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.
 - 1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut along line of existing pavement to remain before removing adjacent existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.
 - 2. Paint cut ends of steel reinforcement in concrete to remain with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions. Keep paint off surfaces that will remain exposed.

3.6 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Separate recyclable materials produced during site clearing from other nonrecyclable materials. Store or stockpile without intermixing with other materials, and transport them to recycling facilities. Do not interfere with other Project work.

END OF SECTION 311000

SECTION 312000 - EARTH MOVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Excavating and filling for rough grading the Site.
2. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade walks pavements turf and grasses and plants.
3. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
4. Drainage course for concrete slabs-on-grade.
5. Subbase course for concrete walks pavements.
6. Subbase course for asphalt paving.
7. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
8. Excavating and backfilling trenches for utilities and pits for buried utility structures.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for site stripping, grubbing, stripping [and stockpiling] topsoil, and removal of above- and below-grade improvements and utilities.
2. Appendix A – Geotechnical Exploration Report dated August 23, 2024.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.

1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.

B. Base Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.

C. Bedding Course: Aggregate layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.

D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.

E. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.

F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.

1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation

and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.

2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than 10 feet in width and more than 30 feet in length.
3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, will be without additional compensation.

G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.

H. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other fabricated stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.

I. Subbase Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.

J. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.

K. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables as well as underground services within buildings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following manufactured products required:

1. Geotextiles.
2. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.
3. Warning tapes.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

B. Material Test Reports: For each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill as follows:

1. Classification according to ASTM D2487.
2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D698.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Owner's Testing Agency: Testing agency will observe earth moving operations and prepare field report.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before beginning earth-moving operations.
- B. Do not commence earth-moving operations until temporary site fencing and erosion- and sedimentation-control measures specified in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" and Section 311000 "Site Clearing" are in place.
- C. Do not commence earth-moving operations until plant-protection measures are in place.
- D. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
 - 1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
 - 2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
 - 3. Foot traffic.
 - 4. Erection of sheds or structures.
 - 5. Impoundment of water.
 - 6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
 - 7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.
- F. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. Satisfactory Soils: See paragraph 5.1.4 of the Geotechnical Exploration Report.
- C. Subbase Material: See paragraphs 5.5 of the Geotechnical Exploration Report.
- D. Base Course: ABC stone per paragraph 5.5 of the Geotechnical Exploration Report.
- E. Engineered Fill: See paragraph 5.1.4 of the Geotechnical Exploration Report.
- F. Drainage Course: See paragraph 5.3 of the Geotechnical Exploration Report.
- G. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and zero to 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve.

2.2 GEOTEXTILES

- A. Geotextiles: Where required by the Owner's Testing Agency to repair and improve subgrade per paragraph 5.1.2 of the Geotechnical report, provided recommended geotextile materials and install per manufacturer's recommendation.

2.3 CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL

- A. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Self-compacting, flowable concrete material.
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I Type II or Type III.
 - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.
 - 3. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C33/C33M, 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
 - 4. Foaming Agent: ASTM C869/C869M.
 - 5. Water: ASTM C94/C94M.
 - 6. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.
- B. Produce conventional-weight, controlled low-strength material with 140-psi compressive strength when tested according to ASTM C495/C495M.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored as follows:
 - 1. Red: Electric.
 - 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
 - 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
 - 4. Blue: Water systems.
 - 5. Green: Sewer systems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth-moving operations.
- B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth-moving operations.
- C. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.

3.2 DEWATERING

- A. Where required by field conditions, provide dewatering system of sufficient scope, size, and capacity to control hydrostatic pressures and to lower, control, remove, and dispose of ground water and permit excavation and construction to proceed on dry, stable subgrades.
- B. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.
- C. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
 - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.
- D. Dispose of water removed by dewatering in a manner that avoids endangering public health, property, and portions of work under construction or completed. Dispose of water and sediment in a manner that avoids inconvenience to others.

3.3 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include soil materials and obstructions.
 - 1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials, replace with satisfactory soil materials.

3.4 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
 - 1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation unless directed by Owner's Testing Agency. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.
 - 2. Excavation for Underground Tanks, Basins, and Mechanical or Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.
- B. Excavations at Edges of Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:
 - 1. Excavate by hand or with an air spade to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. If excavating by hand, use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.

3.5 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
 - 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Clearance: 12 inches each side of pipe or conduit.
- C. Trench Bottoms:
 - 1. Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.
 - a. For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches in nominal diameter, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
 - b. For pipes and conduit 6 inches or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe or conduit circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
 - c. For flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
 - 2. Excavate trenches 4 inches deeper than bottom of pipe and conduit elevations to allow for bedding course. Hand-excavate deeper for bells of pipe.
- D. Trenches in Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:
 - 1. Hand-excavate to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
 - 2. Do not cut main lateral roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities.

3.7 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

- A. Notify Owner's Testing Agency when excavations have reached required subgrade.

- B. If Owner's Testing Agency determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
- C. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
 - 1. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Owner's Testing Agency, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
- D. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
- E. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Owner's Testing Agency, without additional compensation.

3.8 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi, may be used when approved by Owner's Testing Agency.
 - 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction, pipe, or conduit as directed by Owner's Testing Agency.

3.9 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
 - 1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.10 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
 - 1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
 - 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
 - 3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
 - 4. Removing concrete formwork.
 - 5. Removing trash and debris.
 - 6. Removing temporary shoring, bracing, and sheeting.
 - 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.

- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.11 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- C. Trenches under Footings: Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Trenches under Roadways: Provide 4-inch- thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase course. Concrete is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- E. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while removing shoring and bracing.
- F. Initial Backfill:
 - 1. Soil Backfill: Place and compact initial backfill of satisfactory soil to a height of 12 inches over the pipe or conduit.
 - a. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
 - 2. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of 12 inches over the pipe or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- G. Final Backfill:
 - 1. Soil Backfill: Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.
 - 2. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place final backfill of controlled low-strength material to final subgrade elevation.
- H. Warning Tape: Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.12 SITE PREPARATION

- A. Prepare site per paragraph 5.1 of the Geotechnical Exploration Report.
- B. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.13 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Moisture condition subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
 - 1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
 - 2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

3.14 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers of 8 to 10 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment.
- B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
- C. Compact soil materials per the Geotechnical Exploration Report.

3.15 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
 - 1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
 - 2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Site Rough Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to elevations required to achieve indicated finish elevations, within the following subgrade tolerances:
 - 1. Turf or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
 - 2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch.
 - 3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
- C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

3.16 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES UNDER PAVEMENTS AND WALKS

- A. Place subbase course and base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase course and base course under pavements and walks per the Geotechnical Exploration Report.

3.17 DRAINAGE COURSE UNDER CONCRETE SLABS-ON-GRADE

- A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade per paragraph 5.3 of the Geotechnical Exploration Report.

3.18 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 - 1. Determine prior to placement of fill that site has been prepared in compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Determine that fill material classification and maximum lift thickness comply with requirements.
 - 3. Determine, during placement and compaction, that in-place density of compacted fill complies with requirements.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- D. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect.
- E. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D1556, ASTM D2167, ASTM D2937, and ASTM D6938, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
 - 1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 2000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab but in no case fewer than three tests.
 - 2. Foundation Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for every 100 feet or less of wall length but no fewer than two tests.
 - 3. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for every 150 feet or less of trench length but no fewer than two tests.
- F. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.19 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, standing water, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
 - 1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Owner's Testing Agency; reshape and recompact.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
 - 1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.20 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Transport surplus satisfactory soil to designated storage areas on Owner's property. Stockpile or spread soil as directed by Architect.
 - 1. Remove waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 312000

SECTION 313116 - TERMITE CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Soil treatment.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood preservative treatment by pressure process.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include material descriptions and profiles for termite control products.
 - 2. Include the EPA-Registered Label for termiticide products.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of termite control product.
- C. Soil Treatment Application Report: After application of termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:
 - 1. Date and time of application.
 - 2. Moisture content of soil before application.
 - 3. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
 - 4. Quantity of undiluted termiticide used.
 - 5. Dilutions, methods, volumes used, and rates of application.
 - 6. Areas of application.
 - 7. Water source for application.
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A specialist who is licensed according to regulations of authorities having jurisdiction to apply termite control treatment and products in jurisdiction where Project is located and who employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer to install manufacturer's products.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Soil Treatment:
 - 1. Environmental Limitations: To ensure penetration, do not treat soil that is water saturated or frozen. Do not treat soil while precipitation is occurring. Comply with requirements of the EPA-Registered Label and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Related Work: Coordinate soil treatment application with excavating, filling, grading, and concreting operations. Treat soil under footings, grade beams, and ground-supported slabs before construction.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Soil Treatment Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work consisting of applied soil termiticide treatment will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite activity or damage is discovered during warranty period, re-treat soil and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain termite control products from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 SOIL TREATMENT

- A. Termiticide: EPA-Registered termiticide acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution formulated to prevent termite infestation.
 - 1. Service Life of Treatment: Soil treatment termiticide that is effective for not less than five years against infestation of subterranean termites.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for moisture content of soil per termiticide label, interfaces with earthwork, slab and foundation work, landscaping, utility installation, and other conditions affecting performance of termite control.
- B. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Prepare work areas according to the requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and according to manufacturer's written instructions before beginning application and installation of termite control treatment(s). Remove extraneous sources of wood cellulose and other edible materials, such as wood debris, tree stumps and roots, stakes, formwork, and construction waste wood from soil within and around foundations.
- B. Soil Treatment Preparation: Remove foreign matter and impermeable soil materials that could decrease treatment effectiveness on areas to be treated. Loosen, rake, and level soil to be treated, except previously compacted areas under slabs and footings. Termiticides may be applied before placing compacted fill under slabs if recommended in writing by termiticide manufacturer.
 - 1. Fit filling hose connected to water source at the site with a backflow preventer, according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 APPLYING SOIL TREATMENT

- A. Application: Mix soil treatment termiticide solution to a uniform consistency. Distribute treatment uniformly. Apply treatment at the product's EPA-Registered Label volume and rate for maximum specified concentration of termiticide to the following so that a continuous horizontal and vertical termiticidal barrier or treated zone is established around and under building construction.
 - 1. Slabs-on-Grade and Basement Slabs: Under ground-supported slab construction, including footings, building slabs, and attached slabs as an overall treatment. Treat soil materials before concrete footings and slabs are placed.
 - 2. Foundations: Soil adjacent to and along the entire inside perimeter of foundation walls; along both sides of interior partition walls; around plumbing pipes and electric conduit penetrating the slab; around interior column footers, piers, and chimney bases; and along the entire outside perimeter, from grade to bottom of footing.
 - 3. Masonry: Treat voids.
 - 4. Penetrations: At expansion joints, control joints, and areas where slabs and below-grade walls will be penetrated.
- B. Post warning signs in areas of application.

- C. Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation, grading, landscaping, or other construction activities following application.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Avoid disturbance of treated soil after application. Keep off treated areas until completely dry.
- B. Protect termiticide solution dispersed in treated soils and fills from being diluted by exposure to water spillage or weather until ground-supported slabs are installed. Use waterproof barrier according to EPA-Registered Label instructions.

3.5 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of termite-control-treatment Installer. Include monthly maintenance as required for proper performance according to the product's EPA-Registered Label and manufacturer's written instructions. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
- B. Continuing Maintenance Proposal: Provide from termite-control-treatment Installer to Owner, in the form of a standard yearly (or other period) maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.
 - 1. Include annual inspection for termite activity and effectiveness of termite treatment according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 313116

SECTION 321216 - ASPHALT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
- 2. Hot-mix asphalt overlay.
- 3. Cold milling of existing asphalt pavement.
- 4. Hot-mix asphalt patching.
- 5. Asphalt curbs.
- 6. Asphalt traffic-calming devices.
- 7. Asphalt surface treatments.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for subgrade preparation, fill material, separation geotextiles, unbound-aggregate subbase and base courses, and aggregate pavement shoulders.
- 2. Section 321313 "Concrete Paving" for concrete pavement and for separate concrete curbs, gutters, and driveway aprons.
- 3. Section 321373 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants and fillers at pavement terminations.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.

- 1. Herbicide.
- 2. Paving geotextile.
- 3. Joint sealant.

- B. Hot-Mix Asphalt Designs:

- 1. Certification, by authorities having jurisdiction, of approval of each hot-mix asphalt design proposed for the Work.
- 2. For each hot-mix asphalt design proposed for the Work.

- C. Samples for Verification: For the following product, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:

1. Paving Geotextile: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) minimum.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For paving-mix manufacturer and testing agency.
- B. Material Certificates: Include statement that mixes containing recycled materials will perform equal to mixes produced from all new materials.
 1. Aggregates.
 2. Asphalt binder.
 3. Asphalt cement.
 4. Cutback prime coat.
 5. Emulsified asphalt prime coat.
 6. Tack coat.
 7. Fog seal.
 8. Undersealing asphalt.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A paving-mix manufacturer registered with and approved by authorities having jurisdiction or the DOT of state in which Project is located
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with ASTM D3666 for testing indicated.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of Pender County and any other jurisdictions of for asphalt paving work.
 1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the following conditions are not met:
 1. Prime Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F (15.6 deg C).
 2. Tack Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F (15.6 deg C).
 3. Slurry Coat: Comply with weather limitations in ASTM D3910.
 4. Asphalt Base Course and Binder Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and rising at time of placement.
 5. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F (15.6 deg C) at time of placement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATES

- A. General: Use materials and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations.
- B. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM D692/D692M, sound; angular crushed stone, crushed gravel, or cured, crushed blast-furnace slag.
- C. Fine Aggregate: ASTM D1073 or AASHTO M 29, sharp-edged natural sand or sand prepared from stone, gravel, cured blast-furnace slag, or combinations thereof.
 - 1. For hot-mix asphalt, limit natural sand to a maximum of 20 percent by weight of the total aggregate mass.
- D. Mineral Filler: ASTM D242/D242M or AASHTO M 17, rock or slag dust, hydraulic cement, or other inert material.

2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Asphalt Binder: ASTM D6373 or AASHTO M 320 binder designation PG 58-28
- B. Asphalt Cement: ASTM D3381/D3381M for viscosity-graded material.
- C. Cutback Prime Coat: ASTM D2027/D2027M, medium-curing cutback asphalt, MC-30 or MC-70

~~Consult state or local DOT for recommended asphalt emulsion prime coat for local conditions.~~

~~E.D.~~ Emulsified Asphalt Prime Coat: ASTM D977 or AASHTO M 140 emulsified asphalt, or ASTM D2397/D2397M or AASHTO M 208 cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.

~~F.E.~~ Water: Potable.

~~G.F.~~ Undersealing Asphalt: ASTM D3141/D3141M; pumping consistency.

2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Recycled Materials for Hot-Mix Asphalt Mixes: Reclaimed asphalt pavement; reclaimed, unbound-aggregate base material; and recycled tires asphalt shingles or glass from sources and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations, equal to performance of required hot-mix asphalt paving produced from all new materials.
- B. Sand: ASTM D1073 or AASHTO M 29, Grade No. 2 or No. 3.
- C. Paving Geotextile: AASHTO M 288 paving fabric; nonwoven polypropylene; resistant to chemical attack, rot, and mildew; and specifically designed for paving applications.

- D. Joint Sealant: ASTM D6690, Type II or III, hot-applied, single-component, polymer-modified bituminous sealant.

2.4 MIXES

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense-graded, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes approved by authorities having jurisdiction and complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.
- B. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protection: Provide protective materials, procedures, and worker training to prevent asphalt materials from spilling, coating, or building up on curbs, driveway aprons, manholes, and other surfaces adjacent to the Work.
- B. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
 - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph (5 km/h).
 - 2. Proof-roll with a loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons (13.6 tonnes).
 - 3. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.

3.3 PATCHING

- A. Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches (300 mm) into perimeter of adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- B. Portland Cement Concrete Pavement: Break cracked slabs and roll as required to reseal concrete pieces firmly.
 - 1. Undersealing: Pump hot undersealing asphalt under rocking slab until slab is stabilized or, if necessary, crack slab into pieces and roll to reseal pieces firmly.

2. Remove disintegrated or badly cracked pavement. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending into perimeter of adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- C. Placing Single-Course Patch Material: Fill excavated pavement areas with hot-mix asphalt base mix for full thickness of patch and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surface.

3.4 REPAIRS

- A. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch (25 mm) in existing pavements.
 1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
- B. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing joint filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm)
 1. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
 2. Use emulsified-asphalt slurry to seal cracks and joints less than 1/4 inch (6 mm) wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
 3. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

3.5 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Ensure that prepared subgrade has been proof-rolled and is ready to receive paving. Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces.
- B. Cutback Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of 0.15 to 0.50 gal./sq. yd. (0.7 to 2.3 L/sq. m). Apply enough material to penetrate and seal, but not flood, surface. Allow prime coat to cure.
 1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
 2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.
- C. Emulsified Asphalt Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of 0.10 to 0.30 gal./sq. yd. per inch depth (0.5 to 1.40 L/sq. m per 25 mm depth). Apply enough material to penetrate and seal, but not flood, surface. Allow prime coat to cure.
 1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
 2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.

3.6 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACEMENT

- A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand in areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.
1. Place hot-mix asphalt base course and binder course in number of lifts and thicknesses indicated.
 2. Place hot-mix asphalt surface course in single lift.
 3. Spread mix at a minimum temperature of 250 deg F (121 deg C).
 4. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.
- B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet (3 m) wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.
1. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Overlap mix placement about 1 to 1-1/2 inches (25 to 38 mm) from strip to strip to ensure proper compaction of mix along longitudinal joints.
 2. Complete a section of asphalt base course and binder course before placing asphalt surface course.
- C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

3.7 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions, with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.
1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
 2. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
 3. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).
 4. Construct transverse joints at each point where paver ends a day's work and resumes work at a subsequent time. Construct these joints using either "bulkhead" or "papered" method in accordance with AI MS-22, for both "Ending a Lane" and "Resumption of Paving Operations."
 5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
 6. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

3.8 COMPACTION

- A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.

1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F (85 deg C).
- B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.
- C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
 1. Average Density, Marshall Test Method: 96 percent of reference laboratory density in accordance with ASTM D6927 or AASHTO T 245, but not less than 94 percent or greater than 100 percent.
 2. Average Density, Rice Test Method: 92 percent of reference maximum theoretical density in accordance with ASTM D2041/D2041M, but not less than 90 percent or greater than 96 percent.
- D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
- E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.
- F. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.
- G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
- H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

3.9 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
 1. Base Course and Binder Course: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
 2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), no minus.
- B. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot (3-m) straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
 1. Base Course and Binder Course: 1/4 inch (6 mm)
 2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch (3 mm)
- C. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- D. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined in accordance with ASTM D3549/D3549M.
- E. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.
- F. Asphalt Traffic-Calming Devices: Finished height of traffic-calming devices above pavement will be measured for compliance with tolerances.
- G. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement in accordance with ASTM D979/D979M or AASHTO T 168.
 - 1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared in accordance with ASTM D2041/D2041M, and compacted in accordance with job-mix specifications.
 - 2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples in accordance with ASTM D1188 or ASTM D2726/D2726M.
 - a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. (836 sq. m) or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than three cores taken.
 - b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method in accordance with ASTM D2950/D2950M and coordinated with ASTM D1188 or ASTM D2726/D2726M.
- H. Replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.
- I. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

3.10 WASTE HANDLING

- A. General: Handle asphalt-paving waste in accordance with approved waste management plan required in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

END OF SECTION 321216

SECTION 321313 - CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes concrete paving including the following:
 - 1. Driveways.
 - 2. Parking lots.
 - 3. Curbs and gutters.
 - 4. Walks.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 321373 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants in expansion and contraction joints within concrete paving and in joints between concrete paving and asphalt paving or adjacent construction.
 - 2. Section 321713 "Parking Bumpers."
 - 3. Section 321723 "Pavement Markings."
 - 4. Section 321726 "Tactile Warning Surfacing" for detectable warning tiles

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, and other pozzolans.
- B. W/C Ratio: The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product, ingredient, or admixture requiring color selection.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of product or exposed finish, prepared as Samples of size indicated below:
 - 1. Exposed Aggregate: 10-lb (4.5-kg) Sample of each mix.
- D. Design Mixtures: For each concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified ready-mix concrete manufacturer and testing agency.
- B. Material Certificates: For the following, from manufacturer:
 - 1. Cementitious materials.
 - 2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
 - 3. Fiber reinforcement.
 - 4. Admixtures.
 - 5. Curing compounds.
 - 6. Applied finish materials.
 - 7. Bonding agent or epoxy adhesive.
 - 8. Joint fillers.
- C. Material Test Reports: For each of the following:
 - 1. Aggregates: Include service-record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali-aggregate reactivity.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.
 - 1. Personnel conducting field tests must be qualified as ACI Concrete Field-Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.

1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on concrete paving mixtures.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.
- B. Cold-Weather Concrete Placement: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 and the following:
 - 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C), uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) and not more than 80 deg F (27 deg C) at point of placement.

2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in design mixtures.
- C. Hot-Weather Concrete Placement: Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F (32 deg C) at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated in total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, and smooth exposed surfaces.
1. Use flexible or uniformly curved forms for curves with a radius of 100 feet (30.5 m) or less.
- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and that will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Use the following cementitious materials, of same type, brand, and source throughout Project:
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, gray portland cement Type II.
 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or Class F.
 3. Slag Cement: ASTM C989/C989M, Grade 100 or 120.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C33/C33M, Class 4S <Insert class>, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service-record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar paving applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 3/4 inch (19 mm) nominal.
 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
 3. Aggregate Sizes: 3/4 to 1 inch (19 to 25 mm) nominal.

- C. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.
- D. Chemical Admixtures: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type D.
 - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type F.
 - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type G.
 - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C1017/C1017M, Type II.
- E. Color Pigment: ASTM C979/C979M, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable non fading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
 - 1. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation
- F. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C94/C94M.

2.4 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 3, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) dry or cotton mats.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular, film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.

2.5 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Joint Fillers: ASTM D1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber, ASTM D1752, cork or self-expanding cork or ASTM D8139, semirigid, closed-cell polypropylene foam in preformed strips.
- B. Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, nonglazing, abrasive aggregate of fused aluminum-oxide granules or crushed emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide and not less than 20 percent ferric oxide; unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials.
- C. Bonding Agent: ASTM C1059/C1059M, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- D. Epoxy-Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C881/C881M, two-component epoxy resin capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces; of class suitable for application temperature, of grade complying with requirements, and of the following types:

1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- E. Chemical Surface Retarder: Water-soluble, liquid, set retarder with color dye, for horizontal concrete surface application, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of concrete to a depth of 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm).
- F. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener: Factory-packaged, dry combination of portland cement, graded quartz aggregate, color pigments, and plasticizing admixture. Use color pigments that are finely ground, nonfading mineral oxides interground with cement.
 1. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation
- G. Rock Salt: Sodium chloride crystals, kiln dried, coarse gradation with 100 percent passing 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) sieve and 85 percent retained on a No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve.

2.6 STAMPED DETECTABLE WARNING MATERIALS

- A. Detectable Warning Stamp: Semirigid polyurethane mats with formed underside capable of imprinting detectable warning pattern on plastic concrete; perforated with a vent hole at each dome.
 1. Size of Stamp: One piece, 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm)
- B. Liquid Release Agent: Manufacturer's standard, clear, evaporating formulation designed to facilitate release of stamp mats.

2.7 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M), for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete, and as determined by either laboratory trial mixtures or field experience.
 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete design mixtures for the trial batch method.
 2. When automatic machine placement is used, determine design mixtures and obtain laboratory test results that comply with or exceed requirements.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Use fly ash, pozzolan, slag cement, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent.
 1. Fly Ash or Pozzolan: 25 percent.
 2. Slag Cement: 50 percent.
 3. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan, and Slag Cement: 50 percent, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
- C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
 1. Air Content, 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) Nominal Maximum Aggregate Size: 5-1/2 percent plus or minus 1-1/2 percent.

2. Air Content, 1-inch (25-mm) Nominal Maximum Aggregate Size: 6 percent plus or minus 1-1/2 percent.
 3. Air Content, 3/4-inch (19-mm) Nominal Maximum Aggregate Size: 6 percent plus or minus 1-1/2 percent.
- D. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15percent by weight of cement.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.
- G. Concrete Mixtures: Normal-weight concrete.
1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 3000 psi (20.7 MPa)
 2. Maximum W/C Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45
 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm)).

2.8 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C94/C94M. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C94/C94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
1. For concrete batches of 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
 2. For concrete batches larger than 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m), increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m).
 3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixing time, quantity, and amount of water added.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.

- B. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete paving to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.
 - 1. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction and repeat in perpendicular direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph (5 km/h).
 - 2. Correct subbase with soft spots and areas of pumping or rutting exceeding depth of 1/2 inch (13 mm) according to requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

3.4 JOINTS

- A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edges true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. When joining existing paving, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of paving and at locations where paving operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless paving terminates at isolation joints.
 - 1. otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Provide tie bars at sides of paving strips where indicated.
 - 3. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
 - 1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet (15.25 m) > unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
 - 3. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) or more than 1 inch (25 mm) below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.

4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
 5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
 6. During concrete placement, protect top edge of joint filler with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows, to match jointing of existing adjacent concrete paving:
1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 1/4-inch (6-mm) radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate grooving-tool marks on concrete surfaces.
 - a. Tolerance: Ensure that grooved joints are within 3 inches (75 mm) either way from centers of dowels.
 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
 - a. Tolerance: Ensure that sawed joints are within 3 inches (75 mm) either way from centers of dowels.
 3. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- E. Edging: After initial floating, tool edges of paving, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch (6-mm) radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate edging-tool marks on concrete surfaces.

3.5 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation and items to be embedded or cast-in.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.

- E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.
- F. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- G. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M) by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
- H. Screed paving surface with a straightedge and strike off.
- I. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open-textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.
- J. Curbs and Gutters: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.
- K. Slip-Form Paving: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce paving to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.
 - 1. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of slip-form paving machine during operations.

3.6 FLOAT FINISHING

- A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleedwater sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
 - 1. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft-bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF DETECTABLE WARNINGS

- A. Blockouts: Form blockouts in concrete for installation of detectable paving units specified in Section 321726 "Tactile Warning Surfacing."
 - 1. Tolerance for Opening Size: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), no minus >.
- B. Cast-in-Place Detectable Warning Tiles: Form blockouts in concrete for installation of tiles specified in Section 321726 "Tactile Warning Surfacing." Screed surface of concrete where tiles are to be installed to elevation, so that edges of installed tiles will be flush with surrounding concrete paving. Embed tiles in fresh concrete to comply with Section 321726 "Tactile Warning Surfacing" immediately after screeding concrete surface.

- C. Stamped Detectable Warnings: Install stamped detectable warnings as part of a continuous concrete paving placement and according to stamp-mat manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Before using stamp mats, verify that the vent holes are unobstructed.
 2. Apply liquid release agent to the concrete surface and the stamp mat.
 3. Stamping: While initially finished concrete is plastic accurately align and place stamp mats in sequence. Uniformly load, gently vibrate, and press mats into concrete to produce imprint pattern on concrete surface. Load and tamp mats directly perpendicular to the stamp-mat surface to prevent distortion in shape of domes. Press and tamp until mortar begins to come through all of the vent holes. Gently remove stamp mats.
 4. Trimming: After 24 hours, cut off the tips of mortar formed by the vent holes.
 5. Remove residual release agent according to manufacturer's written instructions, but no fewer than three days after stamping concrete. High-pressure-wash surface and joint patterns, taking care not to damage stamped concrete. Control, collect, and legally dispose of runoff.

3.8 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
- B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
- C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h) before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete but before float finishing.
- D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by curing compound or a combination of these as follows:
1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch (300-mm) lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears occurring during installation or curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.

3.9 PAVING TOLERANCES

A. Comply with tolerances in ACI 117 (ACI 117M) and as follows:

1. Elevation: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch (10 mm), minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
3. Surface: Gap below 10-feet- (3-m-) long; unlevelled straightedge not to exceed 1/2 inch (13 mm).
4. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/2 inch per 12 inches (13 mm per 300 mm) of tie bar.
5. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Dowels: 1 inch (25 mm).
6. Vertical Alignment of Dowels: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/4 inch per 12 inches (6 mm per 300 mm) of dowel.
8. Joint Spacing: 3 inches (75 mm).
9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), no minus.
10. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch (3 mm), no minus.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C172/C172M will be performed according to the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. (76 cu. m) or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
 - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing to be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
2. Slump: ASTM C143/C143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
3. Air Content: ASTM C231/C231M, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C1064/C1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and when it is 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.
5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31/C31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M; test one specimen at seven days and two specimens at 28 days.
 - a. A compressive-strength test to be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.

- C. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa).
- D. Test results to be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests to contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- E. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency will make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
- G. Concrete paving will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- I. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.11 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace concrete paving that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove work in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect.
- B. Drill test cores, where directed by Architect, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory paving areas with portland cement concrete bonded to paving with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete paving from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep paving not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 321313

SECTION 321373 - CONCRETE PAVING JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cold-applied joint sealants.
2. Hot-applied joint sealants.
3. Cold-applied, fuel-resistant joint sealants.
4. Hot-applied, fuel-resistant joint sealants.
5. Joint-sealant backer materials.
6. Primers.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing nontraffic and traffic joints in locations not specified in this Section.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Concrete pavement joint sealants.
2. Joint-sealant backer materials.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors for each type of joint sealant.

C. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each kind and color of joint sealant required.

1. Size: Joint sealants in 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide joints formed between two 6-inch- (150-mm-) long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.

D. Paving-Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:

1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
3. Joint-sealant formulation.
4. Joint-sealant color.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Statements: For Installer.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:

1. Installers: Entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.5 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing: Performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:

1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer
2. When joint substrates are wet.
3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain joint sealants from single manufacturer.

2.2 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backer materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

2.3 COLD-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Single Component, Pourable, Urethane, Elastomeric Joint Sealant: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T.
- B. Multicomponent, Pourable, Urethane, Elastomeric Joint Sealant: ASTM C920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T.

2.4 HOT-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Hot-Applied, Single-Component Joint Sealant, Type I: ASTM D6690.

2.5 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS

- A. Joint-Sealant Backer Materials: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Round Backer Rods for Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D5249, Type 1, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
- C. Round Backer Rods for Cold-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D5249, Type 3, of diameter and density required to control joint-sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
- D. Backer Strips for Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D5249; Type 2; of thickness and width required to control joint-sealant depth, prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant, and fill remainder of joint opening under sealant.

2.6 PRIMERS

- A. Primers: Product recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Before installing joint sealants, clean out joints immediately to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience.

Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Joint-Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions.
- C. Install joint-sealant backers to support joint sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of joint-sealant backer materials.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear joint-sealant backer materials.
 - 3. Remove absorbent joint-sealant backer materials that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install joint sealants immediately following backer material installation, using proven techniques that comply with the following:
 - 1. Place joint sealants so they fully contact joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- E. Tooling of Nonsag Joint Sealants: Immediately after joint-sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants in accordance with the following requirements to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint:
 - 1. Remove excess joint sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
- F. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess joint sealant as the Work progresses, by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturers.
- B. Protect joint sealants, during and after curing period, from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately and

replace with joint sealant so installations in repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

3.5 PAVING-JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

A. Joints within concrete paving

1. Joint Location:
 - a. Expansion and isolation joints in concrete paving.
 - b. Contraction joints in concrete paving.
 - c. Other joints as indicated.
2. Joint Sealant: Single component, pourable, urethane, elastomeric joint sealant]
[Multicomponent, pourable, urethane, elastomeric joint sealant].
3. Joint-Sealant Color: Manufacturer's standard

B. Joints within concrete paving and between concrete and asphalt paving:

1. Joint Location:
 - a. Joints between concrete and asphalt paving.
 - b. Joints between concrete curbs and asphalt paving.
 - c. Other joints as indicated.
2. Joint Sealant: Hot-applied, single-component joint sealant
3. Joint-Sealant Color: Manufacturer's standard

END OF SECTION 321373

SECTION 321713 - PARKING BUMPERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Precast concrete wheel stops.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Precast concrete wheel stops.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish requiring color selection.
- C. Samples for Verification: For wheel stops, 6 inches (150 mm) long, showing color and cross section; with mounting hardware.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PARKING BUMPERS

- A. Precast Concrete Wheel Stops: Precast, steel-reinforced, air-entrained concrete; 4000-psi (27.6-MPa) minimum compressive strength; manufacturer's standard height and width by 72 inches (1800 mm) long. Provide chamfered corners and a minimum of two factory-formed or -drilled vertical holes through wheel stop for anchoring to substrate.
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain wheel stops from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Surface Appearance: Smooth, free of pockets, sand streaks, honeycombs, and other obvious defects. Corners shall be uniform, straight, and sharp.
 - 3. Mounting Hardware: Galvanized-steel hardware as standard with wheel-stop manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that pavement is in suitable condition to begin installation in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wheel stops in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install wheel stops in bed of adhesive before anchoring to substrate.
- C. Securely anchor wheel stops to substrate with hardware in each preformed vertical hole in wheel stop as recommended in writing by manufacturer. Recess head of hardware beneath top of wheel stop.

END OF SECTION 321713

SECTION 321723 - PAVEMENT MARKINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Painted markings applied to asphalt paving.
 - 2. Painted markings applied to concrete surfaces.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" for painting exterior concrete surfaces other than pavement markings.
 - 2. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for painting interior concrete surfaces other than pavement markings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.

- 1. Pavement-marking paint, acrylic.

- B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Indicate pavement markings, colors, lane separations, defined parking spaces, and dimensions to adjacent work.
 - 2. Indicate, with international symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.

- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified; on rigid backing, 8 inches (200 mm) square.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of Surf City for pavement-marking work.

- 1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for alkyd materials and not exceeding 95 deg F (35 deg C).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain pavement-marking paints from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design"

2.3 PAVEMENT-MARKING PAINT

- A. Pavement-Marking Paint, Acrylic: Acrylic, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952F, Type II, with drying time of less than 45 minutes.
 - 1. Color: As indicated

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that pavement-marking substrate is dry and in suitable condition to begin pavement marking in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Proceed with pavement marking only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow asphalt paving or concrete surfaces to age for a minimum of 30days before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.

- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils (0.4 mm)
 - 1. Apply graphic symbols and lettering with paint-resistant, die-cut stencils, firmly secured to asphalt paving or concrete surface. Mask an extended area beyond edges of each stencil to prevent paint application beyond stencil. Apply paint so that it cannot run beneath stencil.

3.3 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect pavement markings from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- B. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 321723

SECTION 321726 - TACTILE WARNING SURFACING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Surface-applied detectable warning tiles.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 321313 "Concrete Paving" for concrete walkways serving as substrates for tactile warning surfacing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish requiring color selection.

- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of tactile warning surface, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated, showing edge condition, truncated-dome pattern, texture, color, and cross section; with fasteners and anchors.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For tactile warning surfacing, to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Protection: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen subgrade or setting beds. Remove and replace unit paver work damaged by frost or freezing.

- B. Weather Limitations for Adhesive Application:

1. Apply adhesive only when ambient temperature is above 50 deg F (10 deg C) and when temperature has not been below 35 deg F (2 deg C) for 12 hours immediately before application. Do not apply when substrate is wet or contains excess moisture.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of tactile warning surfaces that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering and wear.
 - b. Separation or delamination of materials and components.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TACTILE WARNING SURFACING, GENERAL

- A. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities for tactile warning surfaces.
 1. For tactile warning surfaces composed of multiple units, provide units that when installed provide consistent side-to-side and end-to-end dome spacing that complies with requirements.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of tactile warning surfacing, joint material, setting material, anchor, and fastener from single source with resources to provide materials and products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 DETECTABLE WARNING TILES

- A. Surface-Applied Detectable Warning Tiles: Accessible truncated-dome detectable warning concrete tiles configured for surface application on existing concrete walkway surfaces, with slip-resistant surface treatment on domes, field of tile, and beveled outside edges.
 1. Material: [Cast-fiber-reinforced polymer concrete tile]
 2. Color: Red brick.
 3. Shapes and Sizes:
 - a. Rectangular panel, 24 by 60 inches (610 by 1524 mm)
 4. Dome Spacing and Configuration: Manufacturer's standard compliant spacing manufacturer's standard pattern.
 5. Mounting: Adhered and fastened to existing concrete walkway.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of tactile warning surfaces, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
 - 1. Furnish Type 316 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use.
 - 2. Fastener Heads: For nonstructural connections, use flathead or oval countersunk screws and bolts with tamper-resistant heads, colored to match tile.
- B. Adhesive: As recommended by manufacturer for adhering tactile warning surfacing unit to pavement.
- C. Sealant: As recommended by manufacturer for sealing perimeter of tactile warning surfacing unit.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that pavement is in suitable condition to begin installation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Verify that installation of tactile warning surfacing will comply with accessibility requirements upon completion.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF TACTILE WARNING SURFACING

- A. General: Prepare substrate and install tactile warning surfacing according to manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Place tactile warning surfacing units in dimensions and orientation indicated. Comply with location requirements of AASHTO MP 12.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF DETECTABLE WARNING TILES

- A. Surface-Applied Detectable Warning Tiles:
 - 1. Lay out detectable warning tiles as indicated and mark concrete pavement.
 - 2. Prepare existing paving surface by grinding and cleaning as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. Apply adhesive to back of tiles in amounts and pattern recommended by manufacturer, and set tiles in place. Firmly seat tiles in adhesive bed, eliminating air pockets and establishing full adhesion to pavement. If necessary, temporarily apply weight to tiles to ensure full contact with concrete.
 - 4. Install anchor devices through face of tiles and into pavement using anchors located as recommended by manufacturer. Set heads of anchors flush with top surface of mat.

5. Mask perimeter of tiles and adjacent concrete, and apply sealant in continuous bead around perimeter of tile installation.
6. Remove masking, adhesive, excess sealant, and soil from exposed surfaces of detectable warning tiles and surrounding concrete pavement using cleaning agents recommended in writing by manufacturer.
7. Protect installed tiles from traffic until adhesive has set.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace tactile warning surfacing that is broken or damaged or does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect. Replace using tactile warning surfacing installation methods acceptable to Architect.
- B. Protect tactile warning surfacing from damage and maintain free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material.

END OF SECTION 321726

SECTION 329200 - TURF AND GRASSES

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Seeding.
- 2. Sprigging.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 329300 "Plants" for trees, shrubs, ground covers, and other plants as well as border edgings and mow strips.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.
- B. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. Pesticides include insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. They also include substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant.
- C. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. Pests include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.
- D. Planting Soil: Existing, on-site soil; imported soil; or manufactured soil that has been modified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth.
- E. Subgrade: The surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or the top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For landscape Installer.
- B. Certification of Grass Seed: From seed vendor for each grass-seed monostand or mixture, stating the botanical and common name, percentage by weight of each species and variety, and percentage of purity, germination, and weed seed. Include the year of production and date of packaging.

- C. Certification of Grass Sprigs: From sprig vendor for each grass-seed monostand or mixture, stating the botanical and common name, percentage by weight of each species and variety, and percentage of purity, germination, and weed seed. Include the year of production and date of packaging.
- D. Product Certificates: For fertilizers, from manufacturer.
- E. Pesticides and Herbicides: Product label and manufacturer's application instructions specific to Project.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: Recommended procedures to be established by Owner for maintenance of turf during a calendar year. Submit before expiration of required maintenance periods.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified landscape installer whose work has resulted in successful sports field establishment.
 - 1. Professional Membership: Installer shall be a member in good standing of either the National Association of Landscape Professionals or AmericanHort.
 - 2. Experience: Three years' experience in turf installation in addition to requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."
 - 3. Installer's Field Supervision: Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on Project site when work is in progress.
 - 4. Personnel Certifications: Installer's field supervisor shall have certification in one of the following categories from the National Association of Landscape Professionals:
 - a. Landscape Industry Certified Technician - Exterior.
 - b. Landscape Industry Certified Lawn Care Manager.
 - c. Landscape Industry Certified Lawn Care Technician.
 - 5. Pesticide Applicator: State licensed, commercial.
- B. Soil-Testing Laboratory Qualifications: An independent laboratory or university laboratory, recognized by the State Department of Agriculture, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated and that specializes in types of tests to be performed.
- C. Soil Analysis: For each unamended soil type, furnish soil analysis and a written report by a qualified soil-testing laboratory stating percentages of organic matter; gradation of sand, silt, and clay content; cation exchange capacity; deleterious material; pH; and mineral and plant-nutrient content of the soil.
 - 1. Testing methods and written recommendations shall comply with USDA's Handbook No. 60.
 - 2. The soil-testing laboratory shall oversee soil sampling, with depth, location, and number of samples to be taken per instructions from Landscape Architect. A minimum of three

representative samples shall be taken from varied locations for each soil to be used or amended for planting purposes.

3. Report suitability of tested soil for turf growth.
 - a. Based on the test results, state recommendations for soil treatments and soil amendments to be incorporated. State recommendations in weight per 1000 sq. ft. or volume per cu. yd. for nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and soil amendments to be added to produce satisfactory planting soil suitable for healthy, viable plants.
 - b. Report presence of problem salts, minerals, or heavy metals, including aluminum, arsenic, barium, cadmium, chromium, cobalt, lead, lithium, and vanadium. If such problem materials are present, provide additional recommendations for corrective action.

D. Pre-installation Conference: To Be Announced.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Seed and Other Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of compliance with state and Federal laws, as applicable.
- B. Bulk Materials:
 1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
 2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials; discharge of soil-bearing water runoff; and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
 3. Accompany each delivery of bulk materials with appropriate certificates.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Planting Restrictions: Plant during one of the following periods. Coordinate planting periods with initial maintenance periods to provide required maintenance from date of planting.
 1. Timing: From March, when danger of a heavy freeze is past, until August.
- B. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SEED

- A. TEMPORARY STABILIZATION SEED

1. Grass Seed: Mix no. 5 (annual ryegrass) in accordance with Section 6.10 of the North Carolina Erosion Field Manual
2. Seed Species: Annual Ryegrass. Seed of grass species as follows, with not less than 95 percent germination, not less than 85 percent pure seed, and not more than 0.5 percent weed seed:
 - a. All areas: Annual Ryegrass (*Lolium temulentum*).
 - b. Apply at 125#/acre.
 - c. Planting depth, 0.5 inches.

B. PERMANENT GRASS SEED

1. Apply mix No. 7 in accordance with Section 6.11 of the North Carolina Erosion Field Manual
 - a. All areas: Mix No. 7
 - b. Apply at 150 #/acre.

2.2 SPRIGS

- A. Sod Sprigs: Healthy living stems, rhizomes, or stolons with a minimum of two nodes and attached roots free of soil, of the following turfgrass species:
1. Turfgrass Species, Warm-Season Grass: Bermudagrass

2.3 FERTILIZERS

- A. Bonemeal: Commercial, raw or steamed, finely ground; a minimum of 4 percent nitrogen and 20 percent phosphoric acid.
- B. Superphosphate: Commercial, phosphate mixture, soluble; a minimum of 20 percent available phosphoric acid.
- C. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium.
- D. Slow-Release Fertilizer: Granular or pelleted fertilizer consisting of 50 percent water-insoluble nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the following composition:
1. Composition: 20 percent nitrogen, 10 percent phosphorous, and 10 percent potassium, by weight.
 2. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing laboratory.
 3. For lawns, provide fertilizer with not less than 4% phosphoric acid and not less than 2% potassium and the percentage of nitrogen required to provide not less than 1 lb. of actual nitrogen per 1000 sq. ft. of lawn area. Provide nitrogen in a form that will be available to the lawn during the initial period of growth.

2.4 PLANTING SOILS

A. TOPSOIL

1. Topsoil shall be from off-site sources. It shall be without admixture of subsoil or slag and shall be free of stones, lumps, plants or their roots, sticks and extraneous matter, and shall not be moved, placed or used while in a frozen or muddy condition.
2. Topsoil from off-site sources shall have an acidity range of pH 5.0 to 7.0 and shall contain not less than 5% organic matter as determined by the "Walkley-Black Method" (Colorimetric version). Sufficient limestone shall be added to topsoil used to bring it to a range of pH 6.0 to pH 6.5.
3. Soil sample tests will be ordered by the contractor to be reviewed by the Landscape Architect and shall be made by a state or commercial laboratory using methods approved by the Associates of Official Agricultural chemists or the State Agricultural Experiment Station.
4. Such analysis will be paid for by the Contractor. Moving and placing of topsoil may be made after approval of the analysis by the Landscape Architect.
5. If approved, natural topsoil not having the hydrogen-ion value specified above may be amended by the contractor, at his own expense, to bring it within the specified limits. Topsoil shall meet the following mechanical analysis:

	<u>Passing %</u>	<u>Retained %</u>
1" Screen	100%	0%
1/2" Screen	97-100%	0-3%
No. 100 Mesh Sieve	60-40%	40-60%

There shall be a minimum of 4" of topsoil (after settlement) in all plant beds, pit plantings, ground cover areas, and lawns or as called for on the drawings whichever is greater.

B. LIGHT WEIGHT ON-STRUCTURE PLANTING SOIL (NOT USED)

2.5 MULCHES

- A. Straw Mulch: Provide air-dry, clean, mildew- and seed-free, salt hay or threshed straw of wheat, rye, oats, or barley.
- B. Hardwood Bark Mulch (Shredded).
 1. Shredded Hardwood Bark Mulch made of various hardwoods, mostly Oak, is ground (hammer milled) through a screen to provide a shredded, fibrous material. This is coarse mulch with large pieces down to fines. The pH shall range between 6 and 7.
- C. Compost Mulch: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 1-inch sieve; soluble salt content 2-5 percent; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:
 1. Organic Matter Content 50-60 percent of dry weight.

- D. Nonasphaltic Tackifier: Colloidal tackifier recommended by fiber-mulch manufacturer for slurry application; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors.

2.6 PESTICIDES

- A. General: Pesticide, registered and approved by EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Pre-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling the germination or growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.
- C. Post-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.

2.7 EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS

- A. Erosion-Control Blankets: Biodegradable wood excelsior, straw, or coconut-fiber mat enclosed in a photodegradable plastic mesh. Include manufacturer's recommended steel wire staples.
- B. Erosion-Control Fiber Mesh: Biodegradable burlap or spun-coir mesh, a minimum of 0.92 lb/sq. yd. with 50 to 65 percent open area. Include manufacturer's recommended steel wire staples,
- C. Erosion-Control Mats: Cellular, non-biodegradable slope-stabilization mats designed to isolate and contain small areas of soil over steeply sloped surface,. Include manufacturer's recommended anchorage system for slope conditions.

2.8 SOIL AMENDMENTS:

- A. Soil amendments are not to be made without review and authorization by the Landscape Architect.
- B. Lime: Natural limestone containing not less than 85% of total carbonates, ground so that not less than 90% passes a 10-mesh sieve and not less than 50% passes a 100-mesh sieve.
- C. Herbicide: Apply a pre-emergent herbicide to the installed topsoil. Apply a post-emergent herbicide when weed infestation exceeds 5% of any planted grass area. Reapply post-emergent herbicide application until weeds are eradicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to be planted for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.
 - 2. Do not mix or place soils and soil amendments in frozen, wet, or muddy conditions.
 - 3. Suspend soil spreading, grading, and tilling operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.
 - 4. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable and which is too dusty.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by Architect and replace with new planting soil.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities, trees, shrubs, and plantings from damage caused by planting operations.
 - 1. Protect adjacent and adjoining areas from hydroseeding and hydro mulching overspray.
 - 2. Protect grade stakes set by others until directed to remove them.
- B. Install erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

3.3 TURF AREA PREPARATION

- A. Limit turf subgrade preparation to areas to be planted.
- B. Newly Graded Subgrades: Loosen subgrade to a minimum depth of 6 inches. Remove stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
 - 1. Thoroughly blend planting soil off-site before spreading.
 - a. Delay mixing fertilizer with planting soil if planting will not proceed within a few days.
 - b. Mix lime with dry soil before mixing fertilizer.

2. Spread planting soil to a depth of 6 inches but not less than required to meet finish grades after light rolling and natural settlement. Do not spread if planting soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.
 - a. Spread approximately 1/2 the thickness of planting soil over loosened subgrade. Mix thoroughly into top 4 inches of subgrade. Spread remainder of planting soil.
- C. Finish Grading: Grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Grade to within plus or minus 1/2 inch of finish elevation. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades. Limit finish grading to areas that can be planted in the immediate future.

3.4 SEEDING

- A. Sow seed with spreader or seeding machine. Do not broadcast or drop seed when wind velocity exceeds 5 mph. Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in two directions at right angles to each other.
 1. Do not use wet seed or seed that is moldy or otherwise damaged.
 2. Do not seed against existing trees. Limit extent of seed to outside edge of planting saucer.
- B. Sow seed at a total rate of as noted on plans.
- C. Rake seed lightly into top 1/8 inch of soil, roll lightly, and water with fine spray.
- D. Protect seeded areas with slopes exceeding 1:4 with erosion-control blankets and 1:6 with erosion-control fiber mesh installed and stapled according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Protect seeded areas with slopes not exceeding 1:6 by spreading straw mulch. Spread uniformly at a minimum rate of 2 tons/acre to form a continuous blanket 1-1/2 inches in loose thickness over seeded areas. Spread by hand, blower, or other suitable equipment.
- F. Protect seeded areas from hot, dry weather or drying winds as needed by applying peat mulch within 24 hours after completing seeding operations. Soak areas, scatter mulch uniformly to a thickness of 3/16 inch, and roll surface smooth.

3.5 SPRIGGING

- A. Plant freshly shredded sod sprigs in furrows 1-1/2 to 2 inches deep. Place individual sprigs with roots and portions of stem in moistened soil, 6 inches apart in rows 12 inches apart, and fill furrows without covering growing tips. Lightly roll and firm soil around sprigs after planting.
- B. Broadcast sprigs uniformly over prepared surface at a rate of 10 cu. ft./1000 sq. ft. and mechanically force sprigs into lightly moistened soil.
 1. Spread a 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick layer of planting soil on sprigs.
 2. Lightly roll and firm soil around sprigs after planting.

3. Water sprigs immediately after planting and keep moist by frequent watering until well rooted.

3.6 TURF MAINTENANCE

- A. General: Maintain and establish turf by watering, fertilizing, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable turf. Roll, regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas and remulch to produce a uniformly smooth turf. Provide materials and installation the same as those used in the original installation.
 1. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes.
 2. In areas where mulch has been disturbed by wind or maintenance operations, add new mulch and anchor as required to prevent displacement.
 3. Apply treatments as required to keep turf and soil free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated pest management practices whenever possible to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards.
- B. Watering: Install and maintain temporary piping, hoses, and turf-watering equipment to convey water from sources and to keep turf uniformly moist to a depth of 4 inches (100 mm).
 1. Schedule watering to prevent wilting, puddling, erosion, and displacement of seed or mulch. Lay out temporary watering system to avoid walking over muddy or newly planted areas.
 2. Water turf with fine spray at a minimum rate of 1 inch per week unless rainfall precipitation is adequate.
- C. Mow turf as soon as top growth is tall enough to cut. Repeat mowing to maintain specified height without cutting more than one-third of grass height. Remove no more than one-third of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not delay mowing until grass blades bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet. Schedule initial and subsequent mowings to maintain the following grass height:
 1. Mow bermudagrass to a height of 1/2 to 1 inch.
 2. Mow annual ryegrass to a height of 1-1/2 to 2 inches.

3.7 SATISFACTORY TURF

- A. Turf installations shall meet the following criteria as determined by Architect:
 1. Satisfactory Seeded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, uniform, close stand of grass has been established, free of weeds and surface irregularities, with coverage exceeding 90 percent over any 10 sq. ft. and bare spots not exceeding 2 by 2 inches.
 2. Satisfactory Sprigged Turf: At end of maintenance period, the required number of sprigs has been established as well-rooted, viable plants, and areas between sprigs are free of weeds and other undesirable vegetation.
- B. Use specified materials to reestablish turf that does not comply with requirements, and continue maintenance until turf is satisfactory.

3.8 PESTICIDE APPLICATION

- A. Apply pesticides and other chemical products and biological control agents according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and manufacturer's written recommendations. Coordinate applications with Owner's operations and others in proximity to the Work. Notify Owner before each application is performed.
- B. Post-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Nonselective): Apply only as necessary to treat already-germinated weeds and according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.9 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

- A. Promptly remove soil and debris created by turf work from paved areas. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto roads, walks, or other paved areas.
- B. Remove surplus soil and waste material, including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- C. Erect temporary fencing or barricades and warning signs as required to protect newly planted areas from traffic. Maintain fencing and barricades throughout initial maintenance period and remove after plantings are established.
- D. Remove nondegradable erosion-control measures after grass establishment period.

3.10 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Turf Maintenance Service: Provide full maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in "Turf Maintenance" Article. Begin maintenance immediately after each area is planted and continue until acceptable turf is established, but for not less than the following periods:
 - 1. Seeded Turf: 60 days from date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. When initial maintenance period has not elapsed before end of planting season, or if turf is not fully established, continue maintenance during next planting season.
 - 2. Sprigged Turf: 30 days from date of planting completion.

END OF SECTION 329200

SECTION 329300 - PLANTS

PART 1- GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Plants.
 - 2. Planting soils.
 - 3. Tree stabilization.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 31 Section "Site Clearing" for protection of existing trees and plantings, topsoil stripping and stockpiling, and site clearing.
 - 2. Division 32 Section "Turf and Grasses" for turf (lawn), sprigging (ball field), hydro-seeding, and erosion-control materials.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: The earth used to replace or the act of replacing earth in an excavation.
- B. Balled and Burlapped Stock: Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they were grown, with ball size not less than diameter and depth recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required; wrapped with burlap, tied, rigidly supported, and drum laced with twine with the root flare visible at the surface of the ball as recommended by ANSI Z60.1.
- C. Balled and Potted Stock: Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they are grown and placed, unbroken, in a container. Ball size is not less than diameter and depth recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.
- D. Bare-Root Stock: Plants with a well-branched, fibrous-root system developed by transplanting or root pruning, with soil or growing medium removed, and with not less than minimum root spread according to ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.
- E. Container-Grown Stock: Healthy, vigorous, well-rooted plants grown in a container, with a well-established root system reaching sides of container and maintaining a firm ball when removed from container. Container shall be rigid enough to hold ball shape and protect root mass during shipping and be sized according to ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.
- F. Duff Layer: The surface layer of native topsoil that is composed of mostly decayed leaves, twigs, and detritus.
- G. Fabric Bag-Grown Stock: Healthy, vigorous, well-rooted plants established and grown in-ground in a porous fabric bag with well-established root system reaching sides of fabric bag. Fabric bag

size is not less than diameter, depth, and volume required by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant.

- H. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.
- I. Manufactured Topsoil: Soil produced off-site by homogeneously blending mineral soils or sand with stabilized organic soil amendments to produce topsoil or planting soil.
- J. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. This includes insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. It also includes substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant.
- K. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired, or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. These include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.
- L. Planting Area: Areas to be planted.
- M. Planting Soil: Standardized topsoil; existing, native surface topsoil; existing, in-place surface soil; imported topsoil; or manufactured topsoil that is modified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth.
- N. Plant; Plants; Plant Material: These terms refer to vegetation in general, including trees, shrubs, vines, ground covers, ornamental grasses, bulbs, corms, tubers, or herbaceous vegetation.
- O. Root Flare: Also called "trunk flare." The area at the base of the plant's stem or trunk where the stem or trunk broadens to form roots; the area of transition between the root system and the stem or trunk.
- P. Stem Girdling Roots: Roots that encircle the stems (trunks) of trees below the soil surface.
- Q. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or the top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.
- R. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.
- S. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil; but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including soils.
 - 1. Plant Materials: Include quantities, sizes, quality, and sources for plant materials.
 - 2. Pesticides and Herbicides: Include product label and manufacturer's application instruction specific to the Project.
 - 3. Plant Photographs: Include color photographs in either digital or 3- by 5-inch (76- by 127-mm) print format of each required species and size of plant material as it will be furnished to the Project. Take photographs from an angle depicting true size and condition of the

typical plant to be furnished. Include a scale rod or other measuring device in each photograph. For species where more than 10 plants are required, include a minimum of three photographs showing the average plant, the best quality plant, and the worst quality plant to be furnished. Identify each photograph with the full scientific name of the plant, plant size, and name of the growing nursery.

B. Samples for Verification: For each of the following:

1. Trees and Shrubs: Contact Landscape Architect for review of plant material, based on information received above in product data. The Landscape Architect reserves the right to inspect trees and shrubs either at place of growth or at site before planting, for compliance with requirements for name, variety, size and quality. Provide trees and shrubs grown in a recognized nursery in accordance with good horticultural practice. Provide healthy, vigorous stock grown under climatic conditions similar to conditions in the locality of the project and free of disease, insects, eggs, larvae, and defects such as knots, sunscald, injuries, abrasions or disfigurement. Provide trees and shrubs of the sizes shown as specified. Trees and shrubs of larger size may be used, if acceptable to Landscape Architect, and if sizes of roots or balls are increased proportionately.
2. Mulch: one quart volume of each organic mulch required, in sealed plastic bags labeled with composition of materials by percentage of weight and source of mulch. Each Sample shall be typical of the lot of material to be furnished; provide an accurate representation of color, texture, and organic makeup.
3. Filter Fabric: 12 x12" sample, with manufacturer specifications.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualifications: The Landscape Work shall be done by a single firm specializing in landscaping work. Include list of similar projects completed, demonstration Installer's capabilities and experience. Include project names, addresses, and year completed, and include names and addresses of owners' contact persons.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of manufactured product, from manufacturer, and complying with the following:
1. General: Ship landscape materials with certificates of inspection as required by governmental authorities. Comply with governing regulation applicable to landscape materials.
 2. Manufacturer's certified analysis of standard products.
 3. Analysis of other materials by a recognized laboratory made according to methods established by the Association of Official Analytical Chemists, where applicable.
- C. Material Test Reports:
1. Certification: For information only, submit 2 copies of certificates of inspection as required by governmental authorities, and manufacturers or vendor's certified analysis for soil amendments and fertilizer materials. Submit other data substantiating that materials comply with specified requirements.
- D. Maintenance Instructions: Submit two copies of typewritten instructions recommending procedures to be established by the Owner for the maintenance of landscape work for one full year. Submit prior to expiration of required maintenance period(s).
- E. Provide two copies of warranty (See Item 1.11 for specific requirements).

- F. Schedule of Work: For information only, submit 3 copies of tentative schedule to Owner and/or Owner's Agent along with Landscape Architect. Contractor shall keep all parties above apprised of any changes so that the Owner's Agent is aware of scheduled work at least 24 hours prior to said work being started.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
1. Provide Professional Memberships.
 2. Provide number of years' experience in Landscape Installation in addition to requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements"
 3. Provide Field Supervision Installers experience. Note full-time Supervisor to be on Project Site at all times when landscape installation is in progress.
 4. Pesticide Applicator: Licensed
- B. Provide Soil-Testing Laboratory Name and Qualifications.
- C. Soil Analysis: For each un-amended soil type, furnish soil analysis and a written report by a qualified soil testing laboratory stating percentages of organic matter, gradation of sand, silt, and clay content; cation exchange capacity, deleterious material, pH, and mineral and plant nutrient content of the soil.
1. Testing methods and written recommendations shall comply with USDA's Handbook No. 60.
 2. The soil-testing laboratory shall oversee soil sampling; with depth, location, and number of samples to be taken per instructions from Landscape Architect. A minimum of three representative samples shall be taken from varied locations for each soil to be used or amended for planting purposes.
 3. Report suitability of tested soil for plant growth.
 - a. Based upon the test results, state recommendations for soil treatments and soil amendments to be incorporated. State recommendations in weight per 1000 sq ft or volume per cu. yd. for nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and soil amendments to be added to produce satisfactory planting soil suitable for healthy, viable plants.
- D. Report presence of problem salts, minerals, or heavy metals, including aluminum, arsenic, barium, cadmium, chromium, cobalt, lead, lithium, and vanadium. If such problem materials are present, provide additional recommendations for corrective action.
- E. Provide quality, size, genus, species, and variety of plants indicated, complying with applicable requirements in ANSI Z60.1. Do not make substitutions: If specified landscape material is not obtainable, submit to Landscape Architect proof of non-availability and proposal for use of equivalent material. When authorized, adjustment of contract amount will be made.
- F. Plant Material Observation: Landscape Architect may observe plant material either at place of growth or at site before planting for compliance with requirements for genus, species, variety, cultivar, size, and quality. Landscape Architect retains right to observe trees and shrubs further for size and condition of balls and root systems, pests, disease symptoms, injuries, and latent defects and to reject unsatisfactory or defective material at any time during progress of work. Remove rejected trees or shrubs immediately from Project site.
1. Notify Landscape Architect of sources of planting materials 14 days in advance of delivery to site.

- G. Hardscape Materials: Materials and methods of construction shall comply with American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM). Installation shall be performed by skilled workmen with a satisfactory record of performance on completed projects of comparable size and quality. Do not change source of Hardscape Materials during the course of the work.

1.7 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of conformance with state and federal laws if applicable. Protect materials from deterioration during delivery, and while stored at the site.
- B. Materials shall be checked to ensure that no damages occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored in such a manner to ensure proper ventilation and drainage and to protect against damage, weather, vandalism and theft.
- C. Bulk Materials:
1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
 2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil- bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
 3. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers, and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.
- D. Plant Materials:
1. Do not prune trees and shrubs before delivery. Protect bark, branches, and root systems from sun scald, drying, wind burn, sweating, whipping, and other handling and tying damage. Do not bend or bind-tie trees or shrubs in such a manner as to destroy their natural shape. Provide protective covering of plants during shipping and delivery. Do not drop plants during delivery and handling.
 2. Label at least one tree and one shrub of each variety with a securely attached waterproof tag bearing legible designation of botanical and common name.
 3. Do not remove container grown stock from containers until planting time.
 4. Handle planting stock by root ball.
 5. Deliver plants after preparations for planting have been completed, and install immediately. If planting is delayed more than six (6) hours after delivery, set plants and trees in their appropriate conditions, protect from weather and mechanical damage, and keep roots moist.
 - a. Set balled stock on ground and cover ball with soil, peat moss, or other acceptable material.
 - b. Do not remove container-grown stock from containers before time of planting.
 - c. Water root systems of plants stored on-site deeply and thoroughly with a fine-mist spray. Water as often as necessary, to maintain root systems in a moist, but not overly-wet condition.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Installer must verify actual grade elevations, service and utility locations, irrigation system components, and dimensions of plantings and construction contiguous with new

plantings by field measurements before proceeding with planting work. Installer must observe the conditions under which work is to be performed, and notify the Landscape Architect of unsatisfactory conditions. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to Installer.

- B. Interruption of Existing Services or Utilities: Do not interrupt services or utilities to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary services or utilities according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify the Landscape Architect/ Construction Manager and or Owner no fewer seven days in advance of proposed interruption of each service or utility.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of services or utilities without Construction Managers and or Owner's written permission.
- C. Planting Restrictions: Proceed with and complete the landscape work as rapidly as portions of the site become available, working within the seasonal limitations for each kind of landscape work required. Coordinate planting periods with maintenance periods to provide required maintenance from date of Substantial Completion.
- D. Excavation: When conditions detrimental to plant growth are encountered, such as rubble fill, adverse drainage conditions, or obstructions, notify Landscape Architect before planting.
- E. Planting Schedule: Prepare a proposed planting schedule. Schedule the dates for each type of landscape work during normal seasons for such work in the area of the site. Correlate with specified maintenance periods to provide maintenance until acceptance by the Owner. Once accepted, revise dates only as approved in writing, after documentation of reasons for delays.
- F. Coordination with Lawns: Plant trees and shrubs after final grades are established and prior to planting of lawns, unless otherwise acceptable to the Landscape Architect. If planting of trees and shrubs occurs after lawn work, protect lawn areas and promptly repair damage to lawns resulting from planting operations.
- G. Protect existing trees, shrubs and other hardscape elements against damage including trespassing, and erosion.
- H. Protect all existing plant material in the area of this contract, whether inside or outside the contract limit line, against any damage, which in the opinion of the Landscape Architect will cause death or major retardation. Such material shall be replaced with same size and species by the Contractor at no additional cost should such damage occur.
- I. Inspection of work will be made at the conclusion of work (at acceptance of the project). Submit written notice requesting final inspection at least 10 days prior to anticipated date.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace plantings and accessories that fail in materials, workmanship, or growth within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Death and unsatisfactory growth, except for defects resulting from abuse, lack of adequate maintenance, or neglect by Owner, or incidents that are beyond contractor's control.
 - b. Structural failures including plantings, falling or blowing over.

- c. Structural failures of tree stabilization structures, or stone energy dissipaters
2. Warranty periods will begin from the Date of installation completion (as determined by the Landscape Architect for a period of 12 months (one year).
3. Include the following remedial actions as a minimum.
 - a. Immediately remove dead plants and replace unless required to plant in the succeeding planting season.
 - b. Replace plants that are more than 25 percent dead or in an unhealthy condition at end of warranty period.
 - c. A limit of one replacement for each plant will be required except for losses or replacements due to failure to comply with requirements.
 - d. Provide extended warranty for a period equal to the original warranty period, for replaced plant material.

1.10 MAINTENANCE

- A. All planted trees, shrubs, groundcovers and annual flowers, shall be maintained until final acceptance of the completed contract. This shall be not less than 60 days. Maintenance shall include watering, cultivating, control of insects, fungus, and other horticultural operations necessary for the proper growth of all plants.

PART 2 - GENERAL

2.1 PLANT MATERIAL

- A. General: Furnish nursery-grown plants true to genus, species, variety, cultivar, stem form, shearing, and other features indicated in Plant Schedule or Plant Legend shown on Drawings L-101. and complying with ANSI Z60.1; and with healthy root systems developed by transplanting or root pruning. Provide well-shaped, fully branched, healthy, vigorous stock, densely foliated when in leaf and free of disease, pests, eggs, larvae, and defects such as knots, sun scald, injuries, abrasions, and disfigurement.
 1. Trees with damaged, crooked, or multiple leaders (unless otherwise indicated); tight vertical branches where bark is squeezed between two branches or between branch and trunk ("included bark"); crossing trunks; or with stem girdling roots will be rejected.
 2. Collected Stock: Do not use plants harvested from the wild, from native stands, from an established landscape planting, or not grown in a nursery unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Provide plants of sizes, grades, and ball or container sizes complying with ANSI Z60.1 "Standard for Nursery Stock" for types and form of plants required. Plants of a larger size may be used if acceptable to Landscape Architect, with a proportionate increase in size of roots or balls. Provide plant materials true to name and variety established by the American Joint Committee on Horticultural Nomenclature "Standardized Plant Names," Second Edition, 1942.
- C. Deciduous Trees: Provide trees of height and caliper listed or shown and with branching configuration recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and species required. Provide single stem trees except where special forms are shown or listed.
 1. Provide balled and burlapped (B&B) deciduous trees.
 2. Container grown deciduous trees will be acceptable in lieu of balled and burlapped deciduous trees subject to specified limitations of ANSI Z60.1 for container stock.

- D. Deciduous Shrubs: Provide shrubs of the height shown or listed and with not less than the minimum number of canes required by ANSI 260.1 for the type and height of shrub required.
 - 1. Provide balled and burlapped (B&B), bare root (B.R.) or container deciduous shrubs as specified in plant list.
 - 2. Container grown deciduous shrubs will be acceptable in lieu of balled and burlapped deciduous shrubs subject to the specified limitations for container grown stock.
- E. Coniferous and Broadleaved Evergreens: Provide evergreens of the sizes shown or listed. Dimensions indicate minimum spread for spreading and semi-spreading type evergreens and height for other types, such as globe, dwarf cone, pyramidal, broad upright and columnar. Provide normal quality evergreens with well-balanced form complying with requirements for other size relationships to the primary dimension shown.
 - 1. Provide balled and burlapped (B&B) or container grown evergreens as specified.
 - 2. Container grown evergreens will be acceptable in lieu of balled and burlapped evergreens subject to the specified limitations for container grown stock.
- F. Labeling: label at least one plant of each variety, size, and caliper with a securely attached, waterproof tag bearing legible designation of common name and full scientific name, including genus and species. Include nomenclature for hybrid, variety, or cultivar, if applicable for the plant as shown on Drawings.
- G. If formal arrangements or consecutive order of plants is shown on plans, select stock for uniform height and spread, and number the labels to assure symmetry in planting.
- H. Annuals and Biennials – Optional for Client determination. Provide healthy, disease-free plants, with well- established root systems reaching to sides of the container to maintain a firm ball, but not with excessive root growth encircling the container. Provide only plants that are acclimated to outdoor conditions before delivery.

2.2 INORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

- A. Ground Limestone: (To be incorporated into soil if soil pH value test shows low level of soil Ph which needs to be raised.). ASTM C 602, natural limestone containing not less than 85% of total carbonates, ground so that not less 90% passes a 10 mesh sieve and not less than 30% passes a 100 mesh sieve. Apply at the rate adequate to bring pH range up to 6.0 to 6.5.
- B. Sulfur: Granular, biodegradable, and containing a minimum of 90 percent sulfur, with a minimum of 99 percent passing through No.6 sieve and a maximum of 10 percent passing through no. 40 sieve.
- C. Iron Sulphate: Granulated ferrous sulfate containing a minimum of 20 percent and 10 percent sulfur. (To be incorporated into soil if soil pH value test shows high level of soil pH which needs to be lowered.) Iron Sulphate shall be applied at the rate adequate to bring pH range down to 6.0 to 6.5 and as per "Cornell Recommendations for Commercial Turf Grass Management".
- D. Aluminum Sulfate: Commercial grade, unadulterated.
- E. Perlite: Horticultural perlite, soil amendment grade.
- F. Agricultural gypsum: Minimum 90 percent calcium sulfate, finely ground with 90 percent passing through No. 50 sieve.

- G. Sand: Clean, washed, natural or manufactured, and free of toxic materials.
- H. Diatomaceous Earth: Calcined, 90 percent silica, with approximately 140 percent water absorption capacity by weight.
- I. Zeolites: Mineral clinoptilolite with at least 60 percent water absorption by weight.

2.3 ORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

- A. Compost: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 1/2 inch sieve; soluble salt content of 4 to 8 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:
 - 1. Organic Matter Content: 50 to 60 percent of dry weight
- B. Peat Humus: FS Q-P-166 and with the texture and pH range OF 3.4 TO 4.8.
- C. Muck Peat: Partially decomposed moss peat, native peat, or reed-sedge peat, finely divided or of granular texture, with a pH range of 6 to 7.5, and having a water-absorbing capacity of 1100 to 2000 percent.

2.4 FERTILIZERS

- A. Bonemeal: Commercial, raw, or steamed, finely ground; 4% nitrogen and 20% phosphoric acid.
- B. Superphosphate: Commercial, phosphate mixture, Soluble; a minimum of 20% available phosphoric acid.
- C. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium.
 - 1. For All New Trees and Shrubs:
 - a. All trees and shrubs shall be fertilized with a controlled release 16-8-16 analysis fertilizer contained in a polyethylene perforated bag with micropore holes. The bag shall contain four (4) ounces minimum of water soluble fertilizer so as to be effective for eight (8) years.
 - b. The packets shall be placed equidistantly within the planting pit adjacent to the ball or root mass, but not in direct contact with roots. Placement depth shall be 6 to 8 inches. Packets shall not be cut, ripped or damaged. If it becomes necessary to remove and replace dead or unhealthy plants, damaged or broken packets shall be replaced with new packets.
 - c. A "Certificate of Compliance" must accompany invoice showing quantity of material ordered, where material was supplied and shipped to, and its consigned route and specific job application.
 - 2. For lawns, provide fertilizer with not less than 4% phosphoric acid and not less than 2% potassium and the percentage of nitrogen required to provide not less than 1 lb. of actual nitrogen per 1000 sq. ft. of lawn area. Provide nitrogen in a form that will be available to the lawn during the initial period of growth.

- D. Organic Fertilizer and Soil Conditioner: All trees and shrubs shall be treated with PHC Healthy Start which contains a blend of natural organic nutrients, proteins, sugars and other carbohydrates, humic acids, biostimulants and beneficial bacteria that enrich soil.
1. PHC Healthy Start is available from Plant Health Care, Inc., 440 William Pitt Way, Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, 1- 800-421-9051. (Or approved equal)

2.5 PLANTING SOILS

A. TOPSOIL

1. Topsoil shall be from off-site sources. It shall be without admixture of subsoil or slag and shall be free of stones, lumps, plants or their roots, sticks and extraneous matter, and shall not be moved, placed or used while in a frozen or muddy condition.
2. Topsoil from off-site sources shall have an acidity range of pH 5.0 to 7.0 and shall contain not less than 5% organic matter as determined by the "Walkley-Black Method" (Colorimetric version). Sufficient limestone shall be added to topsoil used to bring it to a range of pH 6.0 to pH 6.5.
3. Soil sample tests will be ordered by the Landscape Contractor and shall be made by a state or commercial laboratory using methods approved by the Associates of Official Agricultural chemists or the State Agricultural Experiment Station.
4. Such analysis will be paid for by the Contractor. Moving and placing of topsoil may be made after approval of the analysis by the Landscape Architect.
5. If approved, natural topsoil not having the hydrogen-ion value specified above may be amended by the contractor, at his own expense, to bring it within the specified limits. Topsoil shall meet the following mechanical analysis:

	Passing %	Retained
1" Screen	100%	0%
1/2" Screen	97-100%	0-3%
No. 100 Mesh Sieve	60-40%	40-60%

6. There shall be a minimum of 4" of topsoil (after settlement) in all plant beds, pit plantings, ground cover areas, and lawns or as called for on the drawings whichever is greater. 12" for annual plant beds.

2.6 MULCHES

- A. River Jack Mulch: Free from deleterious materials and suitable as a top dressing of trees and shrubs, consisting of the following:
1. Mulch: Shall be 1-3" North Carolina river stone of varying size, shape, and color.
 2. Color: No artificial, dyes or colorant will be allowed.
 3. Depth: River Jack Mulch shall be a minimum depth of 4" throughout.

2.7 PESTICIDES

- A. General: Pesticide registered and approved by EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Pre-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling the germination or growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.

- C. Post-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.

2.8 TREE STABILIZATION MATERIALS

- A. Stakes and Guys:
 - 1. Upright and Guy Stakes: Rough-sawn, sound, new hardwood, treated softwood with specified wood pressure- preservative treatment, free of knots, holes, cross grain, and other defects, (2" by 2" by 5'-0" min), pointed at one end, 3 per tree.
 - 2. Wood Deadmen: NOT USED
 - 3. Guys and Tie Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1, galvanized-steel wire, two-strand, twisted, 12 gauge.
 - 4. Guy Cables: Five-strand, galvanized-steel cable, with zinc-coated turnbuckles, a minimum of 6 inches long, with two 3/8 inch galvanized eyebolts.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS LANDSCAPE MATERIALS

- A. Anti-Desiccant: Emulsion type, film-forming agent similar to Dowax by Dow Chemical Co., or Wilt-Pruf by Nursery Specialty Products, Inc., designed to permit transpiration, but retard excessive loss of moisture from plants. Deliver in manufacturer's fully identified containers and mix in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. All plants shall be sprayed with an anti-desiccant once in late Fall (November) and once in late Winter (February).
- B. Wrapping: Tree-wrap tape not less than 4" wide, designed to prevent borer damage and winter freezing.
- C. Filter Fabric: Filter weave 40/10 as manufactured by Nicolon/Mirafi Group. (Or approved equal). Filter weave 40/10 is available from Ragen Associates. 20 Larsen Rd., Iselin, NJ 08830, (732)602-9500 or (800)752-1010 outside NJ.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive plants for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting installation and performance.
 - 1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.
 - 2. Do not mix or place soils and soil amendments in frozen, wet, or muddy conditions.
 - 3. Suspend soil spreading, grading, and tilling operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.
 - 4. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable and which is too dusty.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by Landscape Architect and replace with new planting soil.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities and turf areas and existing plants from damage caused by planting operations.
- B. Install erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.
- C. Lay out individual tree and shrub locations and areas for multiple plantings. Stake locations, outline areas, adjust locations when requested, and obtain Landscape Architect's acceptance of layout before excavating or planting. Make minor adjustments as required.
- D. Apply anti-desiccant to trees and shrubs using power spray to provide an adequate film over trunks (before wrapping), branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect during digging, handling, and transportation.
 - 1. If deciduous trees or shrubs are moved in full leaf, spray with anti-desiccant at nursery before moving and again two weeks after planting.
- E. Wrap trees and shrubs with burlap fabric over trunks, branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect from wind and other damage during digging, handling, and transportation.

3.3 PLANTING AREA ESTABLISHMENT

- A. Rough grade will be left 4" below finished grade by others. Loosen subgrade of lawn areas to a minimum depth of 4". Remove stones over 1" in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish and other extraneous matter and legally dispose them off Owner's property. Limit preparation to areas, which will be planted promptly after preparation.
 - 1. Spread topsoil to minimum depth required to meet lines, grades and elevations shown, after light rolling and natural settlement (4" after settlement). Place approximately 1/2 of total amount of topsoil required. Work into top of loosened subgrade to create a transition layer and then place remains of topsoil. Add specified soil amendments (as per Section 3.19-B of this specification) and mix thoroughly into the upper 4 inches of topsoil.
 - 2. Where final grades are not indicated, finish grades shall be of uniform level or slope between points for which elevations are given or from such points to existing grades, except that tops and bottoms of banks shall be rounded. Subgrade elevations shall be understood to be the specified depth below finished grades.
 - 3. Moisten prepared lawn areas before planting if soil is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface moisture to dry before seeding. Do not create a muddy soil condition.
 - 4. Restore lawn areas to specified condition if eroded or otherwise disturbed after fine grading and prior to planting.
- B. Finish Grading: Grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades.
- C. Before planting, obtain Landscape Architect's acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.

3.4 EXCAVATION FOR TREES AND SHRUBS

- A. Planting Pits and Trenches: Excavate circular planting pits with sides sloping inward at a 45 degree angle. Excavations with vertical sides are not acceptable. Leave center bottom of

excavation slightly raised at center to provide proper drainage. Ensure that root ball will sit on undisturbed base soil to prevent settling. Loosen hard subsoil in bottom of excavation.

1. For balled and burlapped (B&B) trees and shrubs, make excavations at least the equivalent of two and a half times as wide as the ball radius and equal to the ball depth, plus the following allowance for setting of ball on a layer of compacted backfill: Allow for 6" setting layer of planting soil mixture.
2. Excavate at least 12 inches wider than root spread and deep enough to accommodate vertical roots for bare-root stock.
3. Do not excavate deeper than the depth of the root ball, measured from the root flare to the bottom of the root ball.
4. If area under the plant was initially dug too deep, add soil to raise it to the correct level and thoroughly tamp the added soil to prevent settling.
5. Maintain required angles of repose of adjacent material as show on the Drawings. Do not excavate subgrades of adjacent paving, structures, hardscapes, or other new or existing improvements.
6. Maintain supervision of excavations during working hours.
7. Keep excavations covered or otherwise protected after working hours, overnight and when unattended by contractor's personnel.

- B. Subsoil and topsoil removed from excavations MAY NOT be used as planting soil.
- C. Obstructions: Notify Landscape Architect if unexpected rock or obstructions detrimental to trees or shrubs are encountered in excavations.
- D. Drainage: Notify Landscape Architect if subsoil conditions evidence unexpected water seepage or retention in tree or shrub planting pits.
- E. Fill excavations with water and allow to percolate away before positioning trees and shrubs.

3.5 TREE, SHRUB, AND VINE PLANTING

- A. Before planting, verify that root flare is visible at top of root ball according to ANSI Z60.1. If root flare is not visible, remove soil in a level manner from the root ball to where the tip-most root emerges from the trunk. After soil removal to expose the root flare, verify that the root ball still meets size requirements.
- B. Remove stem girdling roots and kinked roots, Remove injured roots by cutting cleanly; do not break.
- C. Set balled and burlapped stock plumb and in center of planting pit or trench with root flare 3 inches above adjacent finished grade.
 1. During the placement of backfill place "Unique Fertilizer Packets" as specified in section 2.4 C as follows:

<u>Types of Plants</u>	<u>No. of Packets</u>
a. Trees:	
Over 4 inch caliper	4
1 to 4 inch caliper	3
Over 6 feet high	4

3 to 6 feet high	3
15 to 36 inches high	2
Under 15 inches high	1
b. Shrubs:	
Over 3 feet high	3
2 to 3 feet high	2
Under 2 feet high	1

The packets shall be placed equidistantly within the planting pit adjacent to the ball or root mass, but not in direct contact with roots. Placement depth shall be 6 to 8 inches. Packets shall not be cut, ripped or damaged. If it becomes necessary to remove and replace dead or unhealthy plants, damaged or broken packets shall be replaced with new packets.

2. When excavation is approximately 2/3 full, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more is absorbed. Water again after placing final layer of backfill. Remove collar ropes only. Retain burlap on balls.
- D. Set bare root stock on cushion of planting soil mixture. Spread roots, then carefully work backfill around roots by hand and puddle with water until backfill layers are completely saturated. Plumb before backfilling and maintain plumb while working backfill around roots and placing layers above roots. Set collar 1" to 2" above adjacent finish landscape grades. Spread cut roots without tangling or turning up to surface. Cut injured roots clean, do not break.
 - E. Set container grown stock as specified for balled and burlapped stock, except cut cans on two sides with an approved can cutter; remove bottoms of wooden boxes after partial backfilling so as not to damage root balls.
 - F. When planting on slopes, set the plant so the root flare on the uphill side is flush with the surrounding soil on the slope: the edge of the root ball on the downhill side will be above the surrounding soil. Apply enough soil to cover the downhill side of the root ball.
 - G. Dish top of backfill to allow for mulching. For Spring planting, provide additional backfill berm around edge of excavations to form shallow saucer to collect water.
 1. Note: Surface of all Shrub Beds shall be crowned or sloped as required to achieve a 3% minimum surface pitch and insure positive surface drainage.
 - H. Wrap tree trunks of 2" caliper and larger. Start at ground and cover trunk to height of first branches and securely attach. Inspect tree trunks for injury, improper pruning and insect infestation and take corrective measures required before wrapping.
- 3.6 TREE, SHRUB, AND VINE PRUNING
- A. Remove only dead, dying, or broken branches, Do not prune for shape.
 - B. Prune, thin out and shape trees and shrubs in accordance with standard horticultural practice. Prune trees to retain required height and spread. Unless otherwise directed by the Landscape Architect, do not cut tree leaders, and remove only injured or dead branches from flowering trees, if any. Prune shrubs to retain natural character and accomplish their use in the landscape design. Required shrub sizes are the size after pruning.
 1. Remove and replace excessively pruned or misformed stock resulting from improper pruning.

2. Do not apply pruning paint to wounds.

3.7 TREE STABILIZATION

- A. Install trunk stabilization as follows unless otherwise indicated:

1. Upright Staking and Tying: Stake trees of 2- through 5-inch caliper. Stake trees of less than 2-inch caliper only as required to prevent wind tip out. Use a minimum of two stakes of length required to penetrate at least 18 inches below bottom of backfilled excavation and to extend to the dimension shown on Drawings. Set vertical stakes and space to avoid penetrating root balls or root masses.
2. Use two stakes for trees up to 12 feet high and 2-1/2 inches or less in caliper; three stakes for trees less than 14 feet high and up to 4 inches in caliper. Space stakes equally around trees.
3. Support trees with bands of flexible ties at contact points with tree trunk. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.

3.8 PLANTING AREA MULCHING

- A. Mulch backfilled surfaces of planting areas and other areas indicated.

1. Trees and tree like shrubs in Turf Areas: Apply mulch ring of 3 inch thick with 36 inch radius around trunks or stems. Do not place mulch within six inches of trunk or stems.
2. Organic Mulch in Planting Areas: Apply three inches thickness of organic mulch or stone extending 12 inches beyond edge of individual planting pit or trench and over whole surface of planting area, and finish level with adjacent finished grades. Do not place mulch within three inches of trunks or stems.
3. Mineral Mulch in Planting Areas: Apply 3 inch average thickness of mineral mulch over whole surface area as shown on plans, and finish level with adjacent finish grades. Do not place mulch within 6 inches of trunks or stems.

3.9 PLANT MAINTENANCE

- A. Begin maintenance immediately after planting. Maintain trees, shrubs and other plants until final acceptance, but in no case less than the following period: 60 days after planting.
- B. Maintain plantings by pruning, cultivating, watering, weeding, fertilizing, mulching, restoring planting saucers, adjusting and repairing tree-stabilization devices, resetting to proper grades or vertical position, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable plantings. Spray or treat as required to keep trees and shrubs free of insects and disease.
- C. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace mulch materials damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.
- D. Apply treatments as required to keep plant materials, planted areas, and soils free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated pest management practices whenever possible to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards. Treatments include physical controls such as hosing off foliage, mechanical controls such as traps, and biological control agents.

- E. Submit two copies of typewritten instructions recommending procedures to be established by the Owner for the maintenance of landscape work for one full year. Submit prior to the expiration of required maintenance period(s).

3.10 PESTICIDE APPLICATION

- A. Apply pesticides and other chemical products and biological control agents in accordance with authorities having jurisdiction and manufacturer's written recommendations. Coordinate applications with Owner's operations and others in proximity to the Work. Notify Owner before each application is performed.
- B. Pre-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Non-Selective): Apply to tree, shrub, and ground-cover areas in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations. Do not apply to seeded areas.
- C. Post-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Non-Selective): Apply only as necessary to treat already-germinated weeds and in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.11 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

- A. During planting, keep adjacent paving and construction clean and work area in an orderly condition. During landscape installation, store materials and equipment where directed.
- B. Protect landscape work and material from damage due to landscape operations, operations of other contractors and trades and trespassers. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance periods. Treat, repair, or replace damaged landscape work as directed.
- C. After installation and before final inspection, remove nursery tags, nursery stakes, tie tape, labels, wire, burlap, and other debris from plant material, planting areas, and Project site.

3.12 DISPOSAL

- A. Remove surplus soil and waste material including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

3.13 PREPARATION OF PLANTING SOIL

- A. Before mixing, clean topsoil of roots, plants, sods, stones, clay lumps and other extraneous materials harmful or toxic to plant growth.
- B. Mix specified soil amendments at required rates (derived from Topsoil Analysis Report). Also include the following:
 - 1. For Trees and Shrubs (excluding coniferous ground cover): PHC Healthy Start 3-4-3 organic fertilizer/soil conditioner, shall be applied at 1/2 lb. per trunk diameter (cal.) inch for trees.

For shrubs as follows:

<u>Plant Size</u>	<u>Rate Cups</u>	<u>Lbs.</u>	<u># Plant Bag</u>
1 Gallon	1/2	1/4	100
5 Gallon	1	1/2	50
15 Gallon	2	1	25

24" Ball/Box	3	1 1/2	16
36" Ball/Box	5	2 1/2	10
42" Ball/Box	6	3	8
54" Ball/Box	8	4	6
72" Ball/Box	10	5	5

- C. Planting Soil Mixture: Shall consist of one part off-site topsoil, as required, one part clean coarse builder's sand and one part humus. These shall be thoroughly mixed prior to any planting operations. The preceding shall be mixed with the soil amendments in Section 3.19 B.
- D. For pit and trench type planting, mix planting soil prior to back filling and/or placing stockpile at the site.
- E. For planting beds, mix planting soil either prior to planting or apply on surface of topsoil and mix thoroughly before planting.

END OF SECTION 329300

SECTION 330500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR UTILITIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Piping joining materials.
2. Transition fittings.
3. Dielectric fittings.
4. Piping system common requirements.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Exposed Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions.
- B. Concealed Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- C. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- D. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 1. Dielectric fittings.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Piping Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

- B. Comply with ASME A13.1 for lettering size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices after completing covering and painting if devices are applied to surfaces.
- C. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Formwork, reinforcement, and concrete requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B813.

- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- G. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
 - 1. PVC Piping: ASTM D2564. Include primer according to ASTM F656.
- H. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

2.2 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Transition Fittings, General: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
- B. Transition Couplings NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller:
 - 1. Underground Piping: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. AWWA Transition Couplings NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger:
 - 1. Description: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling for underground pressure piping.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
 - 1. Description: PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint or threaded end.
- E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-107, PVC four-part union. Include brass or stainless steel threaded end, solvent-cement-joint or threaded plastic end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
- F. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping:
 - 1. Description: ASTM C1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.

2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Dielectric Fittings, General: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Description: Factory fabricated, union, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
 - b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Description: Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100) and larger.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum
 - b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Kits:

1. Description: Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum
 - b. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - c. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - d. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Couplings:

1. Description: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining, NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
 - b. End Connections: Threaded.

F. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Description: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C)
 - b. End Connections: Threaded or grooved.

2.4 SLEEVES

- A. Mechanical sleeve seals for pipe penetrations are specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPED UTILITY DEMOLITION

- A. Disconnect, demolish, and remove piped utility systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
 - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping. Fill abandoned piping with flowable fill, and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - 4. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make operational.
 - 5. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- B. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

3.2 DIELECTRIC FITTING APPLICATIONS

- A. Wet Piping Systems: Connect piping of dissimilar metals with the following:
 - 1. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Dielectric couplings
 - 2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Dielectric nipples.
 - 3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 65 to DN 200): dielectric flange kits.
 - 4. NPS 10 and NPS 12 (DN 250 and DN 300): Dielectric flange kits.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and utilities Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on the Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- E. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.

- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- I. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- J. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections for roughing-in requirements.

3.4 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and utilities Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- G. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with grooved-end pipe coupling with coupling housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B813 water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy (0.20 percent maximum lead content) complying with ASTM B32.
- I. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- J. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Assemble joints for plain-end copper tube and mechanical pressure seal fitting with proprietary crimping tool to according to fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- K. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.

2. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D2855.
 3. PVC Non pressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D2855.
- L. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D3139.
- M. Plastic Non pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D3212.
- N. Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 3. Install dielectric fittings at connections of dissimilar metal pipes.

END OF SECTION 330500

SECTION 331415 - SITE WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Water-distribution piping and related components outside the building.

B. Related Requirements:

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CDA: Copper Development Association.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. PA: Polyamide (nylon) plastic.
- D. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- E. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Detail precast concrete vault assemblies and indicate dimensions, method of field assembly, and components.
 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring for alarms.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: For piping and specialties including relation to other services in same area, drawn to scale. Show piping and specialty sizes and valves, meter and specialty locations, and elevations.
- B. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
1. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Preparation for Transport: Prepare piping, valves, meters, backflow prevention devices, and fire hydrants according to the following:
 - 1. Ensure that piping, valves, meters, backflow prevention devices, and fire hydrants are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threaded ends and flange faces against damage.
 - 3. Set piping, valves, meters, backflow prevention devices, and fire hydrants in best position for handling and to prevent rattling.
- B. During Storage: Use precautions for piping, valves, meters, backflow prevention devices, and fire hydrants according to the following:
 - 1. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.
 - 2. Protect from weather. Store indoors and maintain temperature higher than ambient dew point temperature. Support off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures when outdoor storage is necessary.
- C. Handling: Use sling to handle products if size requires handling by crane or lift. Rig products to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.
- D. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- E. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.
- F. Protect flanges, fittings, and specialties from moisture and dirt.
- G. Store plastic piping protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water-Distribution Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water-distribution service in accordance with requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of water-distribution service without Construction Manager's written permission.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate connection to water main with utility company.
- B. Content includes water-distribution piping and related components outside the building for domestic water service and fire-suppression water service and service entrance piping to a point 1 ft. (0.3 m) inside finished wall. Terminate water-service piping with appropriate fitting for extension by Division 22.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying water. Include tapping of water mains and backflow prevention.
- B. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for domestic water-service piping, including materials, installation, testing, and disinfection.
- C. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for fire-suppression water-service piping, including materials, hose threads, installation, and testing.
- D. Piping materials to bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
- F. Comply with ASTM F645 for selection, design, and installation of thermoplastic water piping.
- G. Comply with FM Approvals' "Approval Guide" and/or UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" for fire-suppression water-service products.
- H. Comply with NFPA 24 for materials, installations, tests, flushing, and valve and hydrant supervision for fire-suppression water-service piping.
- I. All piping and appurtenances intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), with requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ), and with NSF 61/NSF 372 or are certified in compliance with NSF 61/NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and service sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components comply with NSF 14, NSF 61, and NSF 372

2.3 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC, Schedule 40 Pipe: ASTM D1785.
 - 1. PVC, Schedule 40 Socket Fittings: ASTM D2466.
- B. PVC, Schedule 80 Pipe: ASTM D1785.
 - 1. PVC, Schedule 80 Socket Fittings: ASTM D2467.
 - 2. PVC, Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D2464.
- C. PVC Pipe: AWWA C900UL 1285, Class 200, with bell end with gasket, and with spigot end.
 - 1. Comply with UL 1285 for fire-suppression water service.
 - 2. PVC Fabricated Fittings: AWWA C900, Class 200, with bell-and-spigot or double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.
 - 3. PVC Molded Fittings: AWWA C907, Class 150, with bell-and-spigot or double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.

2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series.
- B. Bonding Adhesive for Fiberglass Piping: As recommended by fiberglass piping manufacturer.
- C. Gaskets for Ferrous Piping and Copper-Alloy Tubing: ASME B16.21, asbestos free.
- D. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Transition Fittings: Manufactured fitting or coupling same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
- B. Tubular-Sleeve Pipe Couplings: Metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners and with ends of same sizes as piping to be joined.
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain tubular-sleeve pipe couplings from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Standard: AWWA C219.
 - 3. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard
 - 4. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 - 5. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum.
 - 6. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
- C. Split-Sleeve Pipe Couplings: Metal, bolted, split-sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling with sealing pad and closure plates, O-ring gaskets, and bolt fasteners.
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain split-sleeve pipe couplings from single manufacturer.

2. Standard: AWWA C227.
3. Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard
4. Sleeve Dimensions: Of thickness and width required to provide pressure rating.
5. Gasket Material: O-rings made of EPDM rubber unless otherwise indicated.
6. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum.
7. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

D. Flexible Connectors:

1. Nonferrous-Metal Piping: Bronze hose covered with bronze wire braid; with copper-tube, pressure-type, solder-joint ends or bronze flanged ends brazed to hose.
2. Ferrous-Metal Piping: Stainless steel hose covered with stainless steel wire braid; with ASME B1.20.1, threaded steel pipe nipples or ASME B16.5, steel pipe flanges welded to hose.

E. Dielectric Fittings: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

1. Dielectric Unions:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa)
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

2.6 GATE VALVES

A. Gate Valves - AWWA, Cast Iron:

1. Source Limitations: Obtain gate valves - AWWA, cast iron, from single manufacturer.
2. Gate Valves - Nonrising Stem, Resilient Seated: Cast- or ductile-iron body and bonnet, with bronze or cast- or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, bronze stem, and stem nut.
 - a. Standards: AWWA C509 or AWWA C515.
 - b. Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - c. End Connections: Mechanical joint, flanged, threaded, or push on.
 - d. Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.
3. Gate Valves - OS&Y, Rising Stem, Resilient Seated: Cast- or ductile-iron body and bonnet, with bronze or cast- or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, and bronze stem.
 - a. Standard: AWWA C509 or AWWA C515.
 - b. Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - c. End Connections: Mechanical joint, flanged, threaded, or push on.

2.7 GATE VALVE ACCESSORIES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Tapping-Sleeve Assemblies: Sleeve and valve compatible with drilling machine.

1. Source Limitations: Obtain tapping-sleeve assemblies from single manufacturer.

2. Standard: MSS SP-60.
 3. Tapping Sleeve: Cast- or ductile-iron or stainless steel, two-piece bolted sleeve with flanged outlet for new branch connection. Include sleeve matching size and type of pipe material being tapped and with recessed flange for branch valve.
 4. Valve: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, resilient-seated gate valve with one raised face flange mating tapping-sleeve flange.
- B. Valve Boxes: Comply with AWWA M44 for cast-iron valve boxes. Include top section, adjustable extension of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over valve and with a barrel approximately 5 inches (125 mm) in diameter.
1. Operating Wrenches: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and socket matching valve operating nut.
- C. Indicator Posts: UL 789, FM Global approved, vertical-type, cast-iron body with operating wrench, extension rod, and adjustable cast-iron barrel of length required for depth of burial of valve.

2.8 PROTECTIVE ENCLOSURES

- A. Freeze-Retardant Enclosures: Insulated enclosure designed to protect aboveground water piping, equipment, or specialties from weather and damage with minimum external temperatures of 33 deg F (0.5 deg C).
1. Source Limitations: Obtain freeze-retardant enclosures from single manufacturer.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1060.
 3. Class II: For equipment or devices other than pressure or atmospheric vacuum breakers.
 4. Class II-V: For pressure or atmospheric vacuum breaker equipment or devices. Include drain opening in housing.
 5. Housing: Reinforced fiberglass construction.
 - a. Size: Of dimensions indicated, but not less than those required for access and service of protected unit.
 - b. Drain opening for units with drain connection.
 - c. Access doors with locking devices.
 - d. Anchoring devices for attaching housing to concrete base.

2.9 FIRE HYDRANTS

- A. Fire Hydrants - Dry Barrel:
1. Source Limitations: Obtain fire hydrants - dry barrel, from single manufacturer.
 2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum
 3. Standard: AWWA C502.
 4. Freestanding configuration, with one NPS 4-1/2 (DN 115) and two NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) outlets, 5-1/4-inch (133-mm) main valve, drain valve, and NPS 6 (DN 150) mechanical-joint inlet. Include interior coating in accordance with AWWA C550. Hydrant to have cast-iron body, compression-type valve opening against pressure and closing with pressure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with excavating, trenching, and backfilling requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Transition couplings and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Do not use flanges or unions for underground piping.
- C. Flanges, unions, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and special fittings may be used, instead of joints indicated, on aboveground piping and piping in vaults.
- D. Underground water-service piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 3 (DN 20 to DN 80) to be the following:
 - 1. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
- E. Underground water-service piping NPS 4 to NPS 8 (DN 100 to DN 200) to be the following:
 - 1. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
- F. Underground fire-service-main piping NPS 4 to NPS 12 (DN 100 to DN 300) to be the following:
 - 1. PVC, AWWA Class 200 pipe listed for fire-protection service; PVC Class 200 fabricated fittings; and gasketed joints.

3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. General Application: Use mechanical-joint-end valves for NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger underground installation. Use threaded- or flanged-end valves for installation in vaults. Use UL/FM Global, nonrising-stem gate valves for installation with indicator posts. Use corporation valves and curb valves with ends compatible with piping, for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller installation.
- B. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Underground Valves, NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, resilient seated gate valves with valve box.

3.4 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for piping-system common requirements.

- B. Provide a continuous bare copper or aluminum tracer wire not less than 0.10 inch (2.5 mm) in diameter in sufficient length over each separate run of nonmetallic pipe.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

A. Water-Main Connection:

- 1. Arrange with utility company for tap of size and in location indicated in water main.

B. Make connections larger than NPS 2 (DN 50) with tapping machine according to the following:

- 1. Install tapping sleeve and tapping valve in accordance with MSS SP-60.
- 2. Install tapping sleeve on pipe to be tapped. Position flanged outlet for gate valve.
- 3. Use tapping machine compatible with valve and tapping sleeve; cut hole in main. Remove tapping machine and connect water-service piping.
- 4. Install gate valve onto tapping sleeve. Comply with MSS SP-60. Install valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.

C. Make connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller with drilling machine according to the following:

- 1. Install service-saddle assemblies and corporation valves in size, quantity, and arrangement required by utility company standards.
- 2. Install service-saddle assemblies on water-service pipe to be tapped. Position outlets for corporation valves.
- 3. Use drilling machine compatible with service-saddle assemblies and corporation valves. Drill hole in main. Remove drilling machine and connect water-service piping.
- 4. Install corporation valves into service-saddle assemblies.
- 5. Install manifold for multiple taps in water main.
- 6. Install curb valve in water-service piping with head pointing up and with service box.

D. Comply with NFPA 24 for fire-service-main piping materials and installation.

- 1. Install copper tube and fittings in accordance with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

E. Install PVC, AWWA pipe in accordance with ASTM F645 and AWWA M23.

F. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least [36 inches (910 mm)] and according to the following:

- 1. Under Driveways: With at least 36 inches (910 mm) of cover over top.
- 2. Under Railroad Tracks: With at least 48 inches (1220 mm) of cover over top.
- 3. In Loose Gravelly Soil and Rock: With at least 12 inches (300 mm)] of additional cover.

G. Install piping by tunneling or jacking, or combination of both, under streets and other obstructions that cannot be disturbed.

H. Extend water-service and fire-suppression water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building water-piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.

1. Terminate water-service piping at building wall until building water-piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building water-piping systems when those systems are installed.
- I. Sleeves are specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- J. Mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- K. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.
- L. Comply with Section 211000 "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for fire-suppression-water piping inside the building.
- M. Comply with Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for potable-water piping inside the building.
- N. Comply with Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for basic piping joint construction.
- O. Make pipe joints according to the following:
 1. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools and procedures recommended by pressure-seal-fitting manufacturer. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.
 2. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Water-Service Piping: AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
 3. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Fire-Service-Main Piping: UL 194.
 4. Ductile-Iron Piping, Grooved Joints: Cut-groove pipe. Assemble joints with grooved-end, ductile-iron-piping couplings, gaskets, lubricant, and bolts in accordance with coupling manufacturer's written instructions.
 5. PE Piping Insert-Fitting Joints: Use plastic insert fittings and fasteners in accordance with fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
 6. PVC Piping Gasketed Joints: Use joining materials in accordance with AWWA C900. Construct joints with elastomeric seals and lubricant in accordance with ASTM D2774 or ASTM D3139 and pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
 7. Fiberglass Piping Bonded Joints: Use adhesive and procedure recommended by piping manufacturer.
 8. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
 - a. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
 - b. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100) Use dielectric flanges
 - c. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF VALVES

- A. AWWA Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44. Install each underground valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF PROTECTIVE ENCLOSURES

- A. Install concrete base level and with top approximately 2 inches (50 mm) above grade.
- B. Install protective enclosure over valves and equipment.
- C. Anchor protective enclosure to concrete base.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF FIRE HYDRANTS

- A. Install each fire hydrant with separate gate valve in supply pipe, anchor with restrained joints or thrust blocks, and support in upright position.
- B. Wet-Barrel Fire Hydrants: Install with valve below frost line. Provide for drainage.
- C. AWWA Fire Hydrants: Comply with AWWA M17.
- D. UL/FM Global Fire Hydrants: Comply with NFPA 24.

3.9 CONNECTIONS

- A. See Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for piping connections to valves and equipment.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after concrete thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water.
- B. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than one-and-one-half times working pressure for two hours.
 - 1. Increase pressure in 50 psig (350 kPa) increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for one hour; decrease to 0 psig (0 kPa). Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for one more hour. Maximum allowable leakage is 2 quarts (1.89 L) per hour per 100 joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is within allowed limits.
- C. Prepare reports of testing activities.

3.11 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install continuous underground warning tape during backfilling of trench for underground water-distribution piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

- B. Permanently attach equipment nameplate or marker indicating plastic water-service piping, on main electrical meter panel. See Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for identifying devices.

3.12 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect water-distribution piping as follows:
 - 1. Purge new water-distribution piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.
- B. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in AWWA C651. Prepare reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

END OF SECTION 331415

SECTION 334200 - STORMWATER CONVEYANCE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. PVC pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Concrete pipe and fittings.
 - 3. Non-pressure transition couplings.
 - 4. Expansion joints and deflection fittings.
 - 5. Drains.
 - 6. Manholes.
 - 7. Catch basins.
 - 8. Pipe outlets.
 - 9. Stormwater disposal systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Manholes: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, and covers.
 - 2. Catch basins. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, covers, and grates.
 - 3. Stormwater Detention Structures: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, covers, design calculations, and concrete design-mix reports.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from storm drainage system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of cast-iron soil pipe and fitting, from manufacturer.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle manholes in accordance with manufacturer's written rigging instructions.
- D. Handle catch basins in accordance with manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service in accordance with requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Construction Manager's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain PVC pipe and fittings from single manufacturer.
- B. PVC Gravity Sewer Piping:
 - 1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F679, T-1 wall thickness, PVC gravity sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends and with integral ASTM F477, elastomeric seals for gasketed joints.

2.2 CONCRETE PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain concrete pipe and fittings from single manufacturer.
- B. Reinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C76 (ASTM C76M).
 - 1. Bell-and-spigot ends and gasketed joints with ASTM C443 (ASTM C443M), rubber gaskets
 - 2. Class III, Wall B

2.3 NONPRESSURE TRANSITION COUPLINGS

- A. Comply with ASTM C1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- B. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1. For Concrete Pipes: ASTM C443 (ASTM C443M), rubber.
 - 2. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C564, rubber.
 - 3. For Fiberglass Pipes: ASTM F477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D5926, PVC.
 - 4. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D5926, PVC.
 - 5. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- C. Unshielded, Flexible Couplings:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain unshielded, flexible couplings from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Description: Elastomeric sleeve with stainless-steel shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- D. Shielded, Flexible Couplings:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain shielded, flexible couplings from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Description: ASTM C1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- E. Ring-Type, Flexible Couplings:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain ring-type, flexible couplings from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Description: Elastomeric compression seal with dimensions to fit inside bell of larger pipe and for spigot of smaller pipe to fit inside ring.

2.4 EXPANSION JOINTS AND DEFLECTION FITTINGS

- A. Ductile-Iron, Flexible Expansion Joints:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain ductile-iron, flexible expansion joints from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Description: Compound fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110/A21.10 or AWWA C153/A21.53. Include two gasketed ball-joint sections and one or more gasketed sleeve sections, rated for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure and for offset and expansion indicated.
- B. Ductile-Iron Expansion Joints:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain ductile-iron expansion joints from single manufacturer.

2. Description: Three-piece assembly of telescoping sleeve with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile iron bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110/A21.10 or AWWA C153/A21.53.
3. Pressure Rating: 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure and for expansion indicated.

C. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings:

1. Source Limitations: Obtain ductile-iron deflection fittings from single manufacturer.
2. Description: Compound, ductile-iron coupling fitting with sleeve and one or two flexing sections for up to 15-degree deflection, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110/A21.10 or AWWA C153/A21.53. Include AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts. Include AWWA C111/A21.11 ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum.

2.5 CLEANOUTS

A. PVC Cleanouts:

1. Source Limitations: Obtain PVC cleanouts from single manufacturer.
2. Description: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping.

2.6 DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Area Drains:

1. Source Limitations: Obtain cast-iron area drains from single manufacturer.
2. Description: ASME A112.6.3 gray-iron round body with anchor flange and round secured grate. Include bottom outlet with inside caulk or spigot connection, of sizes indicated.
3. Top-Loading Classification(s): Medium Duty and Heavy Duty.

B. Grate Openings: 3/8-by-3-inch (9.5-by-76-mm) slots.

2.7 CONCRETE

A. General: Cast-in-place concrete in accordance with ACI 318 (ACI 318M), ACI 350 (ACI 350M), and the following:

1. Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type II.
2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C33/C33M, sand.
3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C33/C33M, crushed gravel.
4. Water: Potable.

B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.

1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A1064/A1064M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
 2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (420 MPa) deformed steel.
- C. Manhole Channels and Benches: Factory or field formed from concrete. Portland cement design mix, 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio. Include channels and benches in manholes.
1. Channels: Concrete invert, formed to same width as connected piping, with height of vertical sides to three-fourths of pipe diameter. Form curved channels with smooth, uniform radius and slope.
 - a. Invert Slope: 1 percent through manhole.
 2. Benches: Concrete, sloped to drain into channel.
 - a. Slope: 4 percent.
- D. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) minimum, with 0.58 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A1064/A1064M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
 2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (420 MPa) deformed steel.

2.8 CATCH BASINS

- A. Standard Precast Concrete Catch Basins:
1. Description: ASTM C478 (ASTM C478M), precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
 2. Base Section: 6-inch (150-mm) minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch (102-mm) minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
 3. Riser Sections: 4-inch (102-mm) minimum thickness, 48-inch (1200-mm) diameter, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
 4. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated. Top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
 5. Joint Sealant: ASTM C990 (ASTM C990M), bitumen or butyl rubber.
 6. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and shape matching catch basin frame and grate. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
 7. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, that match 24-inch- (610-mm-) diameter frame and grate.
 8. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder >, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of catch basin to finished grade is less than 60 (1500) inches (mm).
 9. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C923 (ASTM C923M), resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.

- B. Frames and Grates: ASTM A536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for A-16 (AASHTO HS20-44), structural loading. Include flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings.
 - 1. Size: 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Frames and Grates: ASTM A536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for A-16 (AASHTO HS20-44), structural loading. Include 24-inch (610-mm) ID by 7- to 9-inch (175- to 225-mm) riser with 4-inch- (102-mm-) minimum width flange, and 26-inch- (660-mm-) diameter flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings.
 - 1. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent unless otherwise indicated.

2.9 PIPE OUTLETS

- A. Riprap Basins: Broken, irregularly sized and shaped, graded stone in accordance with NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control."
 - 1. Average Size: NSSGA No. R-3, screen opening 2 inches (51 mm).
 - 2. Average Size: NSSGA No. R-4, screen opening 3 inches (76 mm).
 - 3. Average Size: NSSGA No. R-5, screen opening 5 inches (127 mm).
- B. Filter Stone: In accordance with NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control," No. FS-2, No. 4 screen opening, average-size graded stone.
- C. Energy Dissipaters: In accordance with NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control," No. A-1, 3-ton (2721-kg) average weight armor stone, unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.

- C. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
- D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- E. When installing pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed, use pipe-jacking process of micro tunneling.
- F. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping in accordance with the following:
 - 1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow.
 - 2. Install piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger with restrained joints at tee fittings and at changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.
 - 3. Install piping with 24 inch (600mm) minimum cover.
 - 4. Install reinforced-concrete sewer piping in accordance with ASTM C1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."
 - 5. Expansion joints and deflection fittings.

3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping in accordance with the following:
 - 1. Join reinforced-concrete sewer piping in accordance with ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasketed joints.
 - 2. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type flexible couplings.

3.4 DRAIN INSTALLATION

- A. Install type of drains in locations indicated.

3.5 MANHOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install manholes, complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
- B. Install precast concrete manhole sections with sealants in accordance with ASTM C891.
- C. Where specific manhole construction is not indicated, follow manhole manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 3 (76) inches (mm) above finished surface elsewhere unless otherwise indicated.

3.6 CATCH BASIN INSTALLATION

- A. Construct catch basins to sizes and shapes indicated.
- B. Set frames and grates to elevations indicated.

3.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place cast-in-place concrete in accordance with ACI 318 (ACI 318M).

3.8 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping in building's storm building drains specified in Section 221413 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping."
- B. Connect force-main piping to building's storm drainage force mains specified in Section 221413 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Terminate piping where indicated.
- C. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.
 - 1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch (150-mm) overlap, with not less than 6 inches (150 mm) of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa).
 - 2. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 4 to NPS 20 (DN 100 to DN 500). Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches (150 mm) of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa).
 - 3. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 21 (DN 525) or larger, or to underground manholes and structures by cutting into existing unit and creating an opening large enough to allow 3 inches (76 mm) of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of connection pipe passing through pipe or structure wall to conform to shape of and be flush with inside wall unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe, manhole, or structure wall, encase entering connection in 6 inches (150 mm) of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches (300 mm) to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.
 - a. Use concrete that will attain a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.
 - 4. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.
- D. Connect to sediment interceptors specified in Section 221323 "Sanitary Waste Interceptors."
- E. Pipe couplings, expansion joints, and deflection fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use nonpressure-type flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, nonpressure sewer piping unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Unshielded flexible couplings for same or minor difference OD pipes.

- b. Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible couplings for pipes with different OD.
 - c. Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.
2. Use pressure-type pipe couplings for force-main joints.

3.9 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Materials and their installation are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tape directly over piping and at outside edge of underground structures.
 1. Use detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
 2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches (610 mm) of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
 1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
 2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
 - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
 - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
 - c. Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
 - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
 - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
 3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
 4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
 2. Test completed piping systems in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
 4. Submit separate report for each test.
 5. Gravity-Flow Storm Drainage Piping: Test in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:

- a. Exception: Piping with soil tight joints unless required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Option: Test plastic piping in accordance with ASTM F1417.
 - c. Chapter.
- C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

3.11 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials and flush with water.

END OF SECTION 334200



Geotechnical Exploration Report
CFCC Alston Burke Campus Building Addition
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 24060108

PREPARED FOR:

Cape Fear Community College
419 North 3rd Street
Wilmington, North Carolina 28401

PREPARED BY:

S&ME, Inc.
3006 Hall Waters Drive, Suite 100
Wilmington, North Carolina 28405

August 23, 2024



August 23, 2024

Cape Fear Community College (CFCC)
419 North 3rd Street
Wilmington, North Carolina 28401

Attention: Mr. David Kanoy

Reference: **Geotechnical Exploration Report**
CFCC Alston Burke Campus Building Addition
Hampstead, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 24060108
NC PE Firm License No. F-0176

Dear David:

S&ME, Inc. (S&ME) is pleased to submit this geotechnical exploration report for the referenced project. Our services were performed in general accordance with S&ME Proposal No. 24060108, dated August 1, 2024.

The purpose of this exploration was to explore subsurface conditions within the project site, evaluate those conditions, and provide recommendations for site preparation, earthwork, foundation support for the proposed structure, and pavement section construction.

This report describes our understanding of the project and presents the findings of our exploration along with geotechnical design and construction recommendations based on these findings.

We appreciate the opportunity to work with you on this project. Please contact us with any questions, or if you need additional information.

Sincerely,
S&ME, Inc.

A blue ink signature of Nathan Buffum.

Nathan Buffum, P.E.
Office Principal/Vice President
NC Registration No. 042575

A blue ink signature of Thomas Still.

Thomas Still, P.E.
Principal Engineer
NC Registration No. 023923





Table of Contents

- ◆ Report at a Glance1
- 1.0 Project and Site Information.....2
 - 1.1 Structural Loading Information2
 - 1.2 Grade Elevation Changes.....3
- 2.0 Exploration Program.....3
 - 2.1 CPT Soundings3
 - 2.2 Shallow Hand Auger Borings.....4
 - 2.3 Laboratory Testing4
- 3.0 Regional Geology.....4
- 4.0 Surface and Subsurface Conditions.....5
 - 4.1 Surface Conditions5
 - 4.2 Subsurface Conditions.....5
 - 4.2.1 *Interpreted Subsurface Profile*.....5
 - 4.2.2 *Coastal Plain Soils*5
 - 4.2.3 *Subsurface Water*6
- 5.0 Conclusions and Recommendations.....6
 - 5.1 Earthwork.....7
 - 5.1.1 *Site Preparation*.....7
 - 5.1.2 *Subgrade Repair and Improvement Methods*.....8
 - 5.1.3 *Excavations*8
 - 5.1.4 *Structural Fill Placement and Compaction*8
 - 5.2 Foundation Support.....9
 - 5.3 Floor Slabs9
 - 5.4 Seismic Design Considerations10
 - 5.4.1 *Liquefaction Triggering Evaluation*.....10
 - 5.4.2 *Site Class*.....11
 - 5.4.3 *Design Spectral Accelerations*.....11



5.5	Pavement Section Design and Construction	11
6.0	Limitations of Geotechnical Report	13

Appendix

- Important Information About Your Geotechnical Report
- Figure 1: Site Vicinity Map
- Figure 2: Test Location Sketch
- Figure 3: Interpreted Subsurface Profile
- Figure 4: Shear Wave Velocity Profile
- CPT Soil Classification Legend and Sounding Logs
- Legend to Soil Classification and Symbols and Hand Auger Boring Logs



◆ Report at a Glance

Key geotechnical findings based on our current understanding of the proposed project are presented below. These findings are presented as an overview and should not be used in place of the more detailed recommendations presented in the remainder of this report.

Category	Key Geotechnical Finding
Site Development Challenges	<p>Specific geotechnical issues identified on this site that should be considered include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Control of perched water within the upper 5 feet during wet periods of weather. Contractor should anticipate dewatering of excavations during construction. Densification of near-surface loose sands after stripping and prior to fill placement. Moisture sensitive upper sands may require stabilization during wet weather grading.
Subsurface Conditions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Coastal plain sands and sand mixtures encountered throughout the explored subsurface profile. Very loose to loose sands were encountered within the upper 2 to 3 feet within soundings. Somewhat isolated layers of dense to very dense sands encountered between depths about 5 to 13 feet within some soundings indicate the presence of lightly cemented sand layers within the upper soil profile. Subsurface water at depths ranging from about 5 to 6 feet below existing ground surface feet at the time of exploration.
Seismic Considerations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Liquefaction risk during seismic shaking is low. Site Class D.
Foundation Types	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Foundations can be designed using an allowable soil bearing pressure of 2,000 psf. This bearing pressure assumes that footings will bear in compacted structural fill or suitable natural soils, and that the site is prepared as recommended in this report.
Use of Site Soil as Fill	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Near-surface soils encountered as poorly graded sands with silt within the upper profile, are suitable soil types for re-use as structural fill. Moisture conditioning by wetting or discing and drying of soils should be expected when reusing on site materials.
Excavation Conditions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hydraulic excavators should be able to excavate throughout the soil profile. The potential for shallow subsurface water levels should be anticipated across the site, particularly during periods of wet weather. Dewatering may be required at times due to shallow water levels.

1.0 Project and Site Information

The purpose of this exploration was to explore subsurface conditions within the project site, evaluate those conditions, and provide recommendations for site preparation, earthwork, foundation support for the proposed structure, and pavement section construction. This report describes our understanding of the project and presents the findings of our exploration along with geotechnical design and construction recommendations based on these findings.

Project information was provided in email correspondence between Mr. Kanoy (CFCC) and Mr. Nate Buffum (S&ME), on July 29, 2024. The email attached *Geotechnical Exploration Report – Building One at Alston Burke Campus*, S&ME Project No. 1061-11-124, dated August 10, 2013. Mr. Kanoy illustrated the approximate location of the planned addition project on Figure 4 in the Appendix.

Additional project information was provided in an email from Jan Burgess (Becker Morgan Group) on July 30, 2024, which attached a site plan depicting the proposed building layout and suggested sampling locations. The email also indicated that a relatively small area of additional parking was planned to the northeast of the proposed building and the existing pond would be enlarged.

The project site is adjacent and northeast of CFCC Building One, located at 621 State Highway 210 E, in Hampstead, North Carolina. A Site Vicinity Map is attached as Figure 1 in the Appendix. We understand that the project will include a single-story building addition approximately 11,200 square feet in plan area. We assume that the building will likely consist of metal framing, supported upon shallow foundations with a concrete slab-on-grade. We further assume that the proposed pavement area will consist of light-duty asphalt, subjected to car traffic and no heavy truck traffic.

As referenced above, S&ME previously completed geotechnical explorations at the site. A portion of our previous data was utilized in conjunction with additional exploration as outlined herein.

1.1 Structural Loading Information

We were not provided detailed structural loading information prior to preparing this proposal. Based on our experience with similar construction at this project site, we assume the following regarding structural loads:

- Column loads will be on the order of 30 kips or less.
- Wall loads will be on the order of 3 kips/linear foot, or less.
- Floor loads will be on the order of 150 pounds per square foot, or less, including the self-weight of the concrete slab.

If actual loads are found to be higher than those presented above, we should be given an opportunity to reevaluate conclusions and recommendations based on the revised loading scenarios.



1.2 Grade Elevation Changes

Although the planned finished floor elevation (FFE) for the new building was not indicated on the provided site plan, we assume it will be similar to Building One FFE of 33.5 feet, such that cuts or fills will be no more than 2 feet to attain planned site grades.

2.0 Exploration Program

Our exploration included a site reconnaissance by a geotechnical professional and the performance of three (3) cone penetrometer test (CPT) soundings, labeled B-1 through B-3, in the proposed building footprint. Shallow hand auger borings were performed near each CPT location and two (2) hand auger borings were performed within the proposed pond and pavement areas. CPT soundings and shallow hand auger boring locations were established in the field by S&ME using a handheld GPS unit and should be considered approximate.

CPT sounding C-2 was performed during our previous exploration on December 15, 2011, and the results incorporated into this report. A Test Location Sketch is attached as Figure 2 in the Appendix, depicting approximate test locations.

2.1 CPT Soundings

Soundings B-1 through B-3 were performed within the proposed building footprint to target depths of 35 to 40 feet. During the previous exploration, sounding C-2 was advanced to a refusal¹ depth of 56.4 feet.

In a CPT sounding (ASTM D5778), an electronically instrumented cone penetrometer is hydraulically pushed through the soil to measure point stress, pore water pressure, and sleeve friction. The CPT data is used to determine soil stratigraphy and to estimate soil parameters such as friction angle, and undrained shear strength. Soil types presented on CPT sounding logs are derived from Robertson's (1990) Soil Behavior Type (SBT) Index. The soil type determined from the SBT index is more representative of soil behavior characteristics than traditional soil classification that is based on grain size and plasticity. Sounding logs are included in the Appendix.

During the previous exploration, shear wave velocity measurements were obtained in conjunction with advancement of sounding C-2, and the results further evaluated during this exploration. Shear wave velocity measurements were performed using a cone penetrometer equipped with geophones, or a seismic cone penetrometer. The seismic cone penetrometer measures the travel times of surface generated vibrations to geophones mounted on the penetrometer at various incremental depths in the sounding. At a given depth, the travel time of the first arrival is measured and corrected for the horizontal offset of the source at the surface from the sounding. Interval velocities are calculated by dividing the difference in travel times by the vertical distance between successive measurement depths. Measurements were made at 1-meter intervals, the length of commonly available CPT extension rods, unless otherwise noted. The Shear Wave Velocity Profile is included as Figure 4 in the Appendix.

¹ "Refusal" is the depth beyond which the cone penetration tip refuses to advance any further under the maximum down crowd pressure that can be applied by the drill rig and tooling, indicating very dense soil conditions.



2.2 Shallow Hand Auger Borings

Three (3) shallow hand auger borings (B-1 through B-3) were performed adjacent to CPT sounding locations to a depth of approximately four feet. Boring B-4 was performed within the proposed pavement area and boring B-5 within the proposed pond area, each to a depth of approximately six feet.

During hand auger operations, representative soil cuttings were visually classified in general accordance with Unified Soil Classification System (USCS) guidelines. Representative grab samples were recovered from hand auger borings and transported to the laboratory for further evaluation. Upon completion of the hand auger borings, subsurface water levels were measured before the augered boreholes were backfilled with soil cuttings. Hand auger boring logs are included in the Appendix.

2.3 Laboratory Testing

After the recovered soil samples were brought to our laboratory, a geotechnical professional examined and/or tested each sample to estimate its distribution of grain sizes, plasticity, organic content, moisture condition, color, presence of lenses and seams, and apparent geologic origin in general accordance with ASTM D 2488, *"Standard Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)"*. The resulting classifications are presented on the hand auger boring logs, included in Appendix II. Similar soils were grouped into representative strata on the logs. The strata contact lines represent approximate boundaries between soil types. The actual transitions between soil types in the field are likely more gradual in both the vertical and horizontal directions than those which are indicated on the logs.

3.0 Regional Geology

The site is located within the Coastal Plain Physiographic Province of North Carolina. The Coastal Plain Province is typically characterized by marine, alluvial, and aeolian sediments that were deposited during periods of fluctuating sea levels and moving shorelines. The soils and basal formations in the North Carolina Coastal Plain Physiographic Province are typical of those laid down in a shallow sloping sea bottom; interbedded sands and clays with irregular deposits of shells and layers of limestone and cemented sands. Alluvial sands, silts, and clays are typically present near rivers and creeks. Deposits of peat, organic silt, and organic clay are also typically present in or near current or former tidal marsh areas in the outer portion of the Coastal Plain.

According to the 1985 Geologic Map of North Carolina, the site is underlain by the River Bend Formation of Tertiary age. This formation consists of limestone formed by percolation of water through calcareous shells and quartz sand causing the dissolved lime to cement the mass together (calcareenite) overlain by and intercalated with indurated, sandy, molluscan-mold limestone.



4.0 Surface and Subsurface Conditions

General descriptions of encountered soils are presented below. More detailed information is available on individual CPT and hand auger boring logs. Subsurface stratifications may be more gradual than indicated, and conditions may vary between test locations.

4.1 Surface Conditions

The site was partially wooded within the building pad area and grassed within site areas to the northeast at the time of our exploration. An existing pond is located in the east portion of the site. A portion of the proposed building site may have been previously stripped or disturbed during construction of the existing building and pavements areas on the site. A surficial layer of topsoil and rootmat, approximately 1 to 3 inches in thickness, was encountered at the hand auger locations. The topsoil depths provided in this report are based on measurements made during hand auger borings and should be considered approximate. We note that the transition from topsoil to underlying natural soils may be gradual and stripping depths will typically exceed topsoil measurements during our exploration, particularly within wooded areas. Actual topsoil depths should be expected to vary across the site.

4.2 Subsurface Conditions

The generalized subsurface conditions at the site are described below. For more detailed descriptions and stratifications at test locations, the respective sounding and hand auger boring logs should be reviewed in the Appendix.

4.2.1 *Interpreted Subsurface Profile*

An interpreted subsurface cross-sectional profile of the site soils is attached in the Appendix to illustrate general representation of the subsurface conditions within the proposed construction area. The cross-section orientation in plan view is shown in Figure 2. Profile A-A' (Figure 3) depicts the subsurface conditions generally encountered from west to east across the site, looking in a northerly direction.

Note that the profile is not to scale and was prepared for illustrative purposes only. Subsurface stratifications may be more gradual than indicated, and conditions may vary between test locations.

4.2.2 *Coastal Plain Soils*

Coastal Plain soils were encountered underlying the topsoil and extended to hand auger boring and sounding termination depths at all test locations.

Samples recovered from hand auger borings to depths of 4 to 6 feet consisted of poorly graded sands with silt (USCS Classification SP-SM). Soils appeared generally moist with tan and brown coloration.



Within CPT soundings, soils encountered to sounding termination depths of about 35 to 40 feet exhibited Soil Behavior Type (SBT)², of sands and sand mixtures. Typical tip resistances ranged from about 40 tons per square foot (tsf) to 160 tsf, indicating generally medium dense relative densities, with some loose and dense to very dense layers. Very loose to loose sands, exhibiting tip resistances of less than about 20 tsf to 40 tsf, were encountered within the upper 3 to 4 feet within soundings B-1 through B-3.

4.2.3 Subsurface Water

Water levels were measured upon completion of the CPT soundings and hand auger borings. Subsurface water at the time of the exploration was encountered at depths ranging from about 5 to 6 feet below existing ground surface in soundings B-1 through B-3. Water was not encountered in hand auger borings at the termination depths of 4 to 5 feet.

Subsurface water levels can be expected to fluctuate due to seasonal variations in rainfall, evaporation, and other factors. Additionally, perched water conditions may exist or develop following wet weather events within loose sands above less permeable medium dense sands encountered within the upper soil profile. Thus, shallower water levels may be encountered during wet weather grading.

5.0 Conclusions and Recommendations

The following conclusions and recommendations are based on our field exploration, our understanding of the proposed construction, our engineering analyses, experience with similar projects and subsurface conditions, and our correspondence with you. If structural loads and/or proposed site grades are different from those indicated, we should be provided the opportunity to review and comment upon the recommendations of this report so that they may be confirmed, extended, or modified as necessary. If subsurface conditions adverse to those indicated by this report are encountered during construction, those differences should be reported to us for review and comment.

Based on our review of the provided project information and geotechnical analyses of field testing data, this site is suitable for the planned construction, provided that site preparation recommendations presented herein are implemented during construction.

The following sections present our geotechnical conclusions and recommendations regarding design and construction.

² Soil Behavior Type is calculated based on empirical correlations with tip resistance, sleeve friction, and pore pressure. A CPT may define a soil based on its behavior as one type while its grain size and plasticity, the traditional basis for soil classification, may define it as a different type.



5.1 Earthwork

5.1.1 Site Preparation

Drainage should be implemented and maintained prior to and during construction to divert water away from the construction area. Drainage should be maintained such that water levels are lowered 3 feet or more beneath existing grades within the construction area. Surface and subsurface water conditions that occur during construction will determine the need for and extent of drainage measures.

Initial site preparation should begin by clearing vegetation and stripping and grubbing of organics and topsoil, and any other deleterious materials for a lateral distance of at least 5 feet beyond the limits of new construction.

Hand auger borings encountered topsoil thicknesses ranging from about 1 to 3 inches. Stripping depths in wooded areas of the site will likely be greater to sufficiently remove organic materials. The site should be stripped with light, tracked equipment to avoid mixing the topsoil into the loose near surface sands and creating thicker stripping depths.

Very loose to loose near-surface sands were encountered at some of the test locations. After the stripping operation is complete and temporary site drainage has been installed, the exposed soil surface should be thoroughly densified in place by making several passes with a heavy vibratory roller prior to placement of new fill or beginning the next stage of construction. Moisture conditioning of the subgrade by the addition of water or drying of soils may be required prior to densification, depending upon conditions at the time of construction. Soils may need to be plowed or disced and dried (or in some cases wetted) to adjust the moisture content to suitable levels for compaction.

Following densification, but prior to fill placement, the exposed surfaces of areas to receive fill and areas near final grades should be evaluated by an S&ME geotechnical engineer or their representative. This evaluation should include proofrolling with a fully-loaded tandem-axle dump truck or similar rubber-tired construction equipment. The proofrolling should be conducted during dry weather.

Any areas that deflect excessively and cannot be densified by rolling should be repaired. Possible repair measures could include undercutting to stable soils and backfilling with well-compacted low-plasticity materials (either on-site or off-site borrow), discing of wet in-situ soils to dry to proper moisture content and then re-compacting, placement of a woven geotextile stabilization fabric on unsuitable materials and placement of crushed stone, or some combination of these. The most practical repair measure will be influenced by the degree of instability which exists, groundwater levels, and weather conditions. As such, actual repair measures should be determined in the field at the time of construction.

5.1.2 Subgrade Repair and Improvement Methods

The exposed subgrade of both cut and fill areas can deteriorate and lose support when exposed to construction traffic and adverse weather conditions. Deterioration can occur in the form of rutting, pumping, freezing, or erosion. Heavy rubber-tired construction equipment should not be allowed to operate on exposed subgrades during wet conditions. We recommend that, during construction, exposed subgrade surfaces be sealed at the end of each day or when wet weather is forecast. Water should not be allowed to pond in fill or cut areas.

Immediately prior to foundation or floor slab construction, exposed subgrade soils should be evaluated by proofrolling to determine their stability. Soils which rut, pump, or deflect under proofrolling should be repaired prior to ABC stone placement. Repair measures may include scarifying/drying/recompacting, undercutting, placement of geotextiles, or some combination of these. Actual repair measures will be influenced by project schedule and weather conditions and can only be determined in the field.

5.1.3 Excavations

Based on subsurface conditions encountered and assumed site grading, loose to medium dense sands may be encountered within anticipated shallow excavation depths at the site. Local excavations within these materials for shallow utility trenches and foundations can be accomplished by a conventional backhoe or track-mounted backhoe.

The sandy soils encountered throughout the subsurface profile at our test locations should be of suitable soil types for re-use as structural fill.

Subsurface water was encountered at depths of about 5 to 6 feet at the time of performing the borings and soundings. Note that water may be shallower during wet periods of the year, after rainfall events, or in unexplored areas. The contractor should be prepared to dewater where utility or foundation excavations extend beneath subsurface water levels and control any water that collects in excavations. Temporary ditches or the use of permanent French drain systems may be needed to assist in dewatering the site. The contractor should be responsible for determining water control measures.

Excavations should be sloped or shored in accordance with local, state, and federal regulations, including OSHA (29 CFR Part 1926) excavation trench safety standards. The contractor is usually responsible for site safety. This information is provided only as a service and under no circumstances should we be assumed responsible for construction site safety.

5.1.4 Structural Fill Placement and Compaction

Soils used as structural fill should meet the following requirements:

- Natural moisture content within +/- 3 percent of the optimum moisture content for compaction as determined by ASTM D 698.
- Plasticity index of 15 percent or less (ASTM D 4318).
- Silt/clay fines content of not greater than 35 percent by weight (ASTM D 1140).
- Organic content less than 5 percent by weight (ASTM D 2974).



- In pavement areas: Soaked CBR value of at least 10 percent when recompacted to 98 percent of the standard Proctor maximum dry density near optimum moisture (ASTM D 1883).

All new structural fill soil should be placed in 8 to 10-inch loose lifts and compacted to at least 95 percent of the standard Proctor maximum dry density (MDD) (ASTM D698). The top 12 inches should be compacted to at least 98 percent of the material's standard Proctor MDD. S&ME construction services personnel, working under the supervision of the geotechnical engineer, should observe fill placement and compaction. An appropriate number of soil density tests should be conducted to confirm that adequate fill compaction is achieved.

5.2 Foundation Support

Provided that the above recommendations for site preparation and fill placement and compaction are followed, the structure can be supported on shallow spread footings bearing in compacted structural fill or suitable natural soils and designed for a net allowable bearing pressure of 2,000 pounds per square foot (psf). Based on encountered subsurface conditions, provided structural loads, and assuming the subgrades are properly prepared as discussed herein, we estimate that total settlement of building foundations will be 1 inch or less with differential settlements of about ½ inch or less.

Footings should bear at least 12 inches below exterior grade so they will not be adversely affected by frost penetration and to develop the design bearing capacity. Continuous wall footings should be at least 18 inches wide, and isolated column footings should be at least 24 inches wide. This recommendation is made to prevent a localized or punching shear failure condition which can occur with very narrow footings.

The bottom of all footing excavations for the structure should be evaluated by the S&ME geotechnical engineer or their representative using a hand auger and dynamic cone penetrometer (DCP). In cases where the DCP testing indicates insufficient available bearing pressure for the applied bearing pressure, the foundation bearing soils may need to be repaired. Repairs may include undercutting and replacing with washed stone (#57) prior to foundation construction, subject to the recommendations of the geotechnical engineer.

It should be anticipated that where footings bear directly on fill, or within loose native soils, the soils exposed in the bottom of the footings may need to be tamped to increase their density prior to the placement of foundation concrete. Due to the potential of perched water conditions at the site, the contractor should be prepared to dewater footing excavations.

5.3 Floor Slabs

A slab-on-grade floor system can be adequately supported on newly placed and compacted structural fill or approved natural soils, provided the site preparation and fill placement procedures outlined in this report are implemented. The slab should be separated from footings to allow for relative displacement.

At least 6 inches of compacted select granular material should be placed beneath all ground floor slabs to provide a capillary break, provide more uniform slab support, and reduce damage to subgrade soils during construction. The select granular fill should classify as SP, SP-SM, SW, or SW-SM in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System, which requires that these soils have less than 12 percent passing the No. 200 sieve. Manufactured materials such as aggregate base course (ABC) or processed fill (i.e., screenings) meeting this



specification can be used. A modulus of subgrade reaction value of 175 psi/in may be used to design floor slab on subgrades consisting of these soils compacted to at least 98 percent of the soil's standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D698).

Exposure to the environment and construction activities will weaken the floor slab subgrade soils. Therefore, we recommend that subgrade soils in slab areas be evaluated prior to placement of the select granular fill. If near surface deterioration of the soils has occurred, subgrade repair measures as previously discussed herein may be necessary.

Based on the water levels measured during the time of our field exploration and the assumed finish floor elevation, the floor slab will not be below the exterior grade and will not be subjected to hydrostatic pressure from groundwater. However, water vapor transmission through the slab is still a design consideration. Evaluating the need for and design of a vapor retarder or vapor barrier for moisture control is outside our scope of services and should be determined by the project architect/structural engineer based on the planned floor coverings and the corresponding design constraints, as outlined in the current edition of ACI 302.1R, Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction. Further, health and environmental considerations with respect to any potentially harmful vapor transmission are also outside of our scope.

5.4 Seismic Design Considerations

A seismic site classification and liquefaction potential evaluation were performed based on the field data collected from the CPT soundings and shear wave velocity measurements recorded in sounding C-2. The following sections discuss the results of the seismic evaluations.

5.4.1 Liquefaction Triggering Evaluation

Liquefaction of saturated, loose, cohesionless soils occurs when they are subject to earthquake loading that causes the pore pressures to increase, and effective overburden stresses to decrease, to the point where large soil deformation or even transformation from a solid to a liquid state result. The *2018 North Carolina State Building Code* (NCBC) requires consideration of liquefiable soils, which could result in a Site Class F designation.

Accordingly, we performed a seismic liquefaction triggering evaluation using the methods presented by Youd et al. (2001) and Boulanger and Idriss (2008), based on the design earthquake ($M=7.3$), and associated site modified peak ground acceleration of 0.141g obtained from the USGS web services.

Liquefaction triggering evaluation methods have been primarily based on evaluation/observation of events that occurred in the western U.S. in cohesionless materials that are much younger than deposits in the central and eastern United States. An age correction factor that accounts for the increased liquefaction resistance of older Holocene and Pleistocene soils has been developed by Andrus et al. (2009) and was utilized during our evaluation.

Based on the results of our analyses, liquefaction of subsoils appears unlikely to occur on a widespread basis at this site in the event of the design magnitude earthquake and Site Class F does not apply.



5.4.2 Site Class

Seismic site classification is based on the top 100 feet of a site's subsurface profile. A shear wave velocity profile was developed from measurements recorded in seismic CPT sounding C-2 to a termination depth of 56.4 feet. Using the collected data, and S&ME's knowledge of the local geology, when extrapolated to a depth of 100 feet, an average shear wave velocity of at least 937 ft/sec is estimated, which is greater than the minimum of 600 fps that is required for consideration of Site Class D design parameters. Figure 4 in the Appendix presents the developed Shear Wave Velocity Profile. Per Section 1613 of the NCBC, the site is designated as **Site Class D**.

5.4.3 Design Spectral Accelerations

Selection of the base shear values for structural design for earthquake loading is the responsibility of the structural engineer. However, for the purpose of evaluating seismic hazards at this site, S&ME has evaluated the spectral response parameters for the site using the general procedures outlined under the NCBC Section 1613.3.

The current NCBC references the 2015 International Building Code and ASCE 7-10 for determining the design spectral accelerations and liquefaction potential; however, Seismic Ground Motion Maps were updated in 2014 and are incorporated into ASCE 7-16, which is referenced by the 2018 version of the International Building Code (IBC). The updated seismic maps, which result in lower spectral accelerations, represent updated understanding of the seismic hazards and will presumably eventually be incorporated into the next edition of the NCBC, which is based on the IBC.

Listed in the table below are the ground motion parameters from both resources, ASCE 7-10 and ASCE 7-16. Use of the newer, more up to date seismic parameters may require the authorization of the local Building Official.

Table 5-1: Ground Motion Parameters

Method	Site Class	S _s	S ₁	S _{DS}	S _{DI}	PGA _M
2018 North Carolina Building Code (ASCE 7-10)	D	0.176g	0.079g	0.187g	0.127g	0.141g
2018 International Building Code (ASCE 7-16)	D	0.129g	0.06g	0.138g	0.096g	0.12g

5.5 Pavement Section Design and Construction

We understand that that a relatively small area of additional asphalt parking is planned to the northeast of the proposed building. No planned traffic information was provided to us at the time of this report; therefore, we assume that the proposed pavement area will consist of light-duty asphalt, subjected to car traffic and no heavy truck traffic.

We assume that new pavement subgrades will be constructed atop compacted structural fill soils compacted to at least 98 percent of the standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D 698). We have performed our evaluations assuming that a CBR value of at least 10 percent will be available from subgrade soils compacted to 98 percent. If



soils exhibiting a CBR value of less than 10 percent at 98 percent compaction are to be used on this project, these recommendations may require revision.

Traffic volumes for the proposed pavement area were not provided to us; therefore, we have performed our calculations based on local practice, typical pavement section thicknesses for similar facility and an assumed traffic demand volume. For the light-duty pavement areas, an 18-kip equivalent single axle loads (ESAL) value of 10,000 was used. This information and our assumptions should be confirmed by the project Civil Engineer, or their pavement design representative, and pavement design revisions implemented if warranted. The resulting recommendations are presented in the table below.

Table 5-2: Pavement Thickness Recommendations

Pavement Type	Material	Thickness (inches)
Light-Duty Flexible (Asphalt) <i>Automobile parking only</i>	Asphalt Surface Course (S-9.5C)	2
	Aggregate Base Course (ABC)	6

All materials and construction methods should conform to the 2024 edition of the NCDOT “Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.” The aggregate base course (ABC) stone should consist of stone meeting the requirements under Section 520. ABC stone should be compacted to at least 98 percent of the maximum dry density as determined by the modified Proctor compaction test, AASHTO T-180M as modified by NCDOT. To confirm that the base course stone has been uniformly compacted, in place density tests should be performed by S&ME construction services staff and the area should be thoroughly proofrolled under their observation.

Asphaltic concrete should conform to Section 610 in the 2024 edition of the NCDOT “Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.” Sufficient testing and observation should be performed during pavement construction to confirm that the required thickness, density, and quality requirements of the specifications are achieved.

Although our analysis was based on traffic loading for a 20-year design life, our experience indicates that pavement maintenance is necessary due to normal weathering of the asphaltic concrete. Normal weathering (i.e., oxidation) causes asphalt to become more brittle resulting in loss of tensional strength. This loss in strength can cause minor cracking which provides access for water infiltration into the stone base and subgrade. As the degree of saturation of the subgrade increases, the strength of the subgrade decreases leading to pavement failure. Routine maintenance in the form of sealing, patching, and maintaining proper drainage is required to increase pavement life. It is not uncommon for overlays to be required after 10 to 12 years.



6.0 Limitations of Geotechnical Report

This report has been prepared in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering practice for specific application to this project. The conclusions and recommendations contained in this report are based upon applicable standards of our practice in this geographic area at the time this report was prepared. No other representation or warranty, either express or implied, is made.

We relied on project information given to us to develop our conclusions and recommendations. If project information described in this report is not accurate, or if it changes during project development, we should be notified of the changes so that we can modify our recommendations based on this additional information if necessary.

Our conclusions and recommendations are based on limited data from a field exploration program. Subsurface conditions can vary widely between explored areas. Some variations may not become evident until construction. If conditions are encountered which appear different than those described in our report, we should be notified. This report should not be construed to represent subsurface conditions for the entire site.

Unless specifically noted otherwise, our field exploration program did not include an assessment of regulatory compliance, environmental conditions or pollutants or presence of any biological materials (mold, fungi, bacteria). If there is a concern about these items, other studies should be performed. S&ME can provide a proposal and perform these services if requested.

S&ME should be retained to review the final plans and specifications to confirm that earthwork, foundation, and other recommendations are properly interpreted and implemented. The recommendations in this report are contingent on S&ME's review of final plans and specifications followed by our observation and monitoring of earthwork and foundation construction activities.

Appendix



Important Information About Your Geotechnical Engineering Report

Variations in subsurface conditions can be a principal cause of construction delays, cost overruns and claims. The following information is provided to assist you in understanding and managing the risk of these variations.

Geotechnical Findings Are Professional Opinions

Geotechnical engineers cannot specify material properties as other design engineers do. Geotechnical material properties have a far broader range on a given site than any manufactured construction material, and some geotechnical material properties may change over time because of exposure to air and water, or human activity.

Site exploration identifies subsurface conditions at the time of exploration and only at the points where subsurface tests are performed or samples obtained. Geotechnical engineers review field and laboratory data and then apply their judgment to render professional opinions about site subsurface conditions. Their recommendations rely upon these professional opinions. Variations in the vertical and lateral extent of subsurface materials may be encountered during construction that significantly impact construction schedules, methods and material volumes. While higher levels of subsurface exploration can mitigate the risk of encountering unanticipated subsurface conditions, no level of subsurface exploration can eliminate this risk.

Scope of Geotechnical Services

Professional geotechnical engineering judgment is required to develop a geotechnical exploration scope to obtain information necessary to support design and construction. A number of unique project factors are considered in developing the scope of geotechnical services, such as the exploration objective; the location, type, size and weight of the proposed structure; proposed site grades and improvements; the construction schedule and sequence; and the site geology.

Geotechnical engineers apply their experience with construction methods, subsurface conditions and exploration methods to develop the exploration scope. The scope of each exploration is unique based on available project and site information. Incomplete project information or constraints on the scope of exploration increases the risk of variations in subsurface conditions not being identified and addressed in the geotechnical report.

Services Are Performed for Specific Projects

Because the scope of each geotechnical exploration is unique, each geotechnical report is unique. Subsurface conditions are explored and recommendations are made for a specific project.

Subsurface information and recommendations may not be adequate for other uses. Changes in a proposed structure location, foundation loads, grades, schedule, etc. may require additional geotechnical exploration, analyses, and consultation. The geotechnical engineer should be consulted to determine if additional services are required in response to changes in proposed construction, location, loads, grades, schedule, etc.

Geo-Environmental Issues

The equipment, techniques, and personnel used to perform a geo-environmental study differ significantly from those used for a geotechnical exploration. Indications of environmental contamination may be encountered incidental to performance of a geotechnical exploration but go unrecognized. Determination of the presence, type or extent of environmental contamination is beyond the scope of a geotechnical exploration.

Geotechnical Recommendations Are Not Final

Recommendations are developed based on the geotechnical engineer's understanding of the proposed construction and professional opinion of site subsurface conditions. Observations and tests must be performed during construction to confirm subsurface conditions exposed by construction excavations are consistent with those assumed in development of recommendations. It is advisable to retain the geotechnical engineer that performed the exploration and developed the geotechnical recommendations to conduct tests and observations during construction. This may reduce the risk that variations in subsurface conditions will not be addressed as recommended in the geotechnical report.



Site Vicinity Map

CFCC Alston Burke Campus – Building Addition
Hampstead, North Carolina

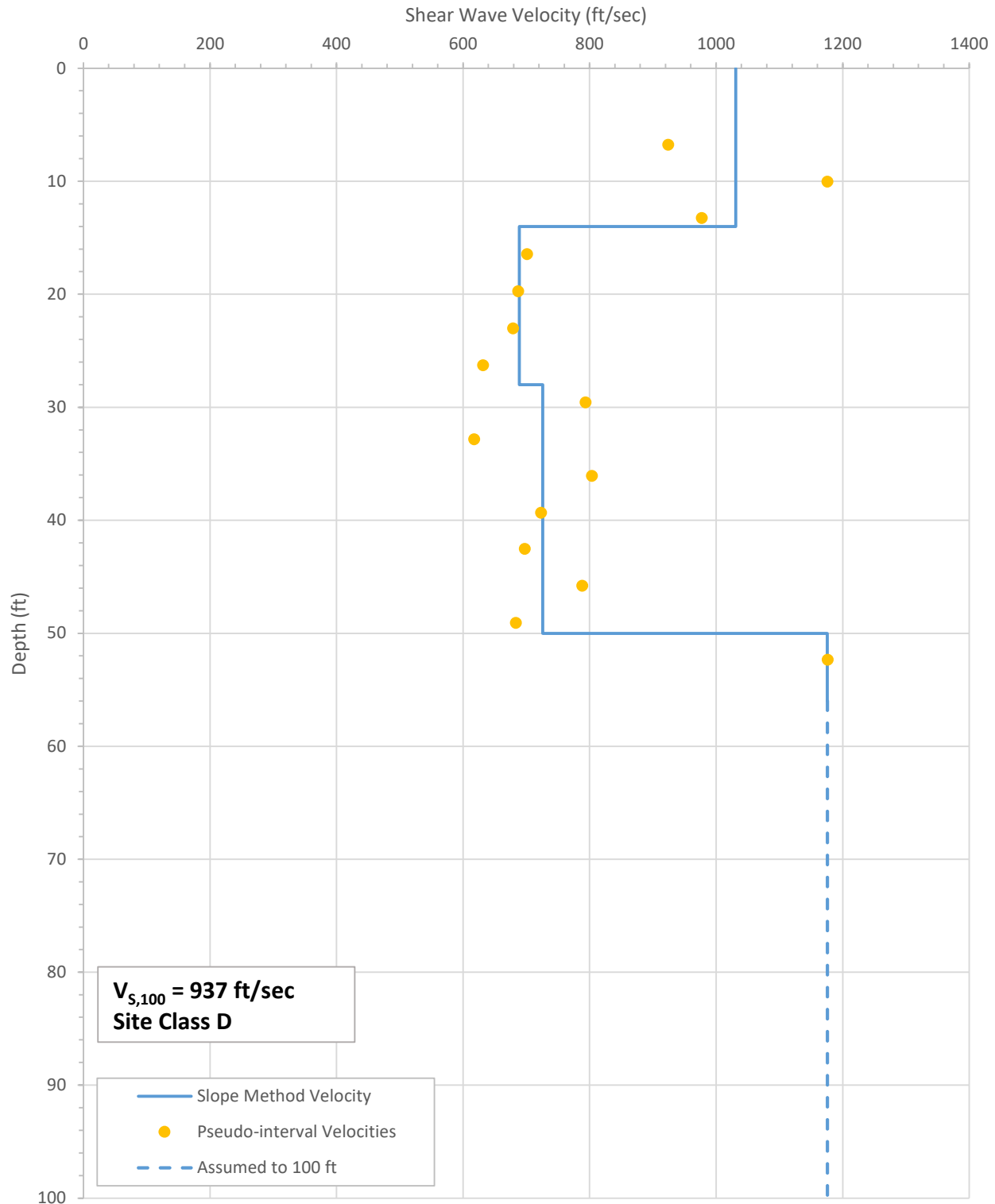
SCALE:
AS SHOWN

DATE:
8/20/2024

PROJECT NO.:
24060108

FIGURE NO.:

1



Computed by:

TS

Checked by:

NB

Date: 8/20/2024



Shear Wave Velocity Profile

CFCC Alston Burke Campus Addition
Hampstead, NC

Project No.: 24060108










Sounding:

C-2

Figure No.

4

CPT Soil Classification Legend

Zone		Q _t /N	Description
1		2	Sensitive, Fine Grained
2		1	Organic Soils-Peats
3		1.5	Clays-Clay to Silty Clay
4		2	Silt Mixtures-Clayey Silt to Silty Clay
5		3	Sand Mixtures-Silty Sand to Sandy Silt
6		4.5	Sands-Clean Sand to Silty Sand
7		6	Gravelly Sand to Sand
8		1	Very Stiff Clay to Clayey Sand*
9		2	Very Stiff, Fine Grained*

(*) Heavily Overconsolidated or Cemented

Robertson's Soil Behavior Type (SBT), 1990			
Group #	Description	I _c	
		Min	Max
1	Sensitive, fine grained	N/A	
2	Organic soils - peats	3.60	N/A
3	Clays - silty clay to clay	2.95	3.60
4	Silt mixtures - clayey silt to silty clay	2.60	2.95
5	Sand mixtures - silty sand to sandy silt	2.05	2.60
6	Sands - clean sand to silty sand	1.31	2.05
7	Gravelly sand to dense sand	N/A	1.31
8	Very stiff sand to clayey sand (High OCR or cemented)	N/A	
9	Very stiff, fine grained (High OCR or cemented)	N/A	

Soil behavior type is based on empirical data and may not be representative of soil classification based on plasticity and grain size distribution.

Relative Density and Consistency Table			
SANDS		SILTS and CLAYS	
Cone Tip Stress, q _t (tsf)	Relative Density	Cone Tip Stress, q _t (tsf)	Consistency
Less than 20	Very Loose	Less than 5	Very Soft
20 - 40	Loose	5 - 15	Soft to Firm
40 - 120	Medium Dense	15 - 30	Stiff
120 - 200	Dense	30 - 60	Very Stiff
Greater than 200	Very Dense	Greater than 60	Hard

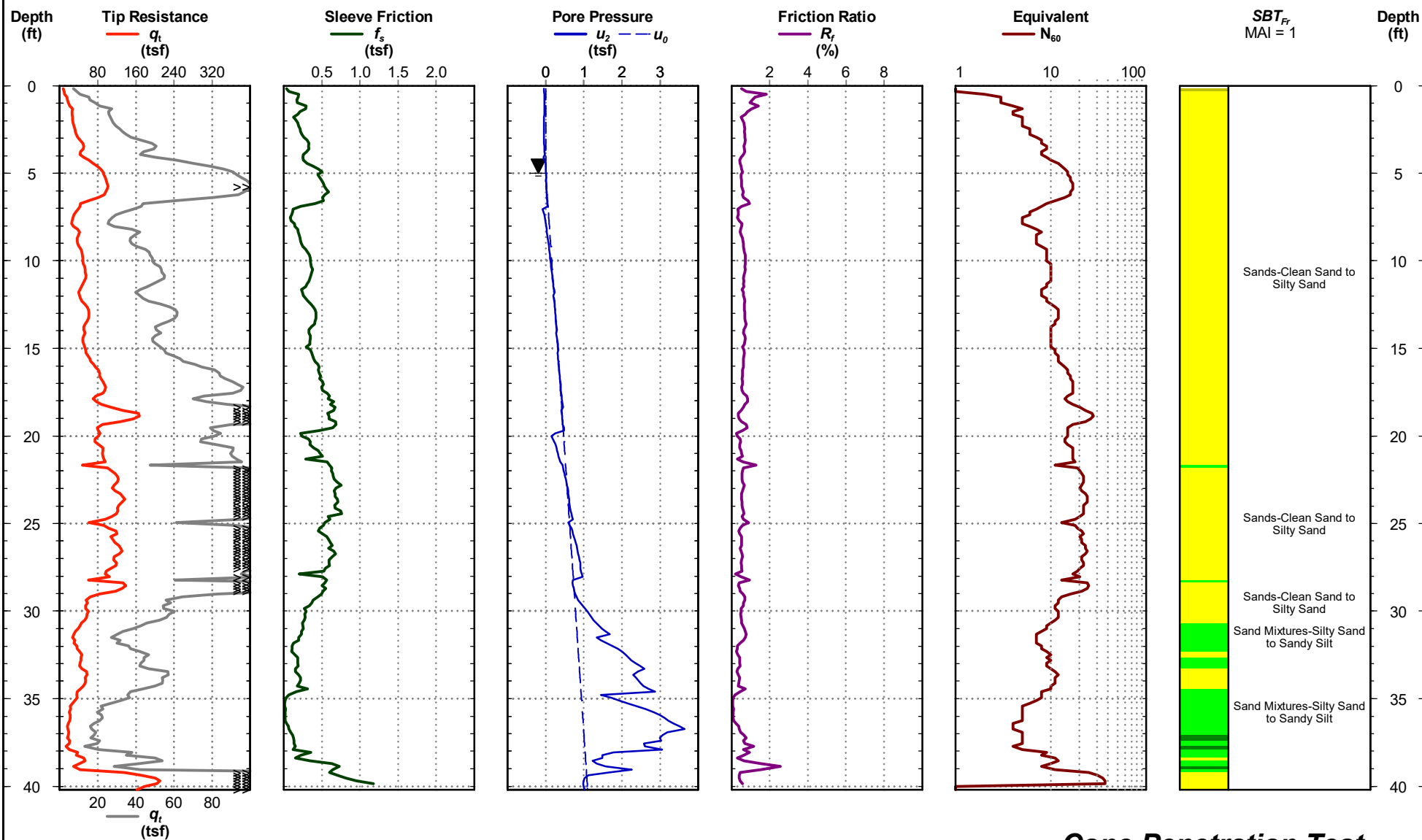


CFCC Alston Burke Campus Building Addition
Hampstead, North Carolina
S&ME Project No: 24060108

Sounding ID: B-1

Date: Aug. 12, 2024
Estimated Water Depth: 5 ft
Rig/Operator: Jared Duffy

Total Depth: 40.2 ft
Termination Criteria: Target Depth
Cone Size: 1.75



Cone Penetration Test

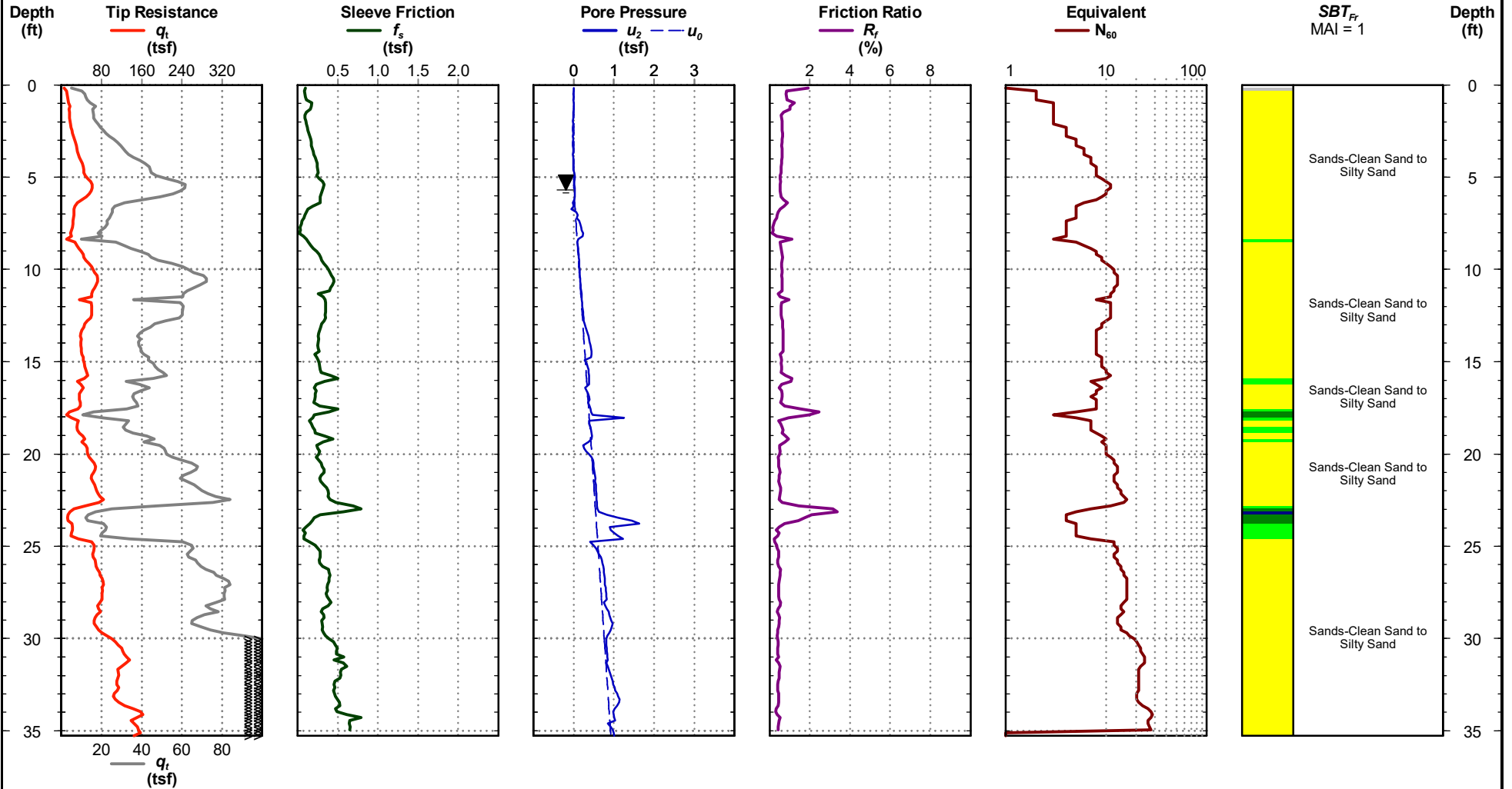


CFCC Alston Burke Campus Building Addition
Hampstead, North Carolina
S&ME Project No: 24060108

Sounding ID: B-2

Date: Aug. 12, 2024
Estimated Water Depth: 5.7 ft
Rig/Operator: Jared Duffy

Total Depth: 35.3 ft
Termination Criteria: Target Depth
Cone Size: 1.75



Cone Penetration Test



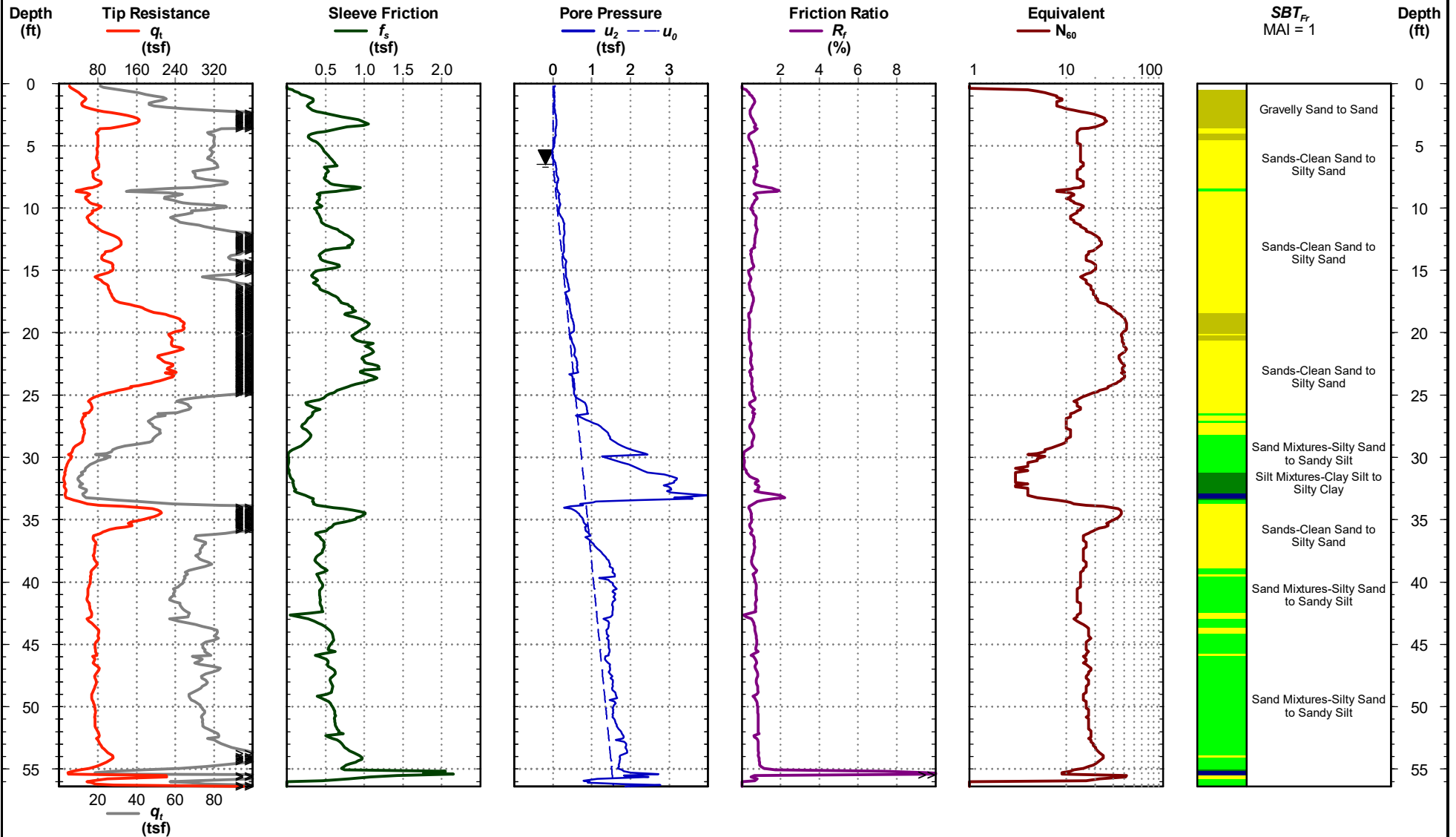


CFCC Alston Burke Campus Building Addition
Hampstead, North Carolina
S&ME Project No: 24060108

Sounding ID: C-2

Date: Dec. 14, 2011
Estimated Water Depth: 6.5 ft
Rig/Operator: Andy | Jesse

Total Depth: 56.4 ft
Termination Criteria: Maximum Reaction Force
Cone Size: 1.75



Cone Penetration Test

Electronic Filename: F14D1115C.DAT

LEGEND TO SOIL CLASSIFICATION AND SYMBOLS

SOIL TYPES

(Shown in Graphic Log)



Fill



Asphalt



Concrete



Topsoil



Gravel



Sand



Silt



Clay



Organic



Silty Sand



Clayey Sand



Sandy Silt



Clayey Silt



Sandy Clay



Silty Clay



Partially Weathered Rock



Cored Rock

WATER LEVELS

(Shown in Water Level Column)

▽ = Water Level At Termination of Boring

▼ = Water Level Taken After 24 Hours

◀ = Loss of Drilling Water

HC = Hole Cave

CONSISTENCY OF COHESIVE SOILS

CONSISTENCY

Very Soft

Soft

Firm

Stiff

Very Stiff

Hard

Very Hard

STD. PENETRATION RESISTANCE BLOWS/FOOT

0 to 2

3 to 4

5 to 8

9 to 15

16 to 30

31 to 50

Over 50

RELATIVE DENSITY OF COHESIONLESS SOILS

RELATIVE DENSITY

Very Loose

Loose

Medium Dense

Dense

Very Dense

STD. PENETRATION RESISTANCE BLOWS/FOOT

0 to 4

5 to 10

11 to 30

31 to 50

Over 50

SAMPLER TYPES

(Shown in Samples Column)



Shelby Tube



Split Spoon



Rock Core



No Recovery

TERMS


Standard Penetration Resistance - The Number of Blows of 140 lb. Hammer Falling 30 in. Required to Drive 1.4 in. I.D. Split Spoon Sampler 1 Foot. As Specified in ASTM D-1586.

REC - Total Length of Rock Recovered in the Core Barrel Divided by the Total Length of the Core Run Times 100%.

RQD - Total Length of Sound Rock Segments Recovered that are Longer Than or Equal to 4" (mechanical breaks excluded) Divided by the Total Length of the Core Run Times 100%.



PROJECT: CFCC Alston Burke Campus Building Addition Hampstead, North Carolina 24060108		HAND AUGER BORING LOG: B-1	
DATE STARTED: 8/6/24		DATE FINISHED: 8/6/24	
SAMPLING METHOD: Hand Auger		PERFORMED BY: S&ME/J. Prevatte	
WATER LEVEL: Not Encountered.		NOTES: Elevation unknown.	

Depth (feet)	GRAPHIC LOG	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	ELEVATION (feet)	WATER LEVEL
		TOPSOIL - 3 inches.		
1		POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Tan and brown, mostly fine to medium sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.		
2				
3				
4				
Boring terminated at 4 ft Target Depth				

PROJECT: CFCC Alston Burke Campus Building Addition Hampstead, North Carolina 24060108		HAND AUGER BORING LOG: B-2	
DATE STARTED: 8/6/24		DATE FINISHED: 8/6/24	
SAMPLING METHOD: Hand Auger		PERFORMED BY: S&ME/J. Prevatte	
WATER LEVEL: Not Encountered.		NOTES: Elevation unknown.	

Depth (feet)	GRAPHIC LOG	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	ELEVATION (feet)	WATER LEVEL
		TOPSOIL - 2 inches.		
		POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Tan and brown, mostly fine to medium sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.		
1				-
2				-
3				-
4		Boring terminated at 4 ft Target Depth		

PROJECT: CFCC Alston Burke Campus Building Addition Hampstead, North Carolina 24060108		HAND AUGER BORING LOG: B-3	
DATE STARTED: 8/6/24		DATE FINISHED: 8/6/24	
SAMPLING METHOD: Hand Auger		PERFORMED BY: S&ME/J. Prevatte	
WATER LEVEL: Not Encountered.		NOTES: Elevation unknown.	

Depth (feet)	GRAPHIC LOG	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	ELEVATION (feet)	WATER LEVEL
		TOPSOIL - 1 inch.		
		POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Tan and brown, mostly fine to medium sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.		
1				
2				
3				
4				
		Boring terminated at 4 ft Target Depth		

PROJECT: CFCC Alston Burke Campus Building Addition Hampstead, North Carolina 24060108		HAND AUGER BORING LOG: B-4	
DATE STARTED: 8/6/24		DATE FINISHED: 8/6/24	
SAMPLING METHOD: Hand Auger		PERFORMED BY: S&ME/J. Prevatte	
WATER LEVEL: Not Encountered.		NOTES: Elevation unknown.	

Depth (feet)	GRAPHIC LOG	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	ELEVATION (feet)	WATER LEVEL
		TOPSOIL - 3 inches.		
1		POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Tan and brown, mostly fine to medium sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.		
2				
3				
4				
5			Boring terminated at 5 ft Target Depth	

PROJECT: CFCC Alston Burke Campus Building Addition Hampstead, North Carolina 24060108		HAND AUGER BORING LOG: B-5	
DATE STARTED: 8/6/24		DATE FINISHED: 8/6/24	
SAMPLING METHOD: Hand Auger		PERFORMED BY: S&ME/J. Prevatte	
WATER LEVEL: Not Encountered.		NOTES: Elevation unknown.	

Depth (feet)	GRAPHIC LOG	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	ELEVATION (feet)	WATER LEVEL
		TOPSOIL - 3 inches.		
1		POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Tan and brown, mostly fine to medium sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.		
2				
3				
4				
5			Boring terminated at 5 ft Target Depth	